

1968

APB accounting principles: volume 2: Original pronouncements as of May 1, 1968

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Accounting Principles Board

Follow this and additional works at: https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_assoc

Part of the [Accounting Commons](#), and the [Taxation Commons](#)

Recommended Citation

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Accounting Principles Board, "APB accounting principles: volume 2: Original pronouncements as of May 1, 1968" (1968). *Association Sections, Divisions, Boards, Teams*. 161.
https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_assoc/161

This Book is brought to you for free and open access by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Historical Collection at eGrove. It has been accepted for inclusion in Association Sections, Divisions, Boards, Teams by an authorized administrator of eGrove. For more information, please contact egrove@olemiss.edu.



ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

• *Original Pronouncements*

AS OF MAY 1, 1968

VOLUME TWO

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

666 FIFTH AVENUE

•

NEW YORK, N. Y. 10019



ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

• *Original Pronouncements*

AS OF MAY 1, 1968

VOLUME TWO

Published for the
American Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
by
Commerce Clearing House, Inc.
Chicago, Illinois 60646

© 1968, AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS, INC.
666 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK, NEW YORK, 10019

All Rights Reserved
Printed in the United States of America

CONTENTS

VOLUME 2

	<i>Page</i>
Accounting Research Bulletins	6001
APB Opinions	6501
APB Statements	9001
Accounting Terminology Bulletins	9501

VOLUME 1

Section

100	Preface; Introduction; Financial Accounting—General	11
2000	Financial Statement Presentation	1001
4000	Revenue and Expense	2001
5100	Assets	3001
5300	Liabilities and Deferred Credits	3501
5500	Capital	4001
6000	Special Industry Applications	5001
....	Cross-Reference Tables	5901
....	Topical Index	5941

- ***Original Pronouncements***

ACCOUNTING RESEARCH BULLETINS

. . . the full text of Accounting Research Bulletins
issued by the Committee on Accounting Procedure
. . .

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARB No.		Page
43	Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins (see pages 6003-6004 for separate table of contents)	6003
44	Declining-Balance Depreciation	6065
44 (Rev.)	Declining-Balance Depreciation	6067
45	Long-Term Construction-Type Contracts	6071
46	Discontinuance of Dating Earned Surplus	6075
47	Accounting for Costs of Pension Plans	6077
48	Business Combinations	6081
49	Earnings per Share	6085
50	Contingencies	6089
51	Consolidated Financial Statements	6091
	Topical Index to Accounting Research Bulletins	6097

FOREWORD

SEPTEMBER, 1961

The committee on accounting procedure and the committee on terminology of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants were superseded on September 1, 1959, by the Accounting Principles Board. At its first meeting, on September 11, 1959, the Board approved the following resolution:

The Accounting Principles Board of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants on September 1, 1959, assumed the responsibilities of the former committees on accounting procedure and on terminology. During its existence, the committee on accounting procedure issued a series of accounting research bulletins and the committee on terminology issued a series of accounting terminology bulletins. In 1953, the first forty-two of the accounting research bulletins were revised, restated, or withdrawn and appeared as Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43 and Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1. Since 1953, other bulletins have been issued, the last accounting research bulletin being No. 51 and the last terminology bulletin being No. 4.

The Accounting Principles Board has the authority, as did the predecessor committees, to review and revise any of these bulletins and it plans to take such action from time to time.

Pending such action and in order to prevent any misunderstanding meanwhile as to the status of the existing accounting research and terminology bulletins, the Accounting Principles Board now makes public announcement that these bulletins should be considered as continuing in force with the same degree of authority as before.

Included in this volume¹ are Accounting Research Bulletins No. 43 (a revision and restatement of previous Bulletins) and Bulletins Nos. 44 to 51, and Accounting Terminology Bulletins Nos. 1 to 4² in the form in which they were originally published. These are all of the bulletins which were in force at September 1, 1959, and, up to the date of this publication,³ none of them has been revised or revoked by any action of the Accounting Principles Board.

¹ Accounting Research and Terminology Bulletins, Final Edition, 1961, American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

² These are reproduced herein in the division entitled "Accounting Terminology Bulletins" beginning on page 9501.

³ September, 1961.

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43

RESTATEMENT AND REVISION OF ACCOUNTING RESEARCH BULLETINS

JUNE, 1953

Contents		Page
Preface		6004
Introduction		6005
Chapter 1—Prior Opinions		
A. Rules Adopted by Membership		6007
B. Opinion Issued by Predecessor Committee		6007
Chapter 2—Form of Statements		
A. Comparative Financial Statements		6008
B. Combined Statement of Income and Earned Surplus ..		6009
Chapter 3—Working Capital		
A. Current Assets and Current Liabilities		6010
B. Application of United States Government Securities Against Liabilities for Federal Taxes on Income ..		6012
Chapter 4—Inventory Pricing		6013
Chapter 5—Intangible Assets		6018
Chapter 6—Contingency Reserves		6020
Chapter 7—Capital Accounts		
A. Quasi-Reorganization or Corporate Readjustment ..		6022
B. Stock Dividends and Stock Split-Ups		6023
C. Business Combinations		6026
Chapter 8—Income and Earned Surplus		6027
Chapter 9—Depreciation		
A. Depreciation and High Costs		6031
B. Depreciation on Appreciation		6033
C. Emergency Facilities—Depreciation, Amortization, and Income Taxes		6033
Chapter 10—Taxes		
A. Real and Personal Property Taxes		6036
B. Income Taxes		6038
Chapter 11—Government Contracts		
A. Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee Contracts		6041
B. Renegotiation		6044
C. Terminated War and Defense Contracts		6045

	Page
Chapter 12—Foreign Operations and Foreign Exchange	6049
Chapter 13—Compensation	
A. Pension Plans—Annuity Costs Based on Past Service . .	6052
B. Compensation Involved in Stock Option and Stock Purchase Plans	6053
Chapter 14—Disclosure of Long-Term Leases in Financial Statements of Lessees	6056
Chapter 15—Unamortized Discount, Issue Cost, and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded	6057
Appendix A—List of Accounting Research Bulletins with Cross-References	6060
Appendix B—Changes of Substance Made in the Course of Restating and Revising the Bulletins	6061
Appendix C—Bulletins Not Included in the Restatement and Revision	6064

Preface

Since its organization the American Institute of Accountants, aware of divergences in accounting procedures and of an increasing interest by the public in financial reporting, has given consideration to problems raised by these divergences. Its studies led it, in 1932, to make certain recommendations to the New York Stock Exchange which were adopted by the Institute in 1934. Further consideration developed into a program of research and the publication of opinions, beginning in 1938, in a series of Accounting Research Bulletins.

Forty-two bulletins were issued during the period from 1939 to 1953. Eight of these were reports of the committee on terminology. The other 34 were the result of research by the committee on accounting procedure directed to those segments of accounting practice where problems were most demanding and with which business and the accounting profession were most concerned at the time.

Some of these studies were undertaken to meet new business or economic developments. Some arose out of the war which ended in 1945 and the problems following in its wake. Certain of the bulletins were amended, superseded, or withdrawn as changing conditions affected their usefulness.

The purposes of this restatement are to eliminate what is no longer applicable, to condense and clarify what continues to be of value, to revise where changed views require revision, and to arrange the retained material by subjects rather than in the order of issuance. The terminology bulletins are not included. They are being published separately.

The committee has made some changes of substance, which are summarized in appendix B.

The several chapters and subchapters of this restatement and revision are to be regarded as a cancellation and replacement of Accounting Research Bulletins 1 through 42, excepting the terminology bulletins included in that series, which are being replaced by a separate publication.

Although the committee has approved the objective of finding a better term than the word *surplus* for use in published financial statements, it has used *surplus* herein as being a technical term well understood among accountants, to whom its pronouncements are primarily directed.

Committee on Accounting Procedure

June, 1953

Each section of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, entitled Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins, was separately adopted by the assenting votes of the twenty members of the committee except to the extent that dissents, or assents with qualification, are noted at the close of each section. Publication of the bulletin as a whole was approved by the assenting votes of all members of the committee, one of whom, Mr. Andrews, assented with qualification.

Mr. Andrews assents to the publication of this bulletin only to the extent that it constitutes, with no changes in meaning other than those set forth in appendix B, a restatement of the bulletins previously issued by the committee and not mentioned in appendix C as having been omitted. He dissents from the statement contained in the preface that this bulletin is to be regarded as a cancellation of the previously issued bulletins; he regards it as beyond the power of the committee to cancel its previous statements, which in his view inescapably remain authoritative expressions as at the date of their utterance.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1952-1953)

PAUL K. KNIGHT

Chairman

FREDERICK B. ANDREWS

FRANK S. CALKINS

H. A. FINNEY

ROY GODFREY

THOMAS G. HIGGINS

JOHN A. LINDQUIST

PERRY MASON

EDWARD F. McCORMACK

JOHN PEOPLES

MAURICE E. PELOUBET

JOHN W. QUEENAN

WALTER L. SCHAFER

C. AUBREY SMITH

C. OLIVER WELLINGTON

WILLIAM W. WERTZ

EDWARD B. WILCOX

RAYMOND D. WILLARD

ROBERT W. WILLIAMS

KARL R. ZIMMERMANN

CARMAN G. BLOUGH,

Director of Research

Introduction

ACCOUNTING AND THE CORPORATE SYSTEM

1. Accounting is essential to the effective functioning of any business organization, particularly the corporate form. The test of the corporate system and of the special phase of it represented by corporate accounting ultimately lies in the results which are produced. These results must be judged from the standpoint of society as a whole—not merely from that of any one group of interested persons.

2. The uses to which the corporate system is put and the controls to which it is subject change from time to time, and all parts of the machinery must be adapted to meet changes as they occur. In the past fifty years there has been an increasing use of the corporate system for the purpose of converting into readily transferable form the ownership of large, complex, and more or less permanent business enterprises. This evolution has brought in its train certain uses of the processes of law and accounting which have led to the creation of new controls, revisions of the laws, and reconsideration of accounting procedures.

3. As a result of this development, the problems in the field of accounting have increasingly come to be considered from the standpoint of the buyer or seller of an in-

terest in an enterprise, with consequent increased recognition of the significance of the income statement and a tendency to restrict narrowly charges and credits to surplus. The fairest possible presentation of periodic net income, with neither material overstatement nor understatement, is important, since the results of operations are significant not only to prospective buyers of an interest in the enterprise but also to prospective sellers. With the increasing importance of the income statement there has been a tendency to regard the balance sheet as the connecting link between successive income statements; however this concept should not obscure the fact that the balance sheet has significant uses of its own.

4. This evolution has also led to a demand for a larger degree of uniformity in accounting. *Uniformity* has usually connoted similar treatment of the same item occurring in many cases, in which sense it runs the risk of concealing important differences among cases. Another sense of the word would require that different authorities working independently on the same case should reach the same conclusions. Although uniformity is a worthwhile goal, it should not be pursued to the exclusion of other

benefits. Changes of emphasis and objective as well as changes in conditions under which business operates have led, and doubtless will continue to lead, to the adoption of new

accounting procedures. Consequently diversity of practice may continue as new practices are adopted before old ones are completely discarded.

APPLICABILITY OF COMMITTEE OPINIONS

5. The principal objective of the committee has been to narrow areas of difference and inconsistency in accounting practices, and to further the development and recognition of generally accepted accounting principles, through the issuance of opinions and recommendations that would serve as criteria for determining the suitability of accounting practices reflected in financial statements and representations of commercial and industrial companies. In this endeavor, the committee has considered the interpretation

and application of such principles as appeared to it to be pertinent to particular accounting problems. The committee has not directed its attention to accounting problems or procedures of religious, charitable, scientific, educational, and similar non-profit institutions, municipalities, professional firms, and the like. Accordingly, except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.

VOTING PROCEDURE IN ADOPTING OPINIONS

6. The committee regards the representative character and general acceptability of its opinions as of the highest importance, and to that end has adopted the following procedures:

(a) Any opinion or recommendation before issuance is submitted in final form to all members of the committee either at a meeting or by mail.

(b) No such opinion or recommendation is issued unless it has received the approval of two-thirds of the entire committee.

(c) Any member of the committee dissenting from an opinion or recommendation issued under the preceding rule is entitled to have the fact of his dissent and his reasons therefor recorded in the document in which the opinion or recommendation is presented.

7. Before reaching its conclusions, the committee gives careful consideration to prior opinions, to prevailing practices, and to the views of professional and other bodies concerned with accounting procedures.

AUTHORITY OF OPINIONS

8. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of opinions reached by the committee rests upon their general acceptability. The committee recognizes that in extraordinary cases fair presentation and justice to all parties at interest may require exceptional treatment. But the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures, to the extent that they are evidenced in committee opinions, must

be assumed by those who adopt another treatment.

9. The committee contemplates that its opinions will have application only to items material and significant in the relative circumstances. It considers that items of little or no consequence may be dealt with as expediency may suggest. However, freedom to deal expediently with immaterial items should not extend to a group of items whose cumulative effect in any one financial statement may be material and significant.

OPINIONS NOT RETROACTIVE

10. No opinion issued by the committee is intended to have a retroactive effect unless it contains a statement of such intention. Thus an opinion will ordinarily have no application to a transaction arising prior to its publication, nor to transactions in process

of completion at the time of publication. But while the committee considers it inequitable to make its statements retroactive, it does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if it appears to be desirable in the circumstances.

THE COMPANY AND ITS AUDITORS

11. Underlying all committee opinions is the fact that the accounts of a company are primarily the responsibility of management. The responsibility of the auditor is to express his opinion concerning the financial statements and to state clearly such explanations, amplifications, disagreement, or disapproval as he deems appropriate. While

opinions of the committee are addressed particularly to certified public accountants whose problem it is to decide what they may properly report, the committee recommends similar application of the procedures mentioned herein by those who prepare the accounts and financial statements.

CHAPTER 1**Prior Opinions****Section A—Rules Adopted by Membership**

Below are reprinted the six rules adopted by the membership of the Institute in 1934, the first five of which had been recommended in 1932 to the New York Stock Exchange by the Institute's committee on cooperation with stock exchanges.

1. Unrealized profit should not be credited to income account of the corporation either directly or indirectly, through the medium of charging against such unrealized profits amounts which would ordinarily fall to be charged against income account. Profit is deemed to be realized when a sale in the ordinary course of business is effected, unless the circumstances are such that the collection of the sale price is not reasonably assured. An exception to the general rule may be made in respect of inventories in industries (such as packing-house industry) in which owing to the impossibility of determining costs it is a trade custom to take inventories at net selling prices, which may exceed cost.

2. Capital surplus, however created, should not be used to relieve the income account of the current or future years of charges which would otherwise fall to be made thereagainst. This rule might be subject to the exception that where, upon reorganization, a reorganized company would be relieved of charges which would require to be made against income if the existing corporation were continued, it might be regarded as permissible to accomplish the same result without reorganization provided

the facts were as fully revealed to and the action as formally approved by the shareholders as in reorganization.

3. Earned surplus of a subsidiary company created prior to acquisition does not form a part of the consolidated earned surplus of the parent company and subsidiaries; nor can any dividend declared out of such surplus properly be credited to the income account of the parent company.

4. While it is perhaps in some circumstances permissible to show stock of a corporation held in its own treasury as an asset, if adequately disclosed, the dividends on stock so held should not be treated as a credit to the income account of the company.

5. Notes or accounts receivable due from officers, employees, or affiliated companies must be shown separately and not included under a general heading such as notes receivable or accounts receivable.

6. If capital stock is issued nominally for the acquisition of property and it appears that at about the same time, and pursuant to a previous agreement or understanding, some portion of the stock so issued is donated to the corporation, it is not permissible to treat the par value of the stock nominally issued for the property as the cost of that property. If stock so donated is subsequently sold, it is not permissible to treat the proceeds as a credit to surplus of the corporation.

Section B—Opinion Issued by Predecessor Committee

1. Following an inquiry made by the New York Stock Exchange, a predecessor

committee on accounting procedure in 1938 issued the following report:

"PROFITS OR LOSSES ON TREASURY STOCK"

2. "The executive committee of the American Institute of Accountants has directed that the following report of the committee on accounting procedure, which it received at a meeting on April 8, 1938, be published, without approval or disapproval of the committee, for the information of members of the Institute:

TO THE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE,
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF ACCOUNTANTS:

3. "This committee has had under consideration the question regarding treatment of purchase and sale by a corporation of its own stock, which was raised during 1937 by the New York Stock Exchange with the Institute's special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges.

4. "As a result of discussions which then took place, the special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges made a report which was approved by the committee on accounting procedure and the executive committee, and a copy of which was furnished to the committee on stock list of the New York Stock Exchange. The question raised was stated in the following form:

5. "'Should the difference between the purchase and resale prices of a corporation's own common stock be reflected in earned surplus (either directly or through inclusion in the income account) or should such difference be reflected in capital surplus?'"

6. "The opinion of the special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges reads in part as follows:

7. "'Apparently there is general agreement that the difference between the purchase price and the stated value of a corporation's common stock purchased and retired should be reflected in capital surplus. Your committee believes that while

the net asset value of the shares of common stock outstanding in the hands of the public may be increased or decreased by such purchase and retirement, such transactions relate to the capital of the corporation and do not give rise to corporate profits or losses. Your committee can see no essential difference between (a) the purchase and retirement of a corporation's own common stock and the subsequent issue of common shares, and (b) the purchase and resale of its own common stock.'

8. "This committee is in agreement with the views thus expressed; it is aware that such transactions have been held to give rise to taxable income, but it does not feel that such decisions constitute any bar to the application of correct accounting procedure as above outlined.

9. "The special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges continued and concluded its report with the following statement:

10. "'Accordingly, although your committee recognizes that there may be cases where the transactions involved are so inconsequential as to be immaterial, it does not believe that, as a broad general principle, such transactions should be reflected in earned surplus (either directly or through inclusion in the income account).'

11. "This committee agrees with the special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges, but thinks it desirable to point out that the qualification should not be applied to any transaction which, although in itself inconsiderable in amount, is a part of a series of transactions which in the aggregate are of substantial importance.

12. "This committee recommends that the views expressed be circulated for the information of members of the Institute."

CHAPTER 2

Form of Statements

Section A—Comparative Financial Statements

1. The presentation of comparative financial statements in annual and other reports enhances the usefulness of such reports and brings out more clearly the nature and trends of current changes affecting the enterprise. Such presentation emphasizes the fact that statements for a series of periods

are far more significant than those for a single period and that the accounts for one period are but an instalment of what is essentially a continuous history.

2. In any one year it is ordinarily desirable that the balance sheet, the income statement, and the surplus statement be

given for one or more preceding years as well as for the current year. Footnotes, explanations, and accountants' qualifications which appeared on the statements for the preceding years should be repeated, or at least referred to, in the comparative statements to the extent that they continue to be of significance. If, because of reclassifications or for other reasons, changes have occurred in the manner of or basis for presenting corresponding items for two or more periods, information should be furnished which will explain the change. This procedure is in conformity with the well recognized principle that any change in

practice which affects comparability should be disclosed.

3. It is necessary that prior-year figures shown for comparative purposes be in fact comparable with those shown for the most recent period, or that any exceptions to comparability be clearly brought out.

4. Circumstances vary so greatly that it is not practicable to deal here specifically with all situations. The independent accountant should, however, make very clear what statements are included within the scope of his report.

Section B—Combined Statement of Income and Earned Surplus

1. Attention has already been called in the introduction to the increased significance attributed to the income statement by users of financial statements and to the general tendency to regard the balance sheet as the connecting link between successive income statements. It therefore becomes important to consider the problems presented by the

practice of combining the annual income statement with the statement of earned surplus.

2. The combining of these two statements, where possible, will often be found to be convenient and desirable. Where this presentation is contemplated, however, certain considerations should be borne in mind if undesirable consequences are to be avoided.

ADVANTAGES OF THE COMBINED STATEMENT

3. Over the years it is plainly desirable that all costs, expenses, and losses, and all profits of a business, other than decreases or increases arising directly from its capital-stock transactions, be included in the determination of income. If this principle could in practice be carried out perfectly, there would be no charges or credits to earned surplus except those relating to distributions and appropriations of final net income. This is an ideal upon which all may agree, but because of conditions impossible to foresee it often fails of attainment. From time to time charges and credits are made to surplus which clearly affect the cumulative total of income for a series of years, although their exclusion from the income statement of a single year is justifiable. There is danger that unless the two statements are closely connected such items will be overlooked, or at any rate not given full weight, in any attempt on the part of the reader to compute a company's long-run income or its income-earning capacity.

4. There is a marked tendency to exaggerate the significance of the net income for a single year, particularly the degree to which the net income can be identified exclusively with that year. In so far as the combined form calls attention to the character of the income statement as a tentative instalment in the long-time financial results it serves a useful purpose.

5. To summarize, the combined income and earned surplus statement serves the purpose of showing in one statement both the earnings applicable to the particular period and modifications of earned surplus on a long-run basis. It distinguishes current charges and credits related to a company's more usual or typical business operations from material extraordinary charges and credits¹ which may have arisen during the period by placing them in different sections of a continuous statement.

DISADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS

6. In the combined statement, net income for the year appears somewhere within the

statement and not at the end. Such wording and arrangement should be used as will

¹ See chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

make this item unmistakably clear and leave the reader in no doubt as to the point at which the net income has been determined.

7. While it is true that the net income amount, when expressed as earnings per share, is often given undue prominence and its significance exaggerated, there nevertheless remain the responsibility for determination of net income by sound methods

and the duty to show it clearly. The adoption of the combined statement provides no excuse for less care in distinguishing charges and credits to income from charges and credits to surplus than would be required if separate statements of income and surplus were presented. Failure to exercise care in the use of this form of statement would immediately discredit it.

CHAPTER 3

Working Capital

Section A—Current Assets and Current Liabilities

1. The working capital of a borrower has always been of prime interest to grantors of credit; and bond indentures, credit agreements, and preferred stock agreements commonly contain provisions restricting corporate actions which would effect a reduction or impairment of working capital. Many such contracts forego precise or uniform definitions and merely provide that current assets and current liabilities shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Considerable variation and inconsistency exists, however, with respect to their classification and display in financial statements. In this section the committee discusses the nature of current assets and current liabilities with a view toward a more useful presentation thereof in financial statements.

2. The committee believes that, in the past, definitions of current assets have tended to be overly concerned with whether the assets may be immediately realizable. The discussion which follows takes cognizance of the tendency for creditors to rely more upon the ability of debtors to pay their obligations out of the proceeds of current operations and less upon the debtor's ability to pay in case of liquidation. It should be emphasized that financial statements of a going concern are prepared on the assumption that the company will continue in business. Accordingly, the views expressed in this section represent a departure from any narrow definition or strict *one year* interpretation of either current assets or current liabilities; the objective is to relate the criteria developed to the operating cycle of a business.

3. Financial position, as it is reflected by the records and accounts from which the statement is prepared, is revealed in a presentation of the assets and liabilities of the enterprise. In the statements of manufac-

turing, trading, and service enterprises these assets and liabilities are generally classified and segregated; if they are classified logically, summations or totals of the *current* or *circulating* or *working* assets, hereinafter referred to as *current assets*, and of obligations currently payable, designated as *current liabilities*, will permit the ready determination of working capital. *Working capital*, sometimes called *net working capital*, is represented by the excess of current assets over current liabilities and identifies the relatively liquid portion of total enterprise capital which constitutes a margin or buffer for meeting obligations within the ordinary operating cycle of the business. If the conventions of accounting relative to the identification and presentation of current assets and current liabilities are made logical and consistent, the amounts, bases of valuation, and composition of such assets and liabilities and their relation to the total assets or capital employed will provide valuable data for credit and management purposes and afford a sound basis for comparisons from year to year. It is recognized that there may be exceptions, in special cases, to certain of the inclusions and exclusions as set forth in this section. When such exceptions occur they should be accorded the treatment merited in the particular circumstances under the general principles outlined herein.

4. For accounting purposes, the term *current assets* is used to designate cash and other assets or resources commonly identified as those which are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed during the normal operating cycle of the business. Thus the term comprehends in general such resources as (a) cash available for current operations and items which are the equivalent of cash; (b) inventories of merchandise, raw materials, goods in process,

finished goods, operating supplies, and ordinary maintenance material and parts; (c) trade accounts, notes, and acceptances receivable; (d) receivables from officers, employees, affiliates, and others, if collectible in the ordinary course of business within a year; (e) installment or deferred accounts and notes receivable if they conform generally to normal trade practices and terms within the business; (f) marketable securities representing the investment of cash available for current operations; and (g) prepaid expenses such as insurance, interest, rents, taxes, unused royalties, current paid advertising service not yet received, and operating supplies. Prepaid expenses are not current assets in the sense that they will be converted into cash but in the sense that, if not paid in advance, they would require the use of current assets during the operating cycle.

5. The ordinary operations of a business involve a circulation of capital within the current asset group. Cash is expended for materials, finished parts, operating supplies, labor, and other factory services, and such expenditures are accumulated as inventory cost. Inventory costs, upon sale of the products to which such costs attach, are converted into trade receivables and ultimately into cash again. The average time intervening between the acquisition of materials or services entering this process and the final cash realization constitutes an *operating cycle*. A one-year time period is to be used as a basis for the segregation of current assets in cases where there are several operating cycles occurring within a year. However, where the period of the operating cycle is more than twelve months, as in, for instance, the tobacco, distillery, and lumber businesses, the longer period should be used. Where a particular business has no clearly defined operating cycle, the one-year rule should govern.

6. This concept of the nature of current assets contemplates the exclusion from that classification of such resources as: (a) cash and claims to cash which are restricted as to withdrawal or use for other than current operations, are designated for expenditure in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent

assets, or are segregated¹ for the liquidation of long-term debts; (b) investments in securities (whether marketable or not) or advances which have been made for the purposes of control, affiliation, or other continuing business advantage; (c) receivables arising from unusual transactions (such as the sale of capital assets, or loans or advances to affiliates, officers, or employees) which are not expected to be collected within twelve months; (d) cash surrender value of life insurance policies; (e) land and other natural resources; (f) depreciable assets; and (g) long-term prepayments which are fairly chargeable to the operations of several years, or deferred charges such as unamortized debt discount and expense, bonus payments under a long-term lease, costs of rearrangement of factory layout or removal to a new location, and certain types of research and development costs.

7. The term *current liabilities* is used principally to designate obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources properly classifiable as current assets, or the creation of other current liabilities. As a balance-sheet category, the classification is intended to include obligations for items which have entered into the operating cycle, such as payables incurred in the acquisition of materials and supplies to be used in the production of goods or in providing services to be offered for sale; collections received in advance of the delivery of goods or performance of services;² and debts which arise from operations directly related to the operating cycle, such as accruals for wages, salaries, commissions, rentals, royalties, and income and other taxes. Other liabilities whose regular and ordinary liquidation is expected to occur within a relatively short period of time, usually twelve months, are also intended for inclusion, such as short-term debts arising from the acquisition of capital assets, serial maturities of long-term obligations, amounts required to be expended within one year under sinking fund provisions, and agency obligations arising from the collection or acceptance of cash or other assets for the account of third persons.³

¹ Even though not actually set aside in special accounts, funds that are clearly to be used in the near future for the liquidation of long-term debts, payments to sinking funds, or for similar purposes should also, under this concept, be excluded from current assets. However, where such funds are considered to offset maturing debt which has properly been set up as a current liability, they may be included within the current asset classification.

² Examples of such current liabilities are obligations resulting from advance collections on

ticket sales, which will normally be liquidated in the ordinary course of business by the delivery of services. On the contrary, obligations representing long-term deferrals of the delivery of goods or services would not be shown as current liabilities. Examples of the latter are the issuance of a long-term warranty or the advance receipt by a lessor of rental for the final period of a ten-year lease as a condition to execution of the lease agreement.

³ Loans accompanied by pledge of life insurance policies would be classified as current lia-

8. This concept of current liabilities would include estimated or accrued amounts which are expected to be required to cover expenditures within the year for known obligations (a) the amount of which can be determined only approximately (as in the case of provisions for accruing bonus payments) or (b) where the specific person or persons to whom payment will be made cannot as yet be designated (as in the case of estimated costs to be incurred in connection with guaranteed servicing or repair of products already sold). The current liability classification, however, is not intended to include a contractual obligation falling due at an early date which is expected to be refunded,⁴ or debts to be liquidated by funds which have been accumulated in accounts of a type not properly classified as current assets, or long-term obligations incurred to provide increased amounts of working capital for long periods. When the amounts of the periodic payments of an obligation are, by contract, measured by current transactions, as for example by rents or revenues received in the case of equipment trust certificates or by the depletion of natural resources in the case of property obligations, the portion of the total obligation to be included as a current lia-

bility should be that representing the amount accrued at the balance-sheet date.

9. The amounts at which various current assets are carried do not always represent their present realizable cash values. Accounts receivable net of allowances for uncollectible accounts, and for unearned discounts where unearned discounts are considered, are effectively stated at the amount of cash estimated as realizable. However, practice varies with respect to the carrying basis for current assets such as marketable securities and inventories. In the case of marketable securities where market value is less than cost by a substantial amount and it is evident that the decline in market value is not due to a mere temporary condition, the amount to be included as a current asset should not exceed the market value. The basis for carrying inventories is stated in chapter 4. It is important that the amounts at which current assets are stated be supplemented by information which reveals, for temporary investments, their market value at the balance-sheet date, and for the various classifications of inventory items, the basis upon which their amounts are stated and, where practicable, indication of the method of determining the cost—e.g., *average cost, first-in first-out, last-in first-out, etc.*

One member of the committee, Mr. Mason, assented with qualification to adoption of section (a) of chapter 3.

Mr. Mason does not accept the view implied in paragraph 6 that unamortized debt discount is an asset. Also, referring to paragraph 9, he believes that the market value is the most significant figure in connection

with marketable securities held as temporary investments of cash, and would prefer to show such securities in the accounts at their market value, whether greater or less than cost. He would accept as an alternative the use of cost in the accounts with market value shown parenthetically in the balance sheet.

Section B—Application of United States Government Securities Against Liabilities for Federal Taxes on Income

1. It is a general principle of accounting that the offsetting of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet is improper except where a right of set-off exists. An example of such exception was the showing of United States Treasury Tax Notes, Tax Series A-1943 and B-1943, as a deduction

from the liability for federal taxes on income, which the committee approved in 1942.

2. In view of the special nature of the terms of the 1943 tax notes, the intention of the purchaser to use them to pay federal income taxes could be assumed, since he

liabilities when, by their terms or by intent, they are to be repaid within twelve months. The pledging of life insurance policies does not affect the classification of the asset any more than does the pledging of receivables, inventories, real estate, or other assets as collateral for a short-term loan. However, when a loan on a life insurance policy is obtained from the insurance company with the intent that it will

not be paid but will be liquidated by deduction from the proceeds of the policy upon maturity or cancellation, the obligation should be excluded from current liabilities.

⁴ There should, however, be full disclosure that such obligation has been omitted from the current liabilities and a statement of the reason for such omission should be given. Cf note 1.

received no interest or other advantage unless they were so used. Some purchasers doubtless viewed their purchase of the notes as being, to all intents and purposes, an advance payment of the taxes.

3. In the absence of evidence of a contrary intent, it was considered acceptable, and in accordance with good accounting practice, to show the notes in the current liability section of the balance sheet as a deduction from federal taxes on income in an amount not to exceed the accrued liability for such taxes. The full amount of the accrued liability was to be shown with a deduction for the tax payment value of the notes at the date of the balance sheet.

4. It also was recognized as clearly proper to show the notes in the current asset section of the balance sheet as any other temporary investments are shown. If at the balance-sheet date or at the date of the independent auditor's report there was evidence that the original intent was changed, the notes were to be shown in the current asset section of the balance sheet.

5. Government securities having restrictive terms similar to those contained in the 1943 tax series notes are no longer issued, although certain other types of government securities have since been issued which are acceptable in payment of liabilities for federal taxes on income. However, because of the effect on the current position of large tax accruals and the related accumulations

of liquid assets to meet such liabilities, many companies have adopted the practice of acquiring and holding government securities of various issues in amounts related to the estimated tax liability. In their financial statements these companies have often expressed this relationship by showing such securities as a deduction from the tax liability, even though the particular securities were not by their terms acceptable in payment of taxes. If the government securities involved may, by their terms, be surrendered in payment of taxes, the above practice clearly falls within the principle of the permissive exception described in paragraph 1. The committee further believes that the extension of the practice to include the offset of other types of United States government securities, although a deviation from the general rule against offsets, is not so significant a deviation as to call for an exception in an accountant's report on the financial statements.

6. Suggestions have been received that similar considerations may be advanced in favor of the offset of cash or other assets against the income and excess profits tax liability or against other amounts owing to the federal government. In the opinion of the committee, however, any such extension or application of the exception, recognized as to United States government securities and liabilities for federal taxes on income, is not to be regarded as acceptable practice.

One member of the committee, Mr. Calkins, assented with qualification to adoption of section (b) of chapter 3.

Mr. Calkins does not approve the concluding sentence of paragraph 5, which states that the offset of other types of United States Government securities, although a deviation from the general rule against offsets, is not so significant a deviation as to call for an exception in an accountant's report. He believes that the significance of such a deviation is a matter

for judgment based on the facts of a particular case; that the broader language of the statement constitutes a condonation of the practice of offsetting against tax liabilities United States Government obligations which are not by their terms acceptable in payment of federal taxes; and that the condonation of such a practice is inconsistent with the opinion of the committee expressed in paragraph 6, with which he agrees, that cash and other assets should not be offset against liabilities for federal taxes.

CHAPTER 4

Inventory Pricing

1. Whenever the operation of a business includes the ownership of a stock of goods, it is necessary for adequate financial ac-

counting purposes that inventories be properly compiled periodically and recorded in the accounts.¹ Such inventories are required

¹ Prudent reliance upon perpetual inventory records is not precluded.

both for the statement of financial position and for the periodic measurement of income.

2. This chapter sets forth the general principles applicable to the pricing of in-

ventories of mercantile and manufacturing enterprises. Its conclusions are not directed to or necessarily applicable to noncommercial businesses or to regulated utilities.

STATEMENT 1

The term *inventory* is used herein to designate the aggregate to those items of tangible personal property which (1) are held for sale in the ordinary course of business, (2) are in process of production for such sale, or (3) are to be currently consumed in the production of goods or services to be available for sale.

Discussion

3. The term *inventory* embraces goods awaiting sale (the merchandise of a trading concern and the finished goods of a manufacturer), goods in the course of production (work in process), and goods to be consumed directly or indirectly in production

(raw materials and supplies). This definition of inventories excludes long-term assets subject to depreciation accounting, or goods which, when put into use, will be so classified. The fact that a depreciable asset is retired from regular use and held for sale does not indicate that the item should be classified as part of the inventory. Raw materials and supplies purchased for production may be used or consumed for the construction of long-term assets or other purposes not related to production, but the fact that inventory items representing a small portion of the total may not be absorbed ultimately in the production process does not require separate classification. By trade practice, operating materials and supplies of certain types of companies such as oil producers are usually treated as inventory.

STATEMENT 2

A major objective of accounting for inventories is the proper determination of income through the process of matching appropriate costs against revenues.

Discussion

4. An inventory has financial significance because revenues may be obtained from its sale, or from the sale of the goods or services in whose production it is used. Normally such revenues arise in a continuous repetitive process or cycle of operations by which goods are acquired and sold, and further goods are acquired for additional sales. In accounting for the goods in the

inventory at any point of time, the major objective is the matching of appropriate costs against revenues in order that there may be a proper determination of the realized income. Thus, the inventory at any given date is the balance of costs applicable to goods on hand remaining after the matching of absorbed costs with concurrent revenues. This balance is appropriately carried to future periods provided it does not exceed an amount properly chargeable against the revenues expected to be obtained from ultimate disposition of the goods carried forward. In practice, this balance is determined by the process of pricing the articles comprised in the inventory.

STATEMENT 3

The primary basis of accounting for inventories is cost, which has been defined generally as the price paid or consideration given to acquire an asset. As applied to inventories, cost means in principle the sum of the applicable expenditures and charges directly or indirectly incurred in bringing an article to its existing condition and location.

Discussion

5. In keeping with the principle that accounting is primarily based on cost, there is a presumption that inventories should be stated at cost. The definition of cost as applied to inventories is understood to mean acquisition and production cost,² and its determination involves many problems. Although principles for the determination of inventory costs may be easily stated, their

² In the case of goods which have been written down below cost at the close of a fiscal period,

such reduced amount is to be considered the cost for subsequent accounting purposes.

application, particularly to such inventory items as work in process and finished goods, is difficult because of the variety of problems encountered in the allocation of costs and charges. For example, under some circumstances, items such as idle facility expense, excessive spoilage, double freight, and rehandling costs may be so abnormal as to require treatment as current period charges rather than as a portion of the inventory cost. Also, general and administrative expenses should be included as period charges, except for the portion of such expenses that

may be clearly related to production and thus constitute a part of inventory costs (product charges). Selling expenses constitute no part of inventory costs. It should also be recognized that the exclusion of all overheads from inventory costs does not constitute an accepted accounting procedure. The exercise of judgment in an individual situation involves a consideration of the adequacy of the procedures of the cost accounting system in use, the soundness of the principles thereof, and their consistent application.

STATEMENT 4

Cost for inventory purposes may be determined under any one of several assumptions as to the flow of cost factors (such as first-in first-out, average, and last-in first-out); the major objective in selecting a method should be to choose the one which, under the circumstances, most clearly reflects periodic income.

Discussion

6. The cost to be matched against revenue from a sale may not be the identified cost of the specific item which is sold, especially in cases in which similar goods are purchased at different times and at different prices. While in some lines of business specific lots are clearly identified from the time of purchase through the time of sale and are costed on this basis, ordinarily the identity of goods is lost between the time of acquisition and the time of sale. In any event, if the materials purchased in various lots are identical and inter-

changeable, the use of identified cost of the various lots may not produce the most useful financial statements. This fact has resulted in the development of general acceptance of several assumptions with respect to the flow of cost factors (such as *first-in first-out, average, and last-in first-out*) to provide practical bases for the measurement of periodic income.³ In some situations a reversed mark-up procedure of inventory pricing, such as the retail inventory method, may be both practical and appropriate. The business operations in some cases may be such as to make it desirable to apply one of the acceptable methods of determining cost to one portion of the inventory or components thereof and another of the acceptable methods to other portions of the inventory.

7. Although selection of the method should be made on the basis of the individual circumstances, it is obvious that financial statements will be more useful if uniform methods of inventory pricing are adopted by all companies within a given industry.

STATEMENT 5

A departure from the cost basis of pricing the inventory is required when the utility of the goods is no longer as great as its cost. Where there is evidence that the utility of goods, in their disposal in the ordinary course of business, will be less than cost, whether due to physical deterioration, obsolescence, changes in price levels, or other causes, the difference should be recognized as a loss of the current period. This is generally accomplished by stat-

ing such goods at a lower level commonly designated as *market*.

Discussion

8. Although the cost basis ordinarily achieves the objective of a proper matching of costs and revenues, under certain circumstances cost may not be the amount properly chargeable against the revenues of future periods. A departure from cost is required in these circumstances because cost is satisfactory only if the utility of the goods has not diminished since their acqui-

³ Standard costs are acceptable if adjusted at reasonable intervals to reflect current conditions so that at the balance-sheet date standard costs reasonably approximate costs computed under one of the recognized bases. In such cases descriptive language should be used which will

express this relationship, as, for instance, "approximate costs determined on the first-in first-out basis," or, if it is desired to mention standard costs, "at standard costs, approximating average costs."

sition; a loss of utility is to be reflected as a charge against the revenues of the period in which it occurs. Thus, in accounting for inventories, a loss should be recognized whenever the utility of goods is impaired by damage, deterioration, obsolescence, changes in price levels, or other causes.

STATEMENT 6

As used in the phrase *lower of cost or market*⁴ the term *market* means current replacement cost (by purchase or by reproduction, as the case may be) except that:

- (1) Market should not exceed the net realizable value (i.e., estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less reasonably predictable costs of completion and disposal); and
- (2) Market should not be less than net realizable value reduced by an allowance for an approximately normal profit margin.

Discussion

9. The rule of *cost or market, whichever is lower* is intended to provide a means of measuring the residual usefulness of an inventory expenditure. The term *market* is therefore to be interpreted as indicating utility on the inventory date and may be thought of in terms of the equivalent expenditure which would have to be made in the ordinary course at that date to procure corresponding utility. As a general guide, utility is indicated primarily by the current cost of replacement of the goods as they would be obtained by purchase or reproduction. In applying the rule, however, judgment must always be exercised and no loss should be recognized unless the evidence indicates clearly that a loss

The measurement of such losses is accomplished by applying the rule of pricing inventories at *cost or market, whichever is lower*. This provides a practical means of measuring utility and thereby determining the amount of the loss to be recognized and accounted for in the current period.

has been sustained. There are therefore exceptions to such a standard. Replacement or reproduction prices would not be appropriate as a measure of utility when the estimated sales value, reduced by the costs of completion and disposal, is lower, in which case the realizable value so determined more appropriately measures utility. Furthermore, where the evidence indicates that cost will be recovered with an approximately normal profit upon sale in the ordinary course of business, no loss should be recognized even though replacement or reproduction costs are lower. This might be true, for example, in the case of production under firm sales contracts at fixed prices, or when a reasonable volume of future orders is assured at stable selling prices.

10. Because of the many variations of circumstances encountered in inventory pricing, Statement 6 is intended as a guide rather than a literal rule. It should be applied realistically in the light of the objectives expressed in this chapter and with due regard to the form, content, and composition of the inventory. The committee considers, for example, that the retail inventory method, if adequate markdowns are currently taken, accomplishes the objectives described herein. It also recognizes that, if a business is expected to lose money for a sustained period, the inventory should not be written down to offset a loss inherent in the subsequent operations.

STATEMENT 7

Depending on the character and composition of the inventory, the rule of *cost or market, whichever is lower* may properly be applied either directly to each item or to the total of the inventory (or, in some cases, to the total of the components of each major category). The method should be that which most clearly reflects periodic income.

Discussion

11. The purpose of reducing inventory to *market* is to reflect fairly the income of the period. The most common practice is to apply the *lower of cost or market* rule separately to each item of the inventory. However, if there is only one end-product category the cost utility of the total stock—the inventory in its entirety—may have the

⁴ The terms *cost or market, whichever is lower* and *lower of cost or market* are used synonymously in general practice and in this chapter.

The committee does not express any preference for either of the two alternatives.

greatest significance for accounting purposes. Accordingly, the reduction of individual items to *market* may not always lead to the most useful result if the utility of the total inventory to the business is not below its cost. This might be the case if selling prices are not affected by temporary or small fluctuations in current costs of purchase or manufacture. Similarly, where more than one major product or operational category exists, the application of the *cost or market, whichever is lower* rule to the total of the items included in such major categories may result in the most useful determination of income.

12. When no loss of income is expected to take place as a result of a reduction of cost prices of certain goods because others forming components of the same general categories of finished products have a market equally in excess of cost, such components need not be adjusted to market to the extent that they are in balanced quantities. Thus, in such cases, the rule of *cost or market, whichever is lower* may be applied directly to the totals of the entire

inventory, rather than to the individual inventory items, if they enter into the same category of finished product and if they are in balanced quantities, provided the procedure is applied consistently from year to year.

13. To the extent, however, that the stocks of particular materials or components are excessive in relation to others, the more widely recognized procedure of applying the *lower of cost or market* to the individual items constituting the excess should be followed. This would also apply in cases in which the items enter into the production of unrelated products or products having a material variation in the rate of turnover. Unless an effective method of classifying categories is practicable, the rule should be applied to each item in the inventory.

14. When substantial and unusual losses result from the application of this rule it will frequently be desirable to disclose the amount of the loss in the income statement as a charge separately identified from the consumed inventory costs described as *cost of goods sold*.

STATEMENT 8

The basis of stating inventories must be consistently applied and should be disclosed in the financial statements; whenever a significant change is made therein, there should be disclosure of the nature of the change and, if material, the effect on income.

Discussion

15. While the basis of stating inventories does not affect the over-all gain or loss on the ultimate disposition of inventory items, any inconsistency in the selection or

employment of a basis may improperly affect the periodic amounts of income or loss. Because of the common use and importance of periodic statements, a procedure adopted for the treatment of inventory items should be consistently applied in order that the results reported may be fairly allocated as between years. A change of such basis may have an important effect upon the interpretation of the financial statements both before and after that change, and hence, in the event of a change, a full disclosure of its nature and of its effect, if material, upon income should be made.

STATEMENT 9

Only in exceptional cases may inventories properly be stated above cost. For example, precious metals having a fixed monetary value with no substantial cost of marketing may be stated at such monetary value; any other exceptions must be justifiable by inability to determine appropriate approximate costs, immediate marketability at quoted market price, and the characteristic of unit interchangeability. Where goods are

stated above cost this fact should be fully disclosed.

Discussion

16. It is generally recognized that income accrues only at the time of sale, and that gains may not be anticipated by reflecting assets at their current sales prices. For certain articles, however, exceptions are permissible. Inventories of gold and silver, when there is an effective government-controlled market at a fixed monetary value, are ordinarily reflected at selling prices. A similar treatment is not uncommon for in-

ventories representing agricultural, mineral, and other products, units of which are interchangeable and have an immediate marketability at quoted prices and for which appropriate costs may be difficult to obtain.

Where such inventories are stated at sales prices, they should of course be reduced by expenditures to be incurred in disposal, and the use of such basis should be fully disclosed in the financial statements.

STATEMENT 10

Accrued net losses on firm purchase commitments for goods for inventory, measured in the same way as are inventory losses, should, if material, be recognized in the accounts and the amounts thereof separately disclosed in the income statement.

Discussion

17. The recognition in a current period of losses arising from the decline in the utility of cost expenditures is equally applicable to similar losses which are expected to arise from firm, uncancelable, and un-

hedged commitments for the future purchase of inventory items. The net loss on such commitments should be measured in the same way as are inventory losses and, if material, should be recognized in the accounts and separately disclosed in the income statement. The utility of such commitments is not impaired, and hence there is no loss, when the amounts to be realized from the disposition of the future inventory items are adequately protected by firm sales contracts or when there are other circumstances which reasonably assure continuing sales without price decline.

One member of the committee, Mr. Wellington, assented with qualification, and two members, Messrs. Mason and Peloubet, dissented to adoption of chapter 4.

Mr. Wellington objects to footnote (2) to statement 3. He believes that an exception should be made for goods costed on the *last-in first-out* (LIFO) basis. In the case of goods costed on all bases other than LIFO the reduced amount (market below cost) is cleared from the accounts through the regular accounting entries of the subsequent period, and if the market price rises to or above the original cost there will be an increased profit in the subsequent period. Accounts kept under the LIFO method should also show a similar increased profit in the subsequent period, which will be shown if the LIFO inventory is restored to its original cost. To do otherwise, as required by footnote (2), is to carry the LIFO inventory, not at the lower of cost or current market, but at the lowest

market ever known since the LIFO method was adopted by the company.

Mr. Mason dissents from this chapter because of its acceptance of the inconsistencies inherent in *cost or market whichever is lower*. In his opinion a drop in selling price below cost is no more of a realized loss than a rise above cost is a realized gain under a consistent criterion of realization.

Mr. Peloubet believes it is ordinarily preferable to carry inventory at not less than recoverable cost, and particularly in the case of manufactured or partially manufactured goods which can be sold only in finished form. He recognizes that application of the *cost or market* valuation basis necessitates the shifting of income from one period to another, but objects to unnecessarily accentuating this shift by the use, even limited as it is in this chapter, of reproduction or replacement cost as *market* when such cost is less than net selling price.

CHAPTER 5

Intangible Assets

1. This chapter deals with problems involved in accounting for certain types of assets classified by accountants as intangibles, specifically, those acquired by the issuance of securities or purchased for cash or other consideration. Such assets may be purchased or acquired separately for a specified consideration or may be purchased

or acquired, together with other assets, for a lump-sum consideration without specification by either the seller or the purchaser, at the time of purchase, of the portions of the total price which are applicable to the respective assets thus acquired. In dealing with the intangible assets herein considered, important questions arise as to the initial

carrying amount of such assets, the amortization of such amount where their term of existence is definitely limited or problematical, and their write-down or write-off at some later time where there is a substantial and permanent decline in the value of such assets. These questions involve basic accounting principles of balance-sheet presen-

tation and income determination and this chapter is designed to promote a fuller consideration of those principles. It does not, however, deal with the problems of accounting for intangibles developed in the regular course of business by research, experimentation, advertising, or otherwise.

CLASSIFICATION OF INTANGIBLES

2. The intangibles herein considered may be broadly classified as follows:

(a) Those having a term of existence limited by law, regulation, or agreement, or by their nature (such as patents, copyrights, leases, licenses, franchises for a fixed term, and goodwill as to which there is evidence of limited duration);

(b) Those having no such limited term of existence and as to which there is, at the time of acquisition, no indication of limited life (such as goodwill generally, going value, trade names, secret processes, subscription lists, perpetual franchises, and organization costs).

INITIAL CARRYING AMOUNT

4. The initial amount assigned to all types of intangibles should be cost, in accordance with the generally accepted accounting principle that assets should be stated at cost when they are acquired. In the case of non-cash acquisitions, as, for example,

where intangibles are acquired in exchange for securities, cost may be considered as being either the fair value of the consideration given or the fair value of the property or right acquired, whichever is the more clearly evident.

AMORTIZATION OF INTANGIBLES

Type (a)

5. The cost of type (a) intangibles should be amortized by systematic charges in the income statement over the period benefited, as in the case of other assets having a limited period of usefulness. If it becomes evident that the period benefited will be longer or shorter than originally estimated, recognition thereof may take the form of an appropriate decrease or increase in the rate of amortization or, if such increased charges would result in distortion of income, a partial write-down may be made by a charge to earned surplus.

Type (b)

6. When it becomes reasonably evident that the term of existence of a type (b) intangible has become limited and that it has therefore become a type (a) intangible, its cost should be amortized by systematic charges in the income statement over the

estimated remaining period of usefulness. If, however, the period of amortization is relatively short so that misleading inferences might be drawn as a result of inclusion of substantial charges in the income statement a partial write-down may be made by a charge to earned surplus,¹ and the rest of the cost may be amortized over the remaining period of usefulness.

7. When a corporation decides that a type (b) intangible may not continue to have value during the entire life of the enterprise it may amortize the cost of such intangible by systematic charges against income despite the fact that there are no present indications of limited existence or loss of value which would indicate that it has become type (a), and despite the fact that expenditures are being made to maintain its value. Such amortization is within the discretion of the company and is not to be regarded as obligatory. The plan

¹ See chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

of amortization should be reasonable; it should be based on all the surrounding circumstances, including the basic nature of the intangible and the expenditures currently being made for development, experimentation, and sales promotion. Where the intangible is an important income-producing factor and is currently being maintained by

advertising or otherwise, the period of amortization should be reasonably long. The procedure should be formally approved and the reason for amortization, the rate used, and the shareholders' or directors' approval thereof should be disclosed in the financial statements.

WRITE-OFF OF INTANGIBLES

8. The cost of type (b) intangibles should be written off when it becomes reasonably evident that they have become worthless. Under such circumstances the amount at which they are carried on the books should be charged off in the income statement or, if the amount is so large that its effect on income may give rise to misleading inferences, it should be charged to earned surplus.¹ In determining whether an invest-

ment in type (b) intangibles has become or is likely to become worthless, consideration should be given to the fact that in some cases intangibles acquired by purchase may merge with, or be replaced by, intangibles acquired or developed with respect to other products or lines of business and that in such circumstances the discontinuance of a product or line of business may not in fact indicate loss of value.

LIMITATION ON WRITE-OFF OF INTANGIBLES

9. Lump-sum write-offs of intangibles should not be made to earned surplus immediately after acquisition, nor should intangibles be charged against capital surplus. If not amortized systematically, intangibles

should be carried at cost until an event has taken place which indicates a loss or a limitation on the useful life of the intangibles.

PURCHASE OF SUBSIDIARY'S STOCK OR BASKET PURCHASE OF ASSETS

10. A problem arises in cases where a group of intangibles or a mixed aggregate of tangible and intangible property is acquired for a lump-sum consideration, or when the consideration given for a stock investment in a subsidiary is greater than the net assets of such subsidiary applicable thereto, as carried on its books at the date of acquisition. In this latter type of situation there is a presumption that the parent company, in effect, placed a valuation greater than their carrying amount on some of the assets of the subsidiary in arriving at the price it was willing to pay for its investment therein. The parent corporation may have (a) paid amounts in excess of carrying amounts for specific assets of the sub-

siary or (b) paid for the general goodwill of the subsidiary. In these cases, if practicable, there should be an allocation, as between tangible and intangible property, of the cost of the mixed aggregate of property or of the excess of a parent's investment over its share of the amount at which the subsidiary carried its net assets on its books at the date of acquisition. Any amount allocated to intangibles should be further allocated to determine, if practicable, a separate cost for each type (a) intangible and for at least the aggregate of all type (b) intangibles. The amounts so allocated to intangibles should thereafter be dealt with in accordance with the procedures outlined in this chapter.

CHAPTER 6

Contingency Reserves

1. The purpose of this chapter is to consider problems which arise in the accounting treatment of two types of reserves whose misuse may be the means of either arbitrarily reducing income or shifting income from one period to another:

(a) General contingency reserves whose purposes are not specific;

(b) Reserves designed to set aside a part of current profits to absorb losses feared or expected in connection with inventories on hand or future purchases of inventory.

2. Charges to provide, either directly or by use of a reserve, for losses due to obsolescence or deterioration of inventory or for

¹ See chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

reducing an inventory to market, or for reducing an inventory to a recognized basis such as *last-in first-out* or its equivalent in accordance with an announced change in policy to be consistently followed thereafter, are not under consideration here.

3. If a provision for a reserve, made against income, is not properly chargeable to current revenues, net income for the period is understated by the amount of the provision. If a reserve so created is used to relieve the income of subsequent periods of charges that would otherwise be made against it, the income of such subsequent periods is thereby overstated. By use of the reserve in this manner, profit for a given period may be significantly increased or decreased by mere whim. As a result of this practice the integrity of financial statements is impaired, and the statements tend to be misleading.

4. The committee recognizes the character of the income statement as a tentative instalment in the record of long-time financial results, and is aware of the tendency to exaggerate the significance of the net income for a single year.¹ Nevertheless, there still exist the responsibility for determining net income as fairly as possible by sound methods consistently applied and the duty to show it clearly. In accomplishing these objectives, it is deemed desirable to provide, by charges in the current income statement, properly classified, or all foreseeable costs and losses applicable against current revenues, to the extent that they can be measured and allocated to fiscal periods with reasonable approximation.

5. Accordingly, inventories on hand or contracted for should be priced in accordance with principles stated elsewhere by the committee.² When inventories which have been priced in accordance with those principles are further written down by a charge to income, either directly or through the use of a reserve, current revenues are not properly matched with applicable costs, and charges to future operations are correspondingly reduced. This process results in the shifting of profits from one period to another in violation of the principle that reserves should not be used for the purpose of equalizing reported income.

6. It has been argued with respect to inventories that losses which will have to be taken in periods of receding price levels have their origins in periods of rising prices,

and that therefore reserves to provide for future price declines should be created in periods of rising prices by charges against the operations of those periods. Reserves of this kind involve assumptions as to what future price levels will be, what inventory quantities will be on hand if and when a major price decline takes place, and finally whether loss to the business will be measured by the amount of the decline in prices. The bases for such assumptions are so uncertain that any conclusions drawn from them would generally seem to be speculative guesses rather than informed judgments. When estimates of this character are included in current costs, amounts representing mere conjecture are combined with others representing reasonable approximations.

7. The committee is therefore of the opinion that reserves such as those created:

(a) for general undetermined contingencies, or

(b) for any indefinite possible future losses, such as, for example, losses on inventories not on hand or contracted for, or

(c) for the purpose of reducing inventories other than to a basis which is in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles,³ or

(d) without regard to any specific loss reasonably related to the operations of the current period, or

(e) in amounts not determined on the basis of any reasonable estimates of costs or losses

are of such a nature that charges or credits relating to such reserves should not enter into the determination of net income.

8. Accordingly, it is the opinion of the committee that if a reserve of the type described in paragraph 7 is set up:

(a) it should be created by a segregation or appropriation of earned surplus,

(b) no costs or losses should be charged to it and no part of it should be transferred to income or in any way used to affect the determination of net income for any year,⁴

(c) it should be restored to earned surplus directly when such a reserve or any part thereof is no longer considered necessary,⁴ and

(d) it should preferably be classified in the balance sheet as a part of shareholders' equity.

¹ See chapter 2(b); also chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

² See chapter 4.

³ See particularly chapter 4.

⁴ Items (b) and (c) of paragraph 8 also apply to contingency reserves set up in prior years.

CHAPTER 7

Capital Accounts

**Section A—Quasi-Reorganization or Corporate
Readjustment (Amplification of Institute
Rule No. 2 of 1934)**

1. A rule was adopted by the Institute in 1934 which read as follows:

"Capital surplus, however created, should not be used to relieve the income account of the current or future years of charges which would otherwise fall to be made thereagainst. This rule might be subject to the exception that where, upon reorganization, a reorganized company would be relieved of charges which would require to be made against income if the existing corporation were continued, it might be regarded as permissible to accomplish the same result without reorganization provided the facts were as

fully revealed to and the action as formally approved by the shareholders as in reorganization."¹

2. Readjustments of the kind mentioned in the exception to the rule fall in the category of what are called quasi-reorganizations. This section does not deal with the general question of quasi-reorganizations, but only with cases in which the exception permitted under the rule of 1934 is availed of by a corporation. Hereinafter such cases are referred to as readjustments. The problems which arise fall into two groups: (a) what may be permitted in a readjustment and (b) what may be permitted thereafter.

PROCEDURE IN READJUSTMENT

3. If a corporation elects to restate its assets, capital stock, and surplus through a readjustment and thus avail itself of permission to relieve its future income account or earned surplus account of charges which would otherwise be made thereagainst, it should make a clear report to its shareholders of the restatements proposed to be made, and obtain their formal consent. It should present a fair balance sheet as at the date of the readjustment, in which the adjustment of carrying amounts is reasonably complete, in order that there may be no continuation of the circumstances which justify charges to capital surplus.

4. A write-down of assets below amounts which are likely to be realized thereafter, though it may result in conservatism in the balance sheet at the readjustment data, may also result in overstatement of earnings or of earned surplus when the assets are subsequently realized. Therefore, in general, assets should be carried forward as of the date of readjustment at fair and not unduly conservative amounts, determined with due regard for the accounting to be employed by the company thereafter. If the fair value of any asset is not readily determinable a conservative estimate may be made, but in that case the amount should be described as an estimate and any material difference arising through realization or otherwise and not attributable to events occurring or circum-

stances arising after that date should not be carried to income or earned surplus.

5. Similarly, if potential losses or charges are known to have arisen prior to the date of readjustment but the amounts thereof are then indeterminate, provision may properly be made to cover the maximum *probable* losses or charges. If the amounts provided are subsequently found to have been excessive or insufficient, the differences should not be carried to earned surplus nor used to offset losses or gains originating after the readjustment, but should be carried to capital surplus.

6. When the amounts to be written off in a readjustment have been determined, they should be charged first against earned surplus to the full extent of such surplus; any balance may then be charged against capital surplus. A company which has subsidiaries should apply this rule in such a way that no consolidated earned surplus survives a readjustment in which any part of losses has been charged to capital surplus.

7. If the earned surplus of any subsidiaries cannot be applied against the losses before resort is had to capital surplus, the parent company's interest in such earned surplus should be regarded as capitalized by the readjustment just as surplus at the date of acquisition is capitalized, so far as the parent is concerned.

¹ See chapter 1(a), paragraph 2.

8. The effective date of the readjustment, from which the income of the company is thereafter determined, should be as near as practicable to the date on which formal

consent of the stockholders is given, and should ordinarily not be prior to the close of the last completed fiscal year.

PROCEDURE AFTER READJUSTMENT

9. When the readjustment has been completed, the company's accounting should be substantially similar to that appropriate for a new company.

10. After such a readjustment earned surplus previously accumulated cannot properly be carried forward under that title. A new earned surplus account should be established, dated to show that it runs from the effective date of the readjustment, and this dating should be disclosed in financial statements until such time as the effective date is no longer deemed to possess any special significance.

11. Capital surplus originating in such a readjustment is restricted in the same man-

ner as that of a new corporation; charges against it should be only those which may properly be made against the initial surplus of a new corporation.

12. It is recognized that charges against capital surplus may take place in other types of readjustments to which the foregoing provisions would have no application. Such cases would include readjustments for the purpose of correcting erroneous credits made to capital surplus in the past. In this statement the committee has dealt only with that type of readjustment in which either the current income or earned surplus account or the income account of future years is relieved of charges which would otherwise be made thereagainst.

Section B—Stock Dividends and Stock Split-Ups

1. The term *stock dividend* as used in this chapter refers to an issuance by a corporation of its own common shares to its common shareholders without consideration and under conditions indicating that such action is prompted mainly by a desire to give the recipient shareholders some ostensibly separate evidence of a part of their respective interests in accumulated corporate earnings without distribution of cash or other property which the board of directors deems necessary or desirable to retain in the business.

2. The term *stock split-up* as used in this chapter refers to an issuance by a corporation of its own common shares to its common shareholders without consideration and under conditions indicating that such action is prompted mainly by a desire to increase

the number of outstanding shares for the purpose of effecting a reduction in their unit market price and, thereby, of obtaining wider distribution and improved marketability of the shares.

3. This chapter is not concerned with the accounting for a distribution or issuance to shareholders of (a) shares of another corporation theretofore held as an investment, or (b) shares of a different class, or (c) rights to subscribe for additional shares or (d) shares of the same class in cases where each shareholder is given an election to receive cash or shares.

4. The discussion of accounting for stock dividends and split-ups that follows is divided into two parts. The first deals with the problems of the recipient. The second deals with the problems of the issuer.

AS TO THE RECIPIENT

5. One of the basic problems of accounting is that of income determination. Complete discussion of this problem is obviously beyond the scope of this chapter. Basically, income is a realized gain and in accounting is recognized, recorded, and stated in accordance with certain principles as to time and amount.

6. In applying the principles of income determination to the accounts of a shareholder of a corporation, it is generally agreed that the problem of determining his income

is distinct from the problem of income determination by the corporation itself. The income of the corporation is determined as that of a separate entity without regard to the equity of the respective shareholders in such income. Under conventional accounting concepts, the shareholder has no income solely as a result of the fact that the corporation has income; the increase in his equity through undistributed earnings is no more than potential income to him. It is true that income earned by the corporation may result in an enhancement in the market

value of the shares, but until there is a distribution, division, or severance of corporate assets, the shareholder has no income. If there is an increase in the market value of his holdings, such unrealized appreciation is not income. In the case of a stock dividend or split-up, there is no distribution, division, or severance of corporate assets. Moreover, there is nothing resulting therefrom that the shareholder can realize without parting with some of his proportionate interest in the corporation.

7. The foregoing are important points to be considered in any discussion of the accounting procedures to be followed by the recipient of a stock dividend or split-up since many arguments put forward by those who favor recognizing stock dividends as income are in substance arguments for the recognition of corporate income as income to the shareholder as it accrues to the corporation, and prior to its distribution to the shareholder; the acceptance of such arguments would require the abandonment of the *separate entity* concept of corporation accounting.

8. The question as to whether or not stock dividends are income has been extensively debated; the arguments pro and con are well known.¹ The situation cannot be

better summarized, however, than in the words approved by Mr. Justice Pitney in *Eisner v. Macomber*, 252 U. S. 189, wherein it was held that stock dividends are not income under the Sixteenth Amendment, as follows:

"A stock dividend really takes nothing from the property of the corporation and adds nothing to the interests of the stockholders. Its property is not diminished and their interests are not increased . . . the proportional interest of each shareholder remains the same. The only change is in the evidence which represents that interest, the new shares and the original shares together representing the same proportional interests that the original shares represented before the issue of the new ones."

9. Since a shareholder's interest in the corporation remains unchanged by a stock dividend or split-up except as to the number of share units constituting such interest, the cost of the shares previously held should be allocated equitably to the total shares held after receipt of the stock dividend or split-up. When any shares are later disposed of, a gain or loss should be determined on the basis of the adjusted cost per share.

AS TO THE ISSUER

Stock Dividends

10. As has been previously stated, a stock dividend does not, in fact, give rise to any change whatsoever in either the corporation's assets or its respective shareholders' proportionate interests therein. However, it cannot fail to be recognized that, merely as a consequence of the expressed purpose of the transaction and its characterization as a *dividend* in related notices to shareholders and the public at large, many recipients of stock dividends look upon them as distributions of corporate earnings and usually in an amount equivalent to the fair value of the additional shares received. Furthermore, it is to be presumed that such views of recipients are materially strengthened in those instances, which are by far the most numerous, where the issuances are so small in comparison with the shares previously outstanding that they do not have any apparent effect upon the share market price and, consequently, the market value of the shares previously held remains substantially unchanged. The committee therefore believes that where these circumstances exist the

corporation should in the public interest account for the transaction by transferring from earned surplus to the category of permanent capitalization (represented by the capital stock and capital surplus accounts) an amount equal to the fair value of the additional shares issued. Unless this is done, the amount of earnings which the shareholder may believe to have been distributed to him will be left, except to the extent otherwise dictated by legal requirements, in earned surplus subject to possible further similar stock issuances or cash distributions.

11. Where the number of additional shares issued as a stock dividend is so great that it has, or may reasonably be expected to have, the effect of materially reducing the share market value, the committee believes that the implications and possible constructions discussed in the preceding paragraph are not likely to exist and that the transaction clearly partakes of the nature of a stock split-up as defined in paragraph 2. Conse-

¹ See, for instance, Freeman, "Stock Dividends and the New York Stock Exchange," *American Economic Review*, December, 1931

(pro), and Whitaker, "Stock Dividends, Investment Trusts, and the Exchange," *American Economic Review*, June, 1931 (con).

quently, the committee considers that under such circumstances there is no need to capitalize earned surplus, other than to the extent occasioned by legal requirements. It recommends, however, that in such instances every effort be made to avoid the use of the word *dividend* in related corporate resolutions, notices, and announcements and that, in those cases where because of legal requirements this cannot be done, the transaction be described, for example, as a *split-up effected in the form of a dividend*.

12. In cases of closely-held companies, it is to be presumed that the intimate knowledge of the corporations' affairs possessed by their shareholders would preclude any such implications and possible constructions as are referred to in paragraph 10. In such cases, the committee believes that considerations of public policy do not arise and that there is no need to capitalize earned surplus other than to meet legal requirements.

13. Obviously, the point at which the relative size of the additional shares issued becomes large enough to materially influence the unit market price of the stock will vary with individual companies and under differing market conditions and, hence, no single percentage can be laid down as a standard for determining when capitalization of earned surplus in excess of legal requirements is called for and when it is not. However, on the basis of a review of market action in the case of shares of a number of companies having relatively recent stock distributions, it would appear that there would be few instances involving the issuance of additional shares of less than, say, 20% or 25% of the number previously outstanding where the effect would not be such as to call for the procedure referred to in paragraph 10.

14. The corporate accounting recommended in paragraph 10 will in many cases, prob-

ably the majority, result in the capitalization of earned surplus in an amount in excess of that called for by the laws of the state of incorporation; such laws generally require the capitalization only of the par value of the shares issued, or, in the case of shares without par value, an amount usually within the discretion of the board of directors. However, these legal requirements are, in effect, minimum requirements and do not prevent the capitalization of a larger amount per share.

Stock Split-Ups

15. Earlier in this chapter a stock split-up was defined as being confined to transactions involving the issuance of shares, without consideration moving to the corporation, for the purpose of effecting a reduction in the unit market price of shares of the class issued and, thus, of obtaining wider distribution and improved marketability of the shares. Where this is clearly the intent, no transfer from earned surplus to capital surplus or capital stock account is called for, other than to the extent occasioned by legal requirements. It is believed, however, that few cases will arise where the aforementioned purpose can be accomplished through an issuance of shares which is less than, say, 20% or 25% of the previously outstanding shares.

16. The committee believes that the corporation's representations to its shareholders as to the nature of the issuance is one of the principal considerations in determining whether it should be recorded as a stock dividend or a split-up. Nevertheless, it believes that the issuance of new shares in ratios of less than, say, 20% or 25% of the previously outstanding shares, or the frequent recurrence of issuances of shares, would destroy the presumption that transactions represented to be split-ups should be recorded as split-ups.

Three members of the committee, Messrs. Knight, Calkins, and Mason, assented with qualification, and one member, Mr. Wilcox, dissented to adoption of section (b) of chapter 7.

Mr. Knight assents with the qualification that he believes the section should recognize the propriety of treating as income stock dividends received by a parent from a subsidiary. He believes the section should have retained from the original Bulletin No. 11 the statement, "It is recognized that

this rule, under which the stockholder has no income until there is a distribution, division, or severance, may require modification in some cases, or that there may be exceptions to it, as, for instance, in the case of a parent company with respect to its subsidiaries. . . ."

Messrs. Calkins and Mason approve part one, but believe part two is inconsistent therewith in that the former concludes that a stock dividend is not income to the recipient while the latter suggests accounting pro-

cedures by the issuer based on the assumption that the shareholder may think otherwise. They believe it is inappropriate for the corporate entity to base its accounting on considerations of possible shareholder reactions. They also believe that part two deals with matters of corporate policy rather than accounting principles and that the purpose sought to be served could be more effectively accomplished by appropriate notices to shareholders at the time of the issuance of additional shares.

Mr. Wilcox dissents from the recommendations made both as to the recipient and as to the issuer. He believes that, with proper safeguards, stock dividends should be regarded as marking the point at which corporate income is to be recognized by shareholders, and denies that the arguments favoring this view are in substance arguments for the recognition of corporate in-

come as income to the shareholder as it accrues to the corporation. He believes that the arguments regarding severance and maintenance of proportionate interest are unsound, and cannot logically be invoked as they are in this section, since they are widely ignored with respect to distributions of securities other than common stock dividends. Mr. Wilcox believes the recommendations as to the issuer are inconsistent with the rest of the section, involve arbitrary distinctions, hamper or discourage desirable corporate actions, result in meaningless segregation in the proprietorship section of balance sheets, and serve no informative purpose which cannot be better served by explanatory disclosures. He therefore also dissents from the omission of requirements for information and disclosures which were contained in the original Bulletin No. 11 issued in September, 1941.

Section C—Business Combinations

1. Whenever two or more corporations are brought together, or combined, for the purpose of carrying on in a single corporation the previously conducted businesses, the accounting to give effect to the combination will vary depending upon whether there is a continuance of the former ownership or a new ownership.¹ This section (a) differentiates these two types of corporate combinations, the first of which is designated herein as a *pooling of interests* and the second as a *purchase*; and (b) indicates the nature of the accounting treatment appropriate to each type.

2. For accounting purposes, the distinction between a pooling of interests and a purchase is to be found in the attendant circumstances rather than in the legal designation as a merger or a consolidation, or in legal considerations with respect to availability of net assets for dividends, or provisions of the Internal Revenue Code with respect to income taxes. In a pooling of interests, all or substantially all of the equity interests in predecessor corporations continue, as such, in a surviving corporation¹ which may be one of the predecessor corporations, or in a new one created for the purpose. In a purchase, on the other hand, an important part or all of the ownership of the acquired corporation is eliminated. A plan or firm intention and understanding

to retire capital stock issued to the owners of one or more of the corporate parties, or substantial changes in ownership occurring immediately before or after the combination, would also tend to indicate that the combination is a purchase.

3. Other factors to be taken into consideration in determining whether a purchase or a pooling of interests is involved are the relative size of the constituent companies and the continuity of management or power to control the management. Thus, a purchase may be indicated when one corporate party to a combination is quite minor in size in relation to the others, or where the management of one of the corporate parties to the combination is eliminated or its influence upon the management of the surviving corporation is very small. Other things being equal, the presumption that a pooling of interests is involved would be strengthened if the activities of the businesses to be combined are either similar or complementary. No one of these factors would necessarily be determinative, but their presence or absence would be cumulative in effect.

4. When a combination is deemed to be a purchase the assets purchased should be recorded on the books of the acquiring company at cost, measured in money or the fair value of other consideration given, or

¹ When the shares of stock in the surviving corporation that are received by the several owners of one of the predecessor companies are not substantially in proportion to their respec-

tive interests in the predecessor company, a new ownership or purchase of such company is presumed to result.

at the fair value of the property acquired, whichever is more clearly evident. This is in accordance with the procedure applicable to accounting for purchases of assets.

5. When a combination is deemed to be a pooling of interests, the necessity for a new basis of accountability does not arise. The carrying amounts of the assets of the constituent companies, if stated in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and appropriately adjusted when deemed necessary to place them on a uniform basis, should be carried forward; and earned surpluses of the constituent companies may be carried forward. However, any adjustment of assets or of surplus which would be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the absence of a combination would be equally so if effected in connection with a pooling of interests. If one party to such a combination had been acquired by purchase as a subsidiary by another such party prior to the origin of a plan of combination, the parent's share of the earned surplus of the subsidiary prior to such acquisition should not be included in the earned surplus account of the pooled companies.

6. Because of the variety of conditions under which a pooling of interests may be carried out it is not practicable to deal with the accounting presentation except in general terms. A number of problems will arise. For example, the stated capital of the surviving corporation in a pooling of interests may be either more than, or less than, the total of the stated capital of the predecessor corporations. In the former event the excess should be deducted first from the total of any other contributed capital (capital surplus), and next from the total of any earned surplus of the predecessors, while in the latter event the difference should appear in the balance sheet of the surviving corporation as other contributed capital (capital surplus), analogous to that created by a reduction in stated capital where no combination is involved.

7. When a combination results in carrying forward the earned surpluses of the constituent companies, statements of operations issued by the continuing business for the period in which the combination occurs and for any preceding period should show the results of operations of the combined interests.

CHAPTER 8

Income and Earned Surplus

1. The purpose of this chapter is to recommend criteria for use in identifying material extraordinary charges and credits which may in some cases and should in other cases be excluded from the determination of net income and to recommend methods of presenting these charges and credits.

2. In dealing with the problem of selecting the most useful form of income statement, the danger of understatement or overstatement of income must be recognized. An important objective of income presentation should be the avoidance of any practice that leads to income equalization.

3. Attention is directed to certain facts which serve to emphasize that the word *income* is used to describe a general concept, not a specific and precise thing, and that the income statement is based on the concept of the *going concern*. It is at best an interim report. Profits are not fundamentally the result of operations during any short period of time. Allocations to fiscal periods of both charges and credits affecting the determination of net income

are, in part, estimated and conventional and based on assumptions as to future events which may be invalidated by experience. While the items of which this is true are usually few in relation to the total number of transactions, they sometimes are large in relation to the other amounts in the income statement.

4. It must also be recognized that the ultimate distinction between *operating* income and charges and *non-operating* gains and losses, terms having considerable currency in the accounting profession, has not been established. The former are generally defined as recurrent features of business operation, more or less normal and dependable in their incidence from year to year; the latter are generally considered to be irregular and unpredictable, more or less fortuitous and incidental. The committee is also mindful that the term *net income* has been used indiscriminately and often without precise, and most certainly without uniform, definition in the financial press, investment services, annual reports, prospectuses, contracts relating to compensation of management, bond indentures,

preferred stock dividend provisions, and many other places.

5. In the committee's view, the above facts with respect to the income statement and the income which it displays make it incumbent upon readers of financial statements to exercise great care at all times in drawing conclusions from them.

6. The question of what constitutes the most practically useful concept of income for the year is one on which there is much difference of opinion. On the one hand, net income is defined according to a strict proprietary concept by which it is presumed to be determined by the inclusion of all items affecting the net increase in proprietorship during the period except dividend distributions and capital transactions. The form of presentation which gives effect to this broad concept of net income has sometimes been designated the *all-inclusive* income statement. On the other hand, a different concept places its principal emphasis upon relationship of items to the operations, and to the year, excluding from the determination of net income any material extraordinary items which are not so related or which, if included, would impair the significance of net income so that misleading inferences might be drawn therefrom. This latter concept would require the income statement to be designed on what might be called a *current operating performance* basis, because its chief purpose is to aid those primarily interested in what a company was able to earn under the operating conditions of the period covered by the statement.

7. Proponents of the *all-inclusive* type of income statement insist that annual income statements taken for the life of an enterprise should, when added together, represent total net income. They emphasize the dangers of possible manipulation of the annual earnings figure if material extraordinary items may be omitted in the determination of income. They also assert that, over a period of years, charges resulting from extraordinary events tend to exceed the credits, and the omission of such items has the effect of indicating a greater earning performance than the corporation actually has exhibited. They insist that an income statement which includes all income charges or credits arising during the year is simple to prepare, is easy to understand, and is not subject to variations resulting from the different judgments that may be applied in the treatment of individual items. They argue that when judgment is allowed

to enter the picture with respect to the inclusion or exclusion of special items, material differences in the treatment of borderline cases develop and that there is danger that the use of *distortion* as a criterion may be a means of accomplishing the equalization of income. With full disclosure of the nature of any special or extraordinary items, this group believes the user of the financial statements can make his own additions or deductions more effectively than can the management or the independent accountant.

8. Those who favor the *all-inclusive* income statement largely assume that those supporting the *current operating performance* concept are mainly concerned with establishing a figure of net income for the year which will carry an implication as to future earning capacity. Having made this assumption, they contend that income statements should not be prepared on the *current operating performance* basis because income statements of the past are of only limited help in the forecasting of the earning power of an enterprise. This group also argues that items reflecting the results of unusual or extraordinary events are part of the earnings history of the company, and accordingly should be given weight in any effort to make financial judgments with respect to the company. Since a judgment as to the financial affairs of an enterprise should involve a study of the results of a period of prior years, rather than of a single year, this group believes that the omission of material extraordinary items from annual income statements is undesirable since there would be a greater tendency for those items to be overlooked in such a study.

9. On the other hand, those who advocate the *current operating performance* type of income statement generally do so because they are mindful of the particular business significance which a substantial number of the users of financial reports attach to the income statement. They point out that, while some users of financial reports are able to analyze a statement and eliminate from it those unusual and extraordinary items that tend to distort it for their purposes, many users are not trained to do so. Furthermore, they contend, it is difficult at best to report in any financial statement sufficient data to afford a sound basis upon which the reader who does not have an intimate knowledge of the facts can make a well-considered classification. They consider it self-evident that management and the independent auditors are in

a better position than outsiders to determine whether there are unusual and extraordinary items which, if included in the determination of net income, may give rise to misleading inferences as to current operating performance. Relying on the proper exercise of professional judgment, they discount the contention that neither managements nor the independent auditors, because of the absence of objective standards to guide them, have been able to decide consistently which extraordinary charges and credits should be excluded in determining earning performance. They agree it is hazardous to place too great a reliance on the net income as shown in a single annual statement and insist that a realistic presentation of current performance must be taken for what it is and should not be construed as conveying an implication as to future accomplishments. The net income of a single year is only one of scores of factors involved in analyzing the future earnings prospects or potentialities of a business. It is well recognized that future earnings are dependent to a large extent upon such factors as market trends, product developments, political events, labor relationships, and numerous other factors not ascertainable from the financial statements. However, this group insists that the net income for the year should show as clearly as possible what happened in that year under that year's conditions, in order that sound comparisons may be made with prior years and with the performance of other companies.

10. The advocates of this *current operating performance* type of statement join fully with the so-called *all-inclusive* group in asserting that there should be full disclosure of all material charges or credits of an unusual character, including those attributable to a prior year, but they insist that disclosure should be made in such manner as not to distort the figure which represents what the company was able to earn from its usual or typical business operations under the conditions existing during the year. They point out that many companies, in order to give more useful information concerning their earning performance, make a practice of restating the earnings of a number of prior years after adjusting them to reflect the proper allocation of items not related to the years in which they were first reported. They believe that material extraordinary charges or credits may often

best be disclosed as direct adjustments of surplus. They point out that a charge or credit in a material amount representing an unusual item not likely to recur, if included in the computation of annual net income, may be so distorting in its results as to lead to unsound judgments with respect to the current earning performance of the company.

11. The committee has indicated elsewhere¹ that in its opinion it is plainly desirable that over the years all profits and losses of a business be reflected in net income, but at the same time has recognized that, under appropriate circumstances, it is proper to exclude certain material charges and credits from the determination of the net income of a single year, even though they clearly affect the cumulative total of income for a series of years. In harmony with this view, **it is the opinion of the committee that there should be a general presumption that all items of profit and loss recognized during the period are to be used in determining the figure reported as net income. The only possible exception to this presumption relates to items which in the aggregate are material in relation to the company's net income and are clearly not identifiable with or do not result from the usual or typical business operations of the period.** Thus, only extraordinary items such as the following may be excluded from the determination of net income for the year, and they should be excluded when their inclusion would impair the significance of net income so that misleading inferences might be drawn therefrom:²

(a) Material charges or credits (other than ordinary adjustments of a recurring nature) specifically related to operations of prior years, such as the elimination of unused reserves provided in prior years and adjustments of income taxes for prior years;

(b) Material charges or credits resulting from unusual sales of assets not acquired for resale and not of the type in which the company generally deals;

(c) Material losses of a type not usually insured against, such as those resulting from wars, riots, earthquakes, and similar calamities or catastrophes except where such losses are a recurrent hazard of the business;

¹ See chapter 2(b), paragraph 3.

² See chapter 10(b) with respect to the allocation of income taxes.

(d) The write-off of a material amount of intangibles;³

(e) The write-off of material amounts of unamortized bond discount or premium and bond issue expenses at the time of the retirement or refunding of the debt before maturity.

12. The following, however, should be excluded from the determination of net income under all circumstances:

(a) Adjustments resulting from transactions in the company's own capital stock;

(b) Amounts transferred to and from accounts properly designated as surplus appropriations, such as charges and credits with respect to general purpose contingency reserves;

(c) Amounts deemed to represent excessive costs of fixed assets, and annual appropriations in contemplation of replacement of productive facilities at higher price levels;⁴ and

(d) Adjustments made pursuant to a quasi-reorganization.

13. Consideration has been given to the methods of presentation of the extraordinary items excluded in the determination of net income under the criteria set forth in paragraph 11. One method is to carry all such charges and credits directly to the surplus account with complete disclosure as to their nature and amount. A second method is to show them in the income statement after the amount designated as net income. Where the second method is used, misconceptions are likely to arise as to whether earnings for the period are represented by the amount actually designated as net income or by the final, and often more prominent, amount shown on the income statement after deduction or addition of material extraordinary items excluded from the determination of net income. Having in mind the possibility of such misconceptions where the second method is employed, the committee believes that the first method more clearly portrays net income. It should be noted that the Securities and Exchange Commission, in its revised Regulation S-X issued in December, 1950, made provision in item 17 of Rule 5-03 for the addition to or deduction from net income or loss, at the bottom of income statements filed with the Commission, of items of profit and loss given recognition in the accounts during the period and not

included in the determination of net income or loss. The change in Rule 5-03 does not affect the determination of the amount to be reported as net income or earnings for the year. Furthermore, the additions or deductions at the foot of the income statement after determination of net income are equivalent to direct credits or charges to earned surplus. In view of the foregoing, and although the committee strongly prefers the first method, it considers the second method of presentation described above to be acceptable provided care is taken that the figure of net income is clearly and unequivocally designated so as not to be confused with the final figure in the income statement. Thus it is imperative that the caption of the final figure should precisely describe what it represents, e.g., *net income and special items, net income and refund of 1945 excess profits taxes, net loss and special items, or profit on sale of subsidiary less net loss*. A company may use the first method of presentation in one statement and the second method in another like statement covering the same fiscal period. The committee wishes to make clear that neither of the above-described methods of presentation precludes the use of the combined statement of income and earned surplus.⁵ However, where such combined statement is utilized, the committee's preference is that the figure of net income be followed immediately by the surplus balance at the beginning of the period. It is also the committee's opinion that deduction of the single item of dividends from net income on the income statement would not be subject to misconception.

14. In its deliberations concerning the nature and purpose of the income statement, the committee has been mindful of the disposition of even well-informed persons to attach undue importance to a single net income figure and to *earnings per share* shown for a particular year. The committee directs attention to the undesirability in many cases of the dissemination of information in which major prominence is given to a single figure of *net income* or *net income per share*. However, if such income data are reported (as in newspapers, investors' services, and annual corporate reports), the committee strongly urges that any determination of *income per share* be related to the amount designated in the income statement as net income and that where material extraordinary charges or credits have been

³ See chapter 5, paragraphs 8 and 9, for conditions under which a material portion or the entire amount of intangibles described therein as type (b) may be written off.

⁴ See chapter 9(a) and dissents thereto.

⁵ See chapter 2(b).

excluded from the determination of net income, the corresponding total or per-share amount of such charges and credits also be reported separately and simultaneously. In this connection the committee earnestly solicits the

cooperation of all organizations, both governmental and private, engaged in the compilation of business earnings statistics from annual reports.

CHAPTER 9

Depreciation

Section A—Depreciation and High Costs

1. In December, 1947, the committee issued Accounting Research Bulletin No. 33, dealing with the subject of depreciation and high costs. In October, 1948, it published a letter to the membership reaffirming the opinion expressed in the bulletin.

2. The subject is one of continuing importance. The committee once more expresses its approval of the basic conclusions asserted in both publications, but in view of the many requests received for further consideration of various aspects of the problem has placed the subject on its agenda for further study.

3. Accounting Research Bulletin No. 33 read as follows:

4. "The American Institute of Accountants committee on accounting procedure has given extensive consideration to the problem of making adequate provision for the replacement of plant facilities in view of recent sharp increases in the price level. The problem requires consideration of charges against current income for depreciation of facilities acquired at lower price levels.

5. "The committee recognizes that business management has the responsibility of providing for replacement of plant and machinery. It also recognizes that, in reporting profits today, the cost of material and labor is reflected in terms of 'inflated' dollars while the cost of productive facilities in which capital was invested at a lower price level is reflected in terms of dollars whose purchasing power was much greater. There is no doubt that in considering depreciation in connection with product costs, prices, and business policies, management must take into consideration the probability that plant and machinery will have to be replaced at costs much greater than those of the facilities now in use.

6. "When there are gross discrepancies between the cost and current values of productive facilities, the committee believes that it is entirely proper for management to make annual appropriations of net income or

surplus in contemplation of replacement of such facilities at higher price levels.

7. "It has been suggested in some quarters that the problem be met by increasing depreciation charges against current income. The committee does not believe that this is a satisfactory solution at this time. It believes that accounting and financial reporting for general use will best serve their purposes by adhering to the generally accepted concept of depreciation on cost, at least until the dollar is stabilized at some level. An attempt to recognize current prices in providing depreciation, to be consistent, would require the serious step of formally recording appraised current values for all properties, and continuous and consistent depreciation charges based on the new values. Without such formal steps, there would be no objective standard by which to judge the propriety of the amounts of depreciation charges against current income, and the significance of recorded amounts of profit might be seriously impaired.

8. "It would not increase the usefulness of reported corporate income figures if some companies charged depreciation on appraised values while others adhered to cost. The committee believes, therefore, that consideration of radical changes in accepted accounting procedure should not be undertaken, at least until a stable price level would make it practicable for business as a whole to make the change at the same time.

9. "The committee disapproves immediate write-downs of plant cost by charges against current income in amounts believed to represent excessive or abnormal costs occasioned by current price levels. However, the committee calls attention to the fact that plants expected to have less than normal useful life can properly be depreciated on a systematic basis related to economic usefulness."

10. The letter of October 14, 1948, was addressed to the members of the Institute and read as follows:

11. "The committee on accounting procedure has reached the conclusion that no basic change in the accounting treatment of depreciation of plant and equipment is practicable or desirable under present conditions to meet the problem created by the decline in the purchasing power of the dollar.

12. "The committee has given intensive study to this problem and has examined and discussed various suggestions which have been made to meet it. It has solicited and considered hundreds of opinions on this subject expressed by businessmen, bankers, economists, labor leaders, and others. While there are differences of opinion, the prevailing sentiment in these groups is against any basic change in present accounting procedures. The committee believes that such a change would confuse readers of financial statements and nullify many of the gains that have been made toward clearer presentation of corporate finances.

13. "Should inflation proceed so far that original dollar costs lose their practical significance, it might become necessary to restate all assets in terms of the depreciated currency, as has been done in some countries. But it does not seem to the committee that such action should be recommended now if financial statements are to have maximum usefulness to the greatest number of users.

14. "The committee, therefore, reaffirms the opinion it expressed in Accounting Research Bulletin No. 33, December, 1947.

15. "Any basic change in the accounting treatment of depreciation should await further study of the nature and concept of business income.

16. "The immediate problem can and should be met by financial management. The committee recognizes that the common forms of financial statements may permit misunderstanding as to the amount which a corporation has available for distribution in the form of dividends, higher wages, or lower prices for the company's products. When prices have risen appreciably since original investments in plant and facilities were made, a substantial proportion of net income as currently reported must be reinvested in the business in order to maintain assets at the same level of productivity at the end of a year as at the beginning.

17. "Stockholders, employees, and the general public should be informed that a business must be able to retain out of profits amounts sufficient to replace productive facilities at current prices if it is to stay in business. The committee therefore gives its full support to the use of supplementary financial schedules, explanations or footnotes by which management may explain the need for retention of earnings."

Six members of the committee, Messrs. Andrews, Peloubet, Peoples, Smith, Wellington, and Williams, dissented to adoption of section (a) of chapter 9.

The six dissenting members object to the reprinting, in this section, of Bulletin No. 33 of December, 1947, and the reaffirming letter of October 14, 1948. That bulletin was issued to check the extension of certain then-emerging practices and it was successful in that purpose. However, Bulletin No. 33 contains assertions which are not now appropriate and should be eliminated, notably:

(a) "An attempt to recognize current prices in providing depreciation . . . would require the serious step of formally recording appraised current values . . . and consistent depreciation charges based on the new values" (par. 7 of this section).

Those dissenting believe this is not the only method which may be followed—a conclu-

sion also reached by the Study Group on Business Income (see page 61 of its report).¹

(b) "... consideration of radical changes in accepted accounting procedure should not be undertaken, at least until a stable price level would make it practicable for business as a whole to make the change at the same time." (par. 8)

This statement virtually precludes changes in accounting practice in so far as the monetary unit is concerned and is inconsistent with the paragraphs on Accounting and the Corporate System in the introduction to this volume.

(c) The warnings (in paragraphs 5, 6, 16 and 17) to management as to the use of profits.

Such warnings are irrelevant; it is no part of the accountant's function to tell management what it may or may not properly do with income after it has been determined.

¹ Study Group on Business Income, *Changing Concepts of Business Income*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1952. 160 pp.

Those dissenting believe that acceptable accounting practices should comprehend financial statements to stockholders, employees, and the public designed to reflect those concepts of cost and net income which are recommended in paragraph 5 to management in determining product costs, prices, and business policies. They question whether net income can properly be so designated if appropriations therefrom, as suggested in paragraph 6, are needed to preserve capital invested in plant.

They believe that plant may continue to be carried in the balance sheet at historical cost with deduction for depreciation based thereon. In addition to historical depreci-

ation, a supplementary annual charge to income should be permitted with corresponding credit to an account for property replacements and substitutions, to be classified with the stockholders' equity. This supplementary charge should be in such amount as to make the total charge for depreciation express in current dollars the exhaustion of plant allocable to the period. The supplementary charge would be calculated by use of a generally accepted price index applied to the expenditures in the years when the plant was acquired. The last sentence of paragraph 7 would then be no longer valid; the usefulness of financial statements would be enhanced without sacrifice of presently existing comparability.

Section B—Depreciation on Appreciation

1. Historically, fixed assets have been accounted for on the basis of cost. However, fixed assets in the past have occasionally been written up to appraised values because of rapid rises in price levels, to adjust costs in the case of bargain purchases, etc. In some of these instances companies have continued to compute depreciation on the basis of cost.

2. When appreciation has been entered on the books income should be charged with

depreciation¹ computed on the written-up amounts. A company should not at the same time claim larger property valuations in its statement of assets and provide for the amortization of only smaller amounts in its statement of income. When a company has made representations as to an increased valuation of plant, depreciation accounting and periodic income determination thereafter should be based on such higher amounts.

Three members of the committee, Messrs. Calkins, Lindquist, and Mason, assented with qualification to adoption of section (b) of chapter 9.

Messrs. Calkins, Lindquist, and Mason believe that, as a matter of consistency,

where increased property valuations have been entered on the books the credit item should be treated as permanent capital and would therefore not be available for subsequent transfer to earned surplus as *realized* through depreciation or sale.

Section C—Emergency Facilities: Depreciation, Amortization and Income Taxes

CERTIFICATES OF NECESSITY

1. Section 124A of the Internal Revenue Code, which was added by the Revenue Act of 1950, provides for the issuance of certificates of necessity under which all or part of the cost of so-called *emergency facilities* may be amortized over a period of 60 months for income-tax purposes. In many cases, the amounts involved are material, and companies are faced with the problem of deciding whether to adopt the 60-month period over which the portions of the cost

of the facilities covered by certificates of necessity may be amortized for income-tax purposes as the period over which they are to be depreciated in the accounts.

2. Thinking on this question apparently has become confused because many so-called *percentage certificates* have been issued covering less than the entire cost of the facility. This fact, together with the fact that the probable economic usefulness of the

¹ The word *depreciation* is here used in its ordinary accounting sense and not as the converse of *appreciation*.

facility after the close of the five-year amortization period is considered by the certifying authority in determining the percentage covered by these certificates, has led many to believe that the percentage used represents the government's conclusion as to the proportion of the cost of the facility that is not expected to have usefulness at the end of five years.

3. In some cases, it is apparent that the probable lack of economic usefulness of the facility after the close of the amortization period must constitute the principal if not the sole basis for determining the percentage to be included in the certificate. However, it must be recognized that the certifying authority has acted under orders to give consideration also to a variety of other

factors to the end that the amount certified may be the minimum amount necessary to secure expansion of industrial capacity in the interest of national defense during the emergency period. Among the factors required to be considered in the issuance of these certificates, in addition to loss of useful value, are (a) character of business, (b) extent of risk assumed (including the amount and source of capital employed, and the potentiality of recovering capital or retiring debt through tax savings or pricing), (c) assistance to small business and promotion of competition, (d) compliance with government policies (e.g., dispersal for security), and (e) other types of incentives provided by government, such as direct government loans, guaranties, and contractual arrangements.

DEPRECIATION CONSIDERATIONS

4. The argument has been advanced from time to time that, since the portion of the cost of properties covered by certificates of necessity is amortized over a five-year period for income-tax purposes, it is necessary to follow the same procedure in the accounts. Sound financial accounting procedures do not necessarily coincide with the rules as to what shall be included in "gross income," or allowed as a deduction therefrom, in arriving at taxable net income. It is well recognized that such rules should not be followed for financial accounting purposes if they do not conform to generally accepted accounting principles. However, where the results obtained from following income-tax procedures do not materially differ from those obtained where generally accepted accounting principles are followed, there are practical advantages in keeping the accounts in agreement with the income-tax returns.

5. The cost of a productive facility is one of the costs of the services it renders during its useful economic life. Generally accepted accounting principles require that this cost be spread over the expected useful life of the facility in such a way as to allocate it as equitably as possible to the periods during which services are obtained from the use of the facility. This procedure is known as depreciation accounting, a system of accounting which aims to distribute the cost or other basic value of tangible capital assets, less salvage (if any), over the estimated useful life of the unit (which may be a group of assets) in a systematic and rational manner. It is a process of allocation, not of valuation.

6. The committee is of the opinion that from an accounting standpoint there is nothing inherent in the nature of emergency facilities which requires the depreciation or amortization of their cost for financial accounting purposes over either a shorter or a longer period than would be proper if no certificate of necessity had been issued. Estimates of the probable useful life of a facility by those best informed in the matter may indicate either a shorter or a longer life than the statutory 60-month period over which the certified portion of its cost is deductible for income-tax purposes.

7. In determining the proper amount of annual depreciation with respect to emergency facilities for financial accounting purposes, it must be recognized that a great many of these facilities are being acquired primarily for what they can produce during the emergency period. To whatever extent it is reasonable to expect the useful economic life of a facility to end with the close of the amortization period the cost of the facility is a proper cost of operation during that period.

8. In determining the prospective usefulness of such facilities it will be necessary to consider their adaptability to post-emergency use, the effect of their use upon economic utilization of other facilities, the possibility of excessive costs due to expedited construction or emergency conditions, and the fact that no deductions for depreciation of the certified portion will be allowable for income-tax purposes in the post-amortization years if the company elects to claim the amortization deduction. The purposes for which emergency facilities are acquired

in a great many cases are such as to leave major uncertainties as to the extent of their use during the amortization period and as to their subsequent usefulness—uncertainties which are not normally encountered in the acquisition and use of operating facilities.

9. Consideration of these factors, the committee believes, will in many cases result in the determination of depreciation charges during the amortization period in excess of the depreciation that would be appropriate if these factors were not involved. Frequently they will be so compelling as to indicate the need for recording depreciation of the cost of emergency facilities in the accounts in conformity with the amortization deductions allowable for income-tax purposes. However, the commit-

tee believes that when the amount allowed as amortization for income-tax purposes is materially different from the amount of the estimated depreciation, the latter should be used for financial accounting purposes.

10. In some cases, certificates of necessity cover facilities which the owner expects to use after the emergency period in lieu of older facilities. As a result the older facilities may become unproductive and obsolete before they are fully depreciated on the basis of their previously expected life. In such situations, the committee believes depreciation charges to income should be determined in relation to the total properties, to the end that sound depreciation accounting may be applied to the property accounts as a whole.

RECOGNITION OF INCOME TAX EFFECTS

11. In those cases in which the amount of depreciation charged in the accounts on that portion of the cost of the facilities for which certificates of necessity have been obtained is materially less than the amount of amortization deducted for income-tax purposes, the amount of income taxes payable annually during the amortization period may be significantly less than it would be on the basis of the income reflected in the financial statements. In such cases, after the close of the amortization period the income taxes will exceed the amount that would be appropriate on the basis of the income reported in the statements. Accordingly, the committee believes that during the amortization period, where this difference is material, a charge should be made in the income statement to recognize the income tax to be paid in the future on the amount by which amortization for income-tax purposes exceeds the depreciation that would be allowable if certificates of necessity had not been issued. The amount of the charge should be equal to the estimated amount by which the income tax expected to be payable after the amortization period exceeds what would be so expected if amortization had not been claimed for income-tax purposes in the amortization period. The estimated amount should be based upon normal and surtax rates in effect during the period covered by the income statement with such changes therein as can be reasonably anticipated at the time the estimate is made.

12. In accounting for this deferment of income taxes, the committee believes it desirable to treat the charge as being for

additional income taxes. The related credit in such cases would properly be made to an account for deferred income taxes. Under this method, during the life of the facility following the amortization period the annual charges for income taxes will be reduced by charging to the account for deferred income taxes that part of the income tax in excess of what would have been payable had the amortization deduction not been claimed for income-tax purposes in the amortization period. By this procedure the net income will more nearly reflect the results of a proper matching of costs and revenues.

13. There are those who similarly recognize the necessity for giving effect to the amount of the deferred income taxes but who believe this should be accomplished by making a charge in the income account for additional amortization or depreciation. They would carry the related credit to an accumulated amortization or depreciation account as a practical means of recognizing the loss of future deductibility of the cost of the facility for income-tax purposes. If this procedure is followed the annual charges for depreciation will be correspondingly reduced throughout the useful life of the facility following the amortization period. Although this procedure will result in the same amount of net income as the procedure outlined in paragraph 12, and therefore may be considered as acceptable, the committee regards the paragraph 12 procedure as preferable. In any circumstances, there should be disclosure of the procedures followed.

CHAPTER 10

Taxes

Section A—Real and Personal Property Taxes

1. The purpose of this section is to draw attention to the problems involved in accounting for real and personal property taxes and to present some of the considerations which enter into a determination of their accounting treatment.

LEGAL LIABILITY FOR PROPERTY TAXES AND TREATMENT FOR INCOME-TAX PURPOSES

2. Unlike excise, income, and social security taxes, which are directly related to particular business events, real and personal property taxes are based upon the assessed valuation of property (tangible and intangible) as of a given date, as determined by the laws of a state or other taxing authority. For this reason the legal liability for such taxes is generally considered as accruing at the moment of occurrence of some specific event, rather than over a period of time. Whether such legal accrual should determine the accounting treatment is a question to be discussed later. Tax laws, opinions of attorneys, income-tax regulations, and court decisions have mentioned various dates on which certain property taxes are said to accrue legally. Among them are the following:

- (a) Assessment date,
- (b) Beginning of taxing authority's fiscal year,
- (c) End of taxing authority's fiscal year,
- (d) Date on which tax becomes a lien on the property,
- (e) Date tax is levied,
- (f) Date or dates tax is payable,
- (g) Date tax becomes delinquent,
- (h) Tax period appearing on tax bill.

3. Most of the foregoing dates are mentioned in tax laws. In a given case several of these dates may coincide.

4. The date to be applied in a particular case necessarily requires reference to the

law and court decisions of the state concerned. Where the matter has been litigated, it has often been held that property taxes become a liability at the point of time when they become a lien. The general rule, however, is that such taxes accrue as of the date on which they are assessed. The position of the Bureau of Internal Revenue is that generally property taxes accrue on the assessment date, even if the amount of the tax is not determined until later.

5. A practical aspect of the legal liability for property taxes must be considered when title to property is transferred during the taxable year. As stated above, the assessment date generally determines accrual. But as between vendor and vendee, the Supreme Court¹ has laid down the rule that the lien date, or the date of personal obligation, controls and that where a transfer occurs after either of those dates, the purchaser is not entitled to deduct the taxes for income-tax purposes.

6. Adjustments on account of property taxes paid or accrued are frequently incorporated in agreements covering the sale of real estate, which determine the question for the individual case as between the buyer and seller, though they are not necessarily controlling for income-tax purposes.

7. Although pro-rata accrual of property taxes has been permitted by some courts, the generally accepted rule seems to be that such taxes accrue in a lump sum on one date and not ratably over the year.

ACCOUNTING FOR PROPERTY TAXES**Accrual Accounting**

8. Accounting questions arise as to (1) when the liability for real and personal property taxes should be recorded on the books of a taxpayer keeping his accounts on the accrual basis and (2) the amounts to be charged against the income of respective periods. Here again, the decision is influenced by the particular circumstances of

each tax. Such terms as *assessment date* and *levy date* vary in meaning in the different jurisdictions; and while there is sufficient agreement about assessment date to furnish a basis for the general legal rule already mentioned, it does not necessarily follow that the legal rule should determine the accounting treatment.

¹ *Magruder v. Supplee*, 316 U. S. 394 (1942).

9. Determination of the liability for the tax often proceeds by degrees, the several steps being taken at appreciable intervals of time. For example, while it is known that the owner of real property is liable, with respect to each tax period, for a tax on property owned on the assessment date, the amount of the tax may not be fixed until much later. There is sometimes reluctance toward recording liabilities of indeterminate amount, especially such items as property taxes, and a preference for recording them when the amount can be computed with certainty. While this consideration is one which occasionally leads to the mention of taxes in footnotes as contingent liabilities, the inability to determine the exact amount of taxes is in itself no justification for failure to recognize an existing tax liability.

10. In practice, real and personal property taxes have been charged against the income of various periods, as indicated below:

- (a) Year in which paid (cash basis),
- (b) Year ending on assessment (or lien) date,
- (c) Year beginning on assessment (or lien) date,
- (d) Calendar or fiscal year of taxpayer prior to assessment (or lien) date,
- (e) Calendar or fiscal year of taxpayer including assessment (or lien) date,
- (f) Calendar or fiscal year of taxpayer prior to payment date,
- (g) Fiscal year of governing body levying the tax,
- (h) Year appearing on tax bill.

11. Some of these periods may coincide, as when the fiscal year of the taxing body

and that of the taxpayer are the same. The charge to income is sometimes made in full at one time, sometimes ratably on a monthly basis, sometimes on the basis of prior estimates, adjusted during or after the period.

12. The various periods mentioned represent varying degrees of conservatism in accrual accounting. Some justification may be found for each usage, but all the circumstances relating to a particular tax must be considered before a satisfactory conclusion is reached.

13. Consistency of application from year to year is the important consideration and selection of any of the periods mentioned is a matter for individual judgment.

Basis Considered Most Acceptable

14. Generally, the most acceptable basis of providing for property taxes is monthly accrual on the taxpayer's books during the fiscal period of the taxing authority for which the taxes are levied. The books will then show, at any closing date, the appropriate accrual or prepayment.

15. It may be argued that the entire amount of tax should logically be accrued by the lien date. Advocates of this procedure vary from those who would accrue the tax by charges to income during the year ending on the lien date, to those who urge setting up the full tax liability on the lien date and charging the amount thereof to income during the subsequent year. However, the basis described in the preceding paragraph is held by the majority of accountants to be practical and satisfactory so long as it is consistently followed.

TREATMENT IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Balance Sheet

16. An accrued liability for real and personal property taxes, whether estimated or definitely known, should be included among the current liabilities. Where estimates are subject to a substantial measure of uncertainty the liability should be described as estimated.

Income Statement

17. While it is sometimes proper to capitalize in property accounts the amount of real estate taxes applicable to property which is being developed for use or sale, these taxes are generally regarded as an expense of doing business. They may be (a) charged to operating expenses; (b) shown as a sepa-

rate deduction from income; or (c) distributed among the several accounts to which they are deemed to apply, such as factory overhead, rent income, and selling or general expenses.

18. In condensed income statements appearing in published reports, the amounts of real and personal property taxes, however charged in the accounts, are rarely shown separately. They are frequently combined with other taxes but not with taxes on income.

19. Since the liability for property taxes must frequently be estimated at the balance-sheet date, it is often necessary to adjust the provision for taxes of a prior year when their amount has been ascertained. These adjustments should ordinarily be made through

the income statement, either in combination with the current year's provision or as a separate item in the income statement. Such adjustments should not be made in the

surplus account, except under the conditions set forth in chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

One member of the committee, Mr. Wellington, assented with qualification to adoption of section (a) of chapter 10.

Mr. Wellington objects to the statement in paragraph 15 that the basis described in paragraph 14 is held by the majority of accountants to be practical and satisfactory so

long as it is consistently followed. In his opinion, the most logical practice is to accrue the entire amount of tax at the lien date, with a corresponding charge to an account such as *taxes unexpired* which will then be reduced pro rata, as outlined in the latter part of the second sentence of paragraph 15.

Section B—Income Taxes

1. This section deals with a number of accounting problems which arise in the reporting of income and excess-profits taxes (hereinafter referred to as *income taxes*) in financial statements. The problems arise largely where (a) material items entering into the computation of taxable income are not included in the income statement and where (b) material items included in the income statement do not enter into the computation of taxable income. The section does not apply where there is a presumption that particular differences between the tax return and the income statement will recur regularly over a comparatively long period of time.

2. Basic difficulties arise in connection with the accounting for income taxes where there are material and extraordinary differences between the taxable income upon which they are computed and the income for the period determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, provisions may be made in the income statement for possible losses not yet realized but requiring recognition under generally accepted accounting principles, such losses, however, being deductible for tax purposes only when they occur. On the other hand, deductions may be taken in the tax return which are not included in the income statement, such as charges against an estimated liability account created in a prior period. Likewise, gains subject to income tax may not be included in the income statement, as for instance, a gain on the sale of property credited to surplus. Also, credits in the income statement may not be includible in taxable income, as when an unneeded past provision for an estimated liability is restored to income.

3. In some cases the transactions result in gains; in others they result in losses or net costs. If all the effects of the trans-

actions (including their effect on income tax) were reflected in the income statement the income would, of course, be increased where the transactions result in a gain and reduced where they result in a loss or net cost. But where the effects are not all reflected in the income statement, and that statement indicates only the income tax actually payable, exactly the opposite effect is produced—where the special transactions result in a gain the net income is reduced; and where they result in a loss, or net cost, the net income is increased. Such results ordinarily detract from the significance or usefulness of the financial statements.

4. Financial statements are based on allocations of receipts, payments, accruals, and various other items. Many of the allocations are necessarily based on assumptions, but no one suggests that allocations based on imperfect criteria should be abandoned in respect of expenses other than income taxes, or even that the method of allocation should always be indicated. Income taxes are an expense that should be allocated, as other expenses are allocated. What the income statement should reflect under this head, as under any other head, is the expense properly allocable to the income included in the income statement for the year.

5. In cases in which transactions included in the surplus statement but not in the income statement increase the income tax payable by an amount that is substantial and is determinable without difficulty, as in the case of a gain credited to surplus, an allocation of income tax between the two statements would ordinarily be made. Objection to allocation in other cases, as where a loss is charged to surplus, has been made on the ground that the amount shown for income taxes in the income statement would be increased beyond the amount of the tax esti-

mated to be actually payable. Further objection has been made on the ground that the amount attributable to accounts other than income is not reasonably determinable.

6. The committee sees no objection to an allocation which results in the division of a given item into two parts one of which is larger than the item itself and is offset by the smaller. The argument that the effect of the special transactions on the amount of tax is not identifiable is usually without substantial merit. The difficulties encountered in allocation of the tax are not greater than those met with in many other allocations of expenses. The allocation procedure recommended here does not, of course, contem-

plate a determination of the tax effect attributable to every separate transaction. In the committee's view, all that is necessary in making an allocation is to consider the effect on taxes of those special transactions which are not included in the income statement.

7. The cases that are likely to call for allocation are those which transactions affecting the income tax in a manner which would have a distorting effect on net income are included in (a) surplus accounts, (b) deferred-charge accounts, or (c) estimated liability and similar accounts. Methods of applying the allocation principle in these instances are set forth below.

METHODS OF APPLYING THE ALLOCATION PRINCIPLE

Computation of Tax Effect

8. In most cases, it is appropriate to consider the tax effect as the difference between the tax payable with and without including the item in the amount of taxable income. In certain cases the tax effect attributable to a particular transaction for the purposes indicated above may be computed directly as in the case of transactions subject to the capital gains tax. There may also be cases in which it will be appropriate to use a current over-all effective rate or, as in the case of deferred income, an estimated future tax rate. The estimated rate should be based upon normal and surtax rates in effect during the period covered by the income statement with such changes therein as can be reasonably anticipated at the time the estimate is made.

Credits to Surplus

9. Where an item resulting in a material increase in income taxes is credited to surplus, the portion of the provision for income taxes which is attributable to such item should, under the principle of allocation, be charged thereto. The committee suggests, however, that the provision for income taxes estimated as due be shown in the income statement in full and that the portion thereof charged to surplus be shown on the income statement either (a) as a separate deduction from the actual tax or (b) as a separate credit, clearly described.

Charges to Surplus

10. Where an item resulting in a material reduction in income taxes is charged to surplus, the principle of allocation may be applied in the income statement in either of two ways:

(a) the provision for income taxes may be shown as if the item in question were not deductible (the total amount of tax estimated to be due for the year being indicated) or (b) a special charge representing the portion of such item equal to the tax reduction resulting therefrom may be separately shown. In either case the amount charged to surplus is reduced accordingly.

Deferred-Charge and Estimated Liability Accounts

11. The principle of allocation applies also where an item resulting in a material reduction in income taxes is charged to or carried forward in a deferred-charge account or charged to an estimated liability account.

12. The deduction for tax purposes in a given year of an item which is carried to or remains in a deferred-charge account will involve a series of charges in future income statements for amortization of the deferred charge, and these charges will not be deductible for tax purposes. In the period in which the item is taken as a deduction for tax purposes a charge should be made in the income statement of an amount equal to the tax reduction, in the manner set forth above with respect to charges to surplus, with a corresponding credit in the deferred-charge account. Thereafter amortization of the deferred charge should be based on the amount as adjusted by such tax reduction.

13. Where an item resulting in a material reduction in income taxes is charged to an estimated liability account the principle of allocation may be applied in the income statement in any of three ways: (a) the current provision for income taxes may be

shown as if the item in question were not deductible (the total amount of tax estimated to be due for the year being indicated), or (b) a charge may be included for a portion of such item equal to the tax reduction resulting therefrom, or (c) the item in question may be charged in the income statement and a credit made in the income statement representing a portion of the estimated liability account equal to the excess of such item over the related tax reduction.

Special Treatment

14. Where the treatments recommended above are considered to be not practicable, the amount of taxes estimated to be actually payable for the year may be shown in the income statement, provided that the pertinent facts, including the amount of the increase or decrease attributable to other accounts, are clearly disclosed either in a footnote or in the body of the income statement.

ADDITIONAL TAXES AND REFUNDS

15. Adjustments of provisions for income taxes of prior periods, as well as any refunds and any assessments of additional amounts, should be included in the income statement unless they are so material as to have a

distorting effect on net income;¹ in such event they may be charged or credited to surplus with indication as to the period to which they relate.

CARRY-BACK OF LOSSES AND UNUSED EXCESS-PROFITS CREDITS

16. While claims for refund of income taxes ordinarily should not be included in the accounts prior to approval by the taxing authorities, a claim based on the carry-back provisions of the Internal Revenue Code presumably has as definite a basis as has the computation of income taxes for the year. Therefore, amounts of income taxes paid in prior years which are refundable to the taxpayer as the result of the carry-back of losses or unused excess-profits credits ordinarily should be included in the income statement of the year in which the loss occurs or the unused excess-profits credit

arises. Either of two treatments is acceptable: (a) the amount of taxes estimated to be actually payable for such year may be shown in the income statement, with the amount of the tax reduction attributable to the amounts carried back indicated either in a footnote or parenthetically in the body of the income statement; or (b) the income statement may indicate the results of operations without inclusion of such reduction, which reduction should be shown as a final item before the amount of net income for the period.

CARRY-FORWARD OF LOSSES AND UNUSED EXCESS-PROFITS CREDITS

17. Where taxpayers are permitted to carry forward losses or unused excess-profits credits, the committee believes that, as a practical matter, in the preparation of annual income statements the resulting tax reduction should be reflected in the year to which such losses or unused credits are carried. Either of two treatments is acceptable: (a) the amount of taxes estimated to be actually payable for such year may be shown in the income statement, with the amount of the tax reduction attributable to

the amounts carried forward indicated either in a footnote or parenthetically in the body of the income statement; or (b) the income statement may indicate the results of operations without inclusion of such reduction, which reduction should be shown as a final item before the amount of net income for the period. However, where it is believed that misleading inferences would be drawn from such inclusion, the tax reduction should be credited to surplus.

DISCLOSURE OF CERTAIN DIFFERENCES BETWEEN TAXABLE AND ORDINARY INCOME

18. If, because of differences between accounting for tax and accounting for financial purposes, no income tax has been paid or provided as to certain significant amounts credited to surplus or to income, disclosure

should be made. However, if a tax is likely to be paid thereon, provision should be made on the basis of an estimate of the amount of such tax. This rule applies, for instance, to profits on instalment sales or long-term

¹ See chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

contracts which are deferred for tax purposes, and to cases where unrealized appreciation of securities is taken into the

accounts by certain types of investment companies.

Two members of the committee, Messrs. Wellington and Werntz, assented with qualification to adoption of section (b) of chapter 10.

Mr. Wellington objects to paragraph 17, as he believes that the amount of the reduction in tax of the later year is due to the operations of the prior year, is in effect an adjustment of the net income or net loss previously reported, and, unless it is relatively not significant, should not be included in the income of the current year but should be credited to surplus. In an income statement for several years, he would show this credit to surplus as an addition to the income pre-

viously reported for the prior year, with suitable explanation.

Mr. Werntz does not agree with some of the reasoning, particularly paragraph 6, and certain of the conclusions contained in this section. While he believes that in many cases a difference in treatment of items for tax and financial purposes preferably requires a specialized charge or credit in the income account, so that neither a double benefit nor a double deduction results, he believes that the charge or credit may not always be mandatory and should ordinarily be described in terms of the item involved rather than as *taxes*.

CHAPTER 11

Government Contracts

Section A—Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee Contracts

1. This section deals with accounting problems arising under cost-plus-fixed-fee

contracts, hereinafter referred to as CPFF contracts.

SUMMARY STATEMENT

2. Fees under CPFF contracts may be credited to income on the basis of such measurement of partial performance as will reflect reasonably assured realization. One generally acceptable basis is delivery of completed articles. The fees may also be accrued as they are billable, under the terms of the agreements, unless such accrual is not reasonably related to the proportionate performance of the total work or services to be performed by the contractor from inception to completion.

3. Where CPFF contracts involve the manufacture and delivery of products, the reimbursable costs and fees are ordinarily included in appropriate sales or other revenue accounts. Where such contracts involve only services, or services and the

supplemental erection of facilities, only the fees should ordinarily be included in revenues.

4. Unbilled costs and fees under such contracts are ordinarily receivables rather than advances or inventory, but should preferably be shown separately from billed accounts receivable.

5. Offsetting of government advances on CPFF contracts by, or against, amounts due from the government on such contracts is acceptable only to the extent that the advances may under the terms of the agreement be offset in settlement, and only if that is the treatment anticipated in the normal course of business transactions under the contract. In case of offset, the amounts offset should be adequately disclosed.

DISCUSSION

6. Contracts in the CPFF form are used (a) for the manufacture and delivery of various products, (b) for the construction of plants and other facilities, and (c) for management and other services. Under these agreements contractors are reimbursed at intervals for their expenditures and in addition are paid a specified fixed fee.

Payments on account of the fees (less 10% or other amount which is withheld until completion) are made from time to time as specified in the agreements, usually subject to the approval of the contracting officer. In most cases the amount of each payment is, as a practical matter, determined by the ratio of expenditures made to

the total estimated expenditures rather than on the basis of deliveries or on the percentage of completion otherwise determined.

7. The agreements provide that title to all material applicable thereto vests in the government as soon as the contractor is reimbursed for his expenditures or, in some cases, immediately upon its receipt by the contractor at his plant even though not yet paid for. The contractor has a custodianship responsibility for these materials, but the government usually has property accountability officers at the plant to safeguard government interests.

8. The contracts are subject to cancellation and termination by the government, in which event the contractor is entitled to reimbursement for all expenditures made and an equitable portion of the fixed fee.

9. The government frequently makes advances of cash as a revolving fund or against the final payment due under the agreement.

Major Accounting Problems

10. There are a number of basic accounting problems common to all CPFF contracts. This section deals with the four most important, which are:

(a) When should fees under such contracts be included in the contractor's income statement?

(b) What amounts are to be included in sales or revenue accounts?

(c) What is the proper balance-sheet classification of unbilled costs and fees?

(d) What is the proper balance-sheet treatment of various items, debit and credit, identified with CPFF contracts?

(a) When should fees under such contracts be included in the contractor's income statement?

11. It is recognized that income should be recorded and stated in accordance with certain accounting principles as to time and amount; that profit is deemed to be realized when a sale in the ordinary course of business is effected unless the circumstances are such that collection of the sales price is not reasonably assured; and that delivery of goods sold under contract is normally regarded as the test of realization of profit or loss.

12. In the case of manufacturing, construction, or service contracts, profits are not ordinarily recognized until the right to full payment has become unconditional,

i.e., when the product has been delivered and accepted, when the facilities are completed and accepted, or when the services have been fully and satisfactorily rendered. This accounting procedure has stood the test of experience and should not be departed from except for cogent reasons.

13. It is, however, a generally accepted accounting procedure to accrue revenues under certain types of contracts and thereby recognize profits, on the basis of partial performance, where the circumstances are such that total profit can be estimated with reasonable accuracy and ultimate realization is reasonably assured. Particularly where the performance of a contract requires a substantial period of time from inception to completion, there is ample precedent for pro rata recognition of profit as the work progresses, if the total profit and the ratio of the performance to date to the complete performance can be computed reasonably and collection is reasonably assured. Depending upon the circumstances, such partial performance may be established by deliveries, expenditures, or percentage of completion otherwise determined. This rule is frequently applied to long-term construction and other similar contracts; it is also applied in the case of contracts involving deliveries in instalments or the performance of services. However, the rule should be dealt with cautiously and not applied in the case of partial deliveries and uncompleted contracts where the information available does not clearly indicate that a partial profit has been realized after making provision for possible losses and contingencies.

14. CPFF contracts are much like the type of contracts upon which profit has heretofore been recognized on partial performance, and accordingly have at least as much justification for accrual of fee before final delivery as those cited. The risk of loss is practically negligible, the total profit is fairly definite, and even on cancellation, pro rata profit is still reasonably assured.

15. The basic problem in dealing with CPFF contracts is the measure of partial performance, i.e., whether fees thereunder should be accrued under the established rules as to partial deliveries or percentage of completion otherwise determined, or whether, in view of their peculiar terms with respect to part payments, the determination of amounts billable by continuous government audit, and the minimum of risk carried by the contractor, the fees should be accrued as they are billable.

16. Ordinarily it is acceptable to accrue the fees as they become billable. The outstanding characteristic of CPFF contracts is reimbursement for all allowable costs, plus payment of a fixed fee for the contractor's efforts. Delivery of the finished product may not have its usual legal significance because title passes to the government prior thereto and the contractor's right to partial payment becomes unconditional in advance thereof; deliveries are not necessarily, under the terms of the agreement, evidence of the progress of the work or of the contractor's performance. Amounts billable indicate reasonably assured realization, possibly subject to renegotiation, because of the absence of a credit problem and minimum risk of loss involved. The fee appears to be earned when allowable costs are incurred or paid and the fee is billable. Finally, accrual on the basis of amounts billable is ordinarily not a departure from existing rules of accrual on the basis of partial performance, but rather a distinctive application of the rule for determining percentage of completion.

17. Judgment must be exercised in each case as to whether accrual of the fee when billable is preferable to accrual on the usual basis of delivery or of percentage of completion otherwise determined. While the approval of the government as to amounts billable would ordinarily be regarded as objective evidence, factors may exist which suggest an earlier or later accrual. Such factors include indications of substantial difference between estimated and final cost, as where preparatory or tooling-up costs were much more than estimated, raw material needs were greatly and unduly anticipated by advance purchases, or delays in delivery schedules or other circumstances suggest that costs are exceeding estimates. While such factors are normally considered by the government and billings for fees may be temporarily adjusted to safeguard against too early proportionate payment, the contractor, in accruing income, should also consider them, particularly when any substantial lag exists between expenditures and billings and audit thereof. In such cases, the presumption may be that the fee will not be found to be billable when the charges are presented, and conservatism in accrual will be necessary. Excess costs may be indicated in some cases to such an extent that accrual of fee before actual production would be unwise. Where such a situation exists the usual rule of deliveries or percentage of completion may be a preferable method of accruing the fee.

18. There are further questions as to whether the fee may be accrued as it is billed rather than as it becomes billable and whether accrual should be on the basis of the full fee or the full fee less the amount withheld. As to the first question, it seems obvious that when accrual in relation to expenditures is otherwise suitable it should be on the basis of amounts billable, since such matters as clerical delays in assembling data for billing should not affect the income statement. As to the second question, accrual on the basis of 100% of the fee is ordinarily preferable since, while payment of the balance depends on complete performance, such completion is to be expected under ordinary circumstances. Care must be exercised, of course, to provide for possible non-realization where there is doubt as to the collection of claimed costs or of the fee thereon.

(b) What amounts are to be included in sales or revenue accounts?

19. This problem is whether sales or revenue as reported in the income statement should include reimbursable costs and the fee, or the fee alone. The answer to this question depends upon the terms of the contract and upon judgment as to which method gives the more useful information.

20. Some CPFF contracts are service contracts under which the contractor acts solely in an agency capacity, whether in the erection of facilities or the management of operations. These appear to call for inclusion in the income statement of the fee alone. In the case of supply contracts, however, the contractor is more than an agent. For instance, he is responsible to creditors for materials and services purchased; he is responsible to employees for salaries and wages; he ordinarily uses his own facilities in carrying out his agreement; his position in many respects is that of an ordinary principal. In view of these facts, and the desirability of indicating the volume of his activities, it appears desirable to include reimbursable costs, as well as fees, in sales or revenues.

(c) What is the proper balance-sheet classification of unbilled costs and fee?

21. The principal reason for the existence of unbilled costs at any date is the time usually required, after receipt of material or expenditures for labor, etc., to assemble data for billing. The right to bill usually exists upon expenditure or accrual, and that right unquestionably represents a receivable rather than an advance or inventory. There is nevertheless a difference in character

between billed items and unbilled costs and distinction should be made between them on the balance sheet.

(d) What is the proper balance-sheet treatment of various items, debit and credit, identified with CPFF contracts?

22. In statements of current assets and current liabilities, amounts due to and from the same person are ordinarily offset where, under the law, they may be offset in the process of collection or payment. An advance received on a contract is, however, usually not offset unless it is definitely regarded as a payment on account of contract

work in progress, in which event it will be shown as a deduction from the related asset. An advance on a CPFF contract usually is made for the purpose of providing a revolving fund and is not ordinarily applied as a partial payment until the contract is completed or nears completion. It therefore appears to be preferable to offset advances on CPFF contracts against receivables in connection with the contracts only when it is expected that the advances will be applied in payment of those particular charges. In any case, amounts offset should be clearly disclosed.

Section B—Renegotiation

1. This section¹ deals with certain aspects of the accounting for those government contracts and subcontracts which are subject to renegotiation.

2. Where such contracts constitute a substantial part of the business done, the uncertainties resulting from the possibilities of renegotiation are usually such that appropriate indication of their existence should be given in the financial statements.

3. It is impossible to lay down general rules which can be applied satisfactorily in all cases. Here, as elsewhere in accounting, there must be an exercise of judgment which should be based on experience and on a clear understanding of the objective to be attained. That objective is to present the fairest possible financial statements, and at the same time make clear any uncertainties that limit the significance of such statements.

4. In keeping with the established accounting principle that provision should be made in financial statements for all liabilities, including reasonable estimates for liabilities not accurately determinable, provision should be made for probable renegotiation refunds wherever the amount of such refunds can be reasonably estimated. Thus, in cases where experience of the company or of comparable companies with renegotiation determinations is available and would

make a reasonable estimate practicable, provision in the income account for an estimated refund affecting the current year's operations is called for. In cases in which a reasonable estimate cannot be made, as where the effect of a new or amended renegotiation act cannot be foretold within reasonable limits or where a company is facing renegotiation for the first time and no reliable precedent is available, disclosure of the inability, because of these circumstances, to determine renegotiation effects and of the consequent uncertainties in the financial statements is necessary.

5. In addition to any provision made in the accounts, disclosure by footnote or otherwise may be required as to the uncertainties, their significance, and the basis used in determining the amount of the provision, such as the prior years' experience of the contractor or of similar contractors if their experience is available and is used, renegotiation discussions relating to the current year, etc. Such disclosure may be helpful in informing shareholders or other interested persons as to the company's status under the renegotiation law. It should also be recognized that, if conditions change, the results of a prior-year determination or settlement are not, in most cases, indicative of the amount probably refundable for the current year.

TREATMENT IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

6. Provisions made for renegotiation refunds should be included in the balance sheet among the current liabilities.

7. Accounting treatment in the income statement should conform to the concept

that profit is deemed to be realized when a sale in the ordinary course of business is effected, unless the circumstances are such that collection of the sales price is not reasonably assured.² Renegotiation re-

¹ The comments in this section are considered to be applicable also to price redetermination estimated to result in retroactive price reduction.

² See chapter 1, rule 1.

funds are commonly referred to as involving a refund of "excessive profits"; realistically, however, renegotiation involves an adjustment of the original contract or selling price. Since a provision for renegotiation refund indicates that the collection, or retention, of the selling price is not reasonably assured, the provision should preferably be treated in the income statement as a deduction from sales. Because of the interrelationship of renegotiation and taxes on income, the provision for such taxes should then be computed accordingly.

RENEGOTIATION REFUNDS FOR PRIOR YEARS

9. A further question arises where a renegotiation refund applicable to a particular year is made in an amount materially different from the provision made in the financial statements originally issued for such year. The committee recommends that the difference between the renegotiation refund and the provision thereof be shown as a separate item in the current income statement, unless such inclusion would result in a distortion of the current net income, in which event the adjustment should be treated as an adjustment of

8. The amount refundable is, however, generally a net amount, i.e., allowance is made for any taxes on income which may have been paid or assessed thereon. Therefore, as an alternative to the presentation indicated in the preceding paragraph, the provision for renegotiation refund may be shown as a charge in the income statement, separately from the provision for taxes on income, or in combination therewith.

earned surplus.³ Where an adjustment of earned surplus is made there should be appropriate disclosure of the effect of the adjustment on the prior year's net income. The committee believes that a major retroactive adjustment of the provision made for a renegotiation refund can often best be disclosed by presenting a revised income statement for the prior year, either in comparative form in conjunction with the current year's financial statements⁴ or otherwise, and it urges that this procedure be followed.

Section C—Terminated War and Defense Contracts

1. This section deals with problems involved in accounting for fixed-price war and defense supply contracts terminated, in whole or in part, for the convenience of the government. It does not deal specifically with terminated cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts nor with contracts for facilities or services. However, the conclusions reached herein may serve as guides for the accounting ap-

plicable to such special contracts. Terminations for default of the contractor involve problems of a different nature and are not considered here.

2. Except where the text clearly indicates otherwise, the term *contractor* is used to denote either a prime contractor or a subcontractor, and the term *contract* to denote either a prime contract or a subcontract.

SUMMARY STATEMENT

3. The profit of a contractor on a fixed-price supply contract terminated for the convenience of the government accrues as of the effective date of termination.

4. Those parts of the termination claim which are reasonably determinable should be included in financial statements after termination; when the total of the undeterminable elements is believed to be material, full disclosure of the essential facts should be made, by footnote or otherwise.

5. Under ordinary circumstances the termination claim should be classified as a current asset and unless the amount is relatively small should be separately disclosed.

6. Advances received on the contract before its termination may be shown in financial statements after termination as a deduction from the claim receivable and should be appropriately explained. Loans negotiated on the security of the termination claim, however, should be shown as current liabilities.

7. All of the contractor's own cost and profit elements included in the termination claim are preferably accounted for as a sale and if material in amount should be separately disclosed. The costs and expenses chargeable to the claim may then be given their usual classification in the accounts.

³ See chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

⁴ See chapter 2(a).

8. When inventory items whose costs are included in the termination claim are subsequently reacquired by the contractor the reacquisition value of those items should be recorded as a purchase and applied, together with other disposal credits, against the termination claim receivable.

9. So-called *no-cost* settlements—those in which the contractor waives the right to

make a claim—result in no transaction which could be reflected in sales. The costs applicable to the contract may be given their usual classification in the accounts; the inventory retained should not be treated as a purchase but should be accounted for according to the usual methods and standards applicable to inventories.

DISCUSSION

10. Termination of war and defense contracts for the convenience of the government is a means of adjusting the production of materials to the varying requirements of the military services. Since terminations transfer active contracts in process of execution into claims in process of liquidation, they, like contract renegotiations and cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts, may have important effects on the financial statements of defense contractors.

When Profit Accrues

11. An important problem involved in accounting for the effect of terminations is that of determining the time at which profit earned on the contract should be recognized. This problem is similar to that described in other sections of this chapter on renegotiation and cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts in that it involves accrual at a specific date of an element of profit whose original measurement may be difficult and will require informed judgment, and whose final amount may not be determined until some future period.

12. Three dates have been mentioned as dates for the determination of profit from terminated contracts: (a) the effective date of termination; (b) the date of final settlement; and (c) some intermediate date, such as that on which the claim is finally prepared or filed. The effective date of termination is the date at which the contractor acquires the right to receive payment on the terminated portion of the contract. This date is also, of the three, the one most objectively determined.

13. Under the accrual basis of accounting recognition is given to revenues and expenses, to the fullest extent possible, in the period to which they relate. Profit on a contract of sale is ordinarily taken into account upon delivery or performance. However, as stated in section (a) of this chapter it is a generally accepted accounting procedure to accrue revenues under certain types of contracts, and thereby recognize

profits, on the basis of partial performance where the circumstances are such that total profit can be estimated with reasonable accuracy and ultimate realization is reasonably assured. Thus, the accrual of profit under a cost-plus-fixed-fee contract is recognized as the fee becomes billable rather than when it is actually billed. Upon termination of a contract the contractor acquires a claim for fair compensation; the government reserves the option of acquiring any of the inventories for which the contractor makes claim under the terminated contract. Except to effect settlements and to protect and dispose of property, the expenses of which are reimbursable, the contractor need perform no further service under a terminated contract in order to enforce his claim. It follows that any profit arising out of such a contract accrues at the effective date of termination and, if the amount can be reasonably ascertained, should be recorded at that time.

Determination of Claim

14. Practical application of the accrual principle to the accounting for terminated war and defense contracts rests upon the possibility of making a reasonable estimate of the amount of the termination claim before its final determination by settlement. This involves two principal considerations: (1) whether the costs of the contractor can be determined with reasonable accuracy and (2) whether the amount of profit to be realized can be estimated closely enough to justify inclusion in the accounts.

15. The various acts and regulations, including a statement of principles for determining costs and certain termination cost memorandums, describe in general terms the costs and expenses which are to be taken into account in arriving at fair compensation, as well as certain costs which are not allowable, and establish uniform termination policies and procedures.

16. While the total claim, and particularly the profit allowance, is subject to negotiation, the termination articles provide for a

formula settlement allowing definite percentages of profit based on costs in the event of the failure of negotiations. This in effect fixes a minimum expectation of profit allowance since the formula percentages have also been recognized by regulation as a basis of negotiating settlement in the event of failure by the parties to agree on any other basis. The same regulations give other guides for estimating a fair profit allowance, which in some cases may be greater than the amount computed by the formula percentages. When the contractor, because of lack of prior negotiation experience or uncertainty as to the application of the principles of these regulations to a particular case, is unable to determine a more appropriate profit allowance, he may accrue the minimum amount determined by the formula percentages.

17. The profit to be included in the accounts of the contractor upon termination is the difference between (a) the amount of his recorded claim and (b) the total of the inventory, deferred and capitalized items, and other costs applicable to the terminated contract as they are currently included in his accounts. This profit may exceed the amount specified as profit in the claim because costs applicable to the terminated portion of the contract may be allowable in the claim even though they may have been properly written off as incurred in prior periods.

18. In some cases it will be impossible to make a reasonable estimate of a termination claim in time for inclusion in the financial statements of the period in which the termination occurs. Effect may then be given in the statements to those parts of the termination claim which are determinable with reasonable certainty and disclosure made, by footnote or otherwise, of the status of the remainder.

19. When the contractor's claim includes items of known controversial nature it should be stated at the amount estimated to be collectible. When a particular termination claim or part thereof is so uncertain in amount that it cannot be reasonably estimated, it is preferable not to give effect to that part of the claim in the financial statements; but if the total of such undeterminable elements is material, the circumstances should be disclosed in statements issued before the removal of the uncertainty. In an extreme case involving undeterminable claims, consideration should be given to delaying

the issuance of financial statements until necessary data are available.

Presentation in Financial Statements

20. Termination has the effect of converting an active contract in process into a claim, or, from an accounting standpoint, from inventories and other charges into an account receivable. This receivable arises in the regular course of business; it is part of the working capital; and in view of the provisions made for financial assistance to the contractor during the period of termination, collection in large part may be expected within a relatively short time. The termination claim should therefore be classified as a current asset, unless there is an indication of extended delay, such as serious disagreement pointing to probable litigation, which would exclude it from this classification.

21. Although a claim may be composed of several elements representing reimbursable items of special equipment, deferred charges, inventories, and other items, as well as claims for profit, it is preferable to record the claim in one account. When the total of termination claims is material it should be disclosed separately from other receivables. It is also desirable to segregate claims directly against the government from claims against other contractors where the amounts are significant.

22. To assure adequate financial assistance to contractors, the acts provide in some cases for partial payments and in other for such payments or guaranteed loans from the effective date of termination until final settlement. Partial payments are, of course, to be recorded as reductions of the termination claim receivable. Termination loans, on the other hand, are definite liabilities to third parties, even though guaranteed in whole or in part by the government, and accordingly should be shown in the balance sheet as liabilities, with appropriate cross-reference to the related claim or claims. When a terminated contract is one on which advance payments had previously been received, the financial statements of the contractor issued before final collection of the claim ordinarily should reflect any balance of those advances disclosed as deductions from the claim receivable.¹ Financial statements issued before the termination claim is recorded should disclose, by footnote or otherwise, the relationship of such liabilities to a possible termination claim receivable.

¹ See chapter 11(a), paragraph 22.

23. Ordinarily, a termination will result in the cessation of a contractor's activity through which materials or services have been supplied under the contract and of the related transactions which have been reflected in the contractor's income accounts as sales and cost elements. In effect, termination policies and procedures provide a basis upon which the contractor's costs in process may become the elements of a final sale under the terminated portion of the contract. Accordingly, the amount of the contractor's termination claim representing his cost and profit elements should be treated as a sale and the costs and expenses chargeable to the claim given their usual classification in the income statement. Because these termination sales are of a special type, their financial results should not be appraised in the same manner as are those of regular sales and they should, if material in amount, be separately disclosed in the income statement. Any items which the contractor chooses to retain without claim for cost or loss are, of course, not sold but remain as inventory or deferred charges in the contractor's accounts.

Claims of Subcontractors

24. The term *subcontractor's claims* as used in connection with terminated contracts refers to those obligations of a contractor to a subcontractor which arise from the subcontractor's costs incurred through transactions which were related to the contract terminated but did not result in the transfer of billable materials or services to the contractor before termination. Other obligations of a contractor to a subcontractor, arising through transactions by which materials or services of the subcontractor are furnished or supplied to the contractor, are considered to be liabilities incurred in the ordinary course of business and are not included in the term *claims of subcontractors*.

25. The termination articles provide that, following the termination of a contract, the contractor shall settle, with the approval or ratification of the contracting officer when necessary, all claims of subcontractors arising out of the termination; and that the contractor shall be paid, as part of his settlement, the cost of settling and paying claims arising out of the stoppage of work under subcontracts affected by the termination. While a contractor ordinarily is liable to his subcontractors or suppliers for such obligations, the amounts due them are an element in his termination claim and often are not paid to them until after his claim has been settled. He often has no control over the

filing of subcontractors' claims and may not know their amount until some time after the termination date or even until some time after he has filed and received payment for his own claim.

26. The possibility that a contractor may suffer loss through failure to recover the amount of his liability on subcontractors' claims arises principally from overcommitments, errors in ordering, and similar causes. Provision should be made in his accounts for losses of this character which are known or believed to be probable.

27. Although the principle that liabilities may not be offset against assets in the financial statements is generally approved by accountants, there is no general agreement as to the accounting treatment to be accorded subcontractors' claims which are expected to be fully recoverable. To the extent that a subcontractor's claim is considered to be unrecoverable no difference of opinion exists; the liability should be recorded and provision made for any contemplated loss. The difference of opinion relates to those subcontractors' claims which are deemed to be fully recoverable.

28. Some accountants believe that the effect of the various acts and regulations is to establish a relationship between the claims of subcontractors and the resulting right of the contractor under his own termination claim which differs from an ordinary commercial relationship and justifies their omission from the accounts. Recoverable subcontractors' claims are thus said to be in the nature of contingent liabilities, which are customarily omitted from the accounts except where a loss is expected. Contingent liabilities may be disclosed in the financial statements without recording them as assets and liabilities, and even when they are recorded it is customary accounting practice to show them on the balance sheet as deductions from the related contingent assets so that no effect upon financial ratios and relationships results.

29. Other accountants believe that the nature of an obligation to a subcontractor is that of an ordinary liability, even though it may arise through the termination of a war or defense contract, and that the contractor's termination claim receivable, although related to the subcontractor's claim, is to be accounted for independently as an asset. This group believes that all subcontractors' claims, to the extent that they are reasonably ascertainable, should be recorded in the accounts and displayed in the contrac-

tor's balance sheet as current liabilities, and that the amounts recoverable by the contractor should be included in his termination claim receivable. To the extent that the amounts of subcontractors' claims are not reasonably determinable, disclosure by footnote or otherwise in the financial statements is believed to be adequate.

30. Because of the merits and prevalence of these alternative views, the committee expresses no preference for either treatment and considers either to be acceptable.

Disposal Credits

31. Disposal credits are amounts deducted from the contractor's termination claim receivable by reason of his retention, or sale to outsiders, of some or all of the termination inventory for which claim was made. In the case of items retained, either as scrap or for use by the contractor, the amount of the credit is determined by agreement between the contractor and a representative of the government. The sale of inventory items by the contractor is likewise subject to approval by the government, except as permitted by regulation. Since the amount of the contractor's termination claim, as already indicated, is properly recorded as a sale, any elements included in that claim for items of inventory retained

by the contractor are, in effect, reacquired by him and should be treated as purchases at the agreed value. Amounts received for items sold to others with the approval of the government are collections for the account of the government and should be applied in reduction of the claim receivable. Obviously inventories or other items that are retained by the contractor after termination without claim for loss should not be included as an element of the termination claim.

No-Cost Settlements

32. A contractor whose contract is terminated may prefer to retain the termination inventory for use in other production or for disposal at his own risk. For these or other reasons the contractor may prefer to make no claim against the government or a higher-tier contractor. In the case of such no-cost settlements there is no sale of inventory or other items to the government and therefore no occasion to accrue any profit arising out of the termination. The costs otherwise applicable to the contract should be given their usual treatment in the accounts. Items of inventory or other property retained, having been previously recorded, will, of course, require no charge to purchases but should be treated in accordance with the usual procedures applicable to such assets.

CHAPTER 12

1. The recommendations made in this chapter apply to United States companies which have branches or subsidiaries operating in foreign countries.

2. Since World War I foreign operations have been influenced to a marked degree by wars, departures from the gold standard, devaluations of currencies, currency restrictions, government regulations, etc.

3. Although comparatively few countries in recent years have had unrestricted currencies and exchanges, it is nevertheless true that many companies have been doing business in foreign countries having varying degrees of restrictions; in some cases they have been carrying on all operations regarded as normal, including the transmission of funds. In view of the difficulties mentioned above, however, the accounting treatment of assets, liabilities, losses, and gains involved in the conduct of foreign

Foreign Operations and Foreign Exchange

business and to be included or reflected in the financial statements of United States companies requires careful consideration.

4. A sound procedure for United States companies to follow is to show earnings from foreign operations in their own accounts only to the extent that funds have been received in the United States or unrestricted funds are available for transmission thereto. Appropriate provision should be made also for known losses.

5. Any foreign earnings reported beyond the amounts received in the United States should be carefully considered in the light of all the facts. The amounts should be disclosed if they are significant, and they should be reserved against to the extent that their realization in dollars appears to be doubtful.

6. As to assets held abroad, the accounting should take into consideration the fact

that most foreign assets stand in some degree of jeopardy, so far as ultimate realization by United States owners is concerned. Under these conditions it is important that especial care be taken in each case to make full disclosure in the financial statements of

United States companies of the extent to which they include significant foreign items.

7. Where more than one foreign exchange rate is in effect, care should be exercised to select the one most clearly realistic and appropriate in the circumstances.

CONSOLIDATION OF FOREIGN SUBSIDIARIES

8. In view of the uncertain values and availability of the assets and net income of foreign subsidiaries subject to controls and exchange restrictions and the consequent unrealistic statements of income that may result from the translation of many foreign currencies into dollars, careful consideration should be given to the fundamental question of whether it is proper to consolidate the statements of foreign subsidiaries with the statements of United States companies. Whether consolidation of foreign subsidiaries is decided upon or not, adequate disclosure of foreign operations should be made.

9. The following are among the possible ways of providing information relating to such foreign subsidiaries:

(a) To exclude foreign subsidiaries from consolidation and to furnish (1) statements in which only domestic subsidiaries are consolidated and (2) as to foreign subsidiaries, a summary in suitable form of their assets and liabilities, their income and losses for the year, and the parent company's equity therein. The total amount of investments in foreign subsidiaries should be shown

separately, and the basis on which the amount was arrived at should be stated. If these investments include any surplus of foreign subsidiaries and such surplus had previously been included in consolidated surplus, the amount should be separately shown or earmarked in stating the consolidated surplus in the statements here suggested. The exclusion of foreign subsidiaries from consolidation does not make it acceptable practice to include intercompany profits which would be eliminated if such subsidiaries were consolidated.

(b) To consolidate domestic and foreign subsidiaries and to furnish in addition the summary described in (a)(2) above.

(c) To furnish (1) complete consolidated statements and also (2) consolidated statements for domestic companies only.

(d) To consolidate domestic and foreign subsidiaries and to furnish in addition parent company statements showing the investment in and income from foreign subsidiaries separately from those of domestic subsidiaries.

LOSSES AND GAINS ON FOREIGN EXCHANGE

10. Realized losses or gains on foreign exchange should be charged against or credited to operations.

11. Provision should be made, ordinarily by a charge against operations, for declines in translation value of foreign net current

and working assets (unrealized losses). Unrealized gains should preferably be carried to a suspense account, except to the extent that they offset prior provisions for unrealized losses, in which case they may be credited to the account previously charged.

TRANSLATION OF ASSETS, LIABILITIES, LOSSES, AND GAINS

Balance Sheet

12. Fixed assets, permanent investments, and long-term receivables should be translated into dollars at the rates prevailing when such assets were acquired or constructed. When large items are purchased for United States dollars (or from the proceeds of sale of such dollars), the United States dollar cost will, of course, be used. If, however, the purchase is made in some foreign currency (obtained from earnings or borrowings), then the cost of the assets

should be the equivalent of the amount of foreign currency in United States dollars, at the rate of exchange prevailing at the time payment is made. An exception to the foregoing general principle might be made where fixed assets, permanent investments, or long-term receivables were acquired shortly before a substantial and presumably permanent change in the exchange rate with funds obtained in the country concerned, in which case it may be appropriate to restate the dollar equivalents of such assets to the extent of the change in the related debt.

13. In consolidating or combining the accounts, depreciation should be computed on the amount of fixed assets as expressed in United States dollars, even though for purposes of local taxation it may be impossible to show the foreign currency equivalent of the full amount of depreciation on the foreign statements.

14. Cash, accounts receivable, and other current assets, unless covered by forward exchange contracts, should be translated at the rate of exchange prevailing on the date of the balance sheet.

15. Inventory should follow the standard rule of *cost or market, whichever is lower* in dollars. Where accounts are to be stated in which the question of foreign exchange enters and the inventory is not translated at the rate of exchange prevailing on the date of the balance sheet, as is usually done with current assets, the burden of proof is on those who wish to follow some other procedure.

16. There are, however, undoubtedly many cases where the cost or a portion of the cost of an article was incurred when the foreign currency was at a substantially higher rate of exchange than existed on the closing day of the financial period. In many cases such an asset could not be replaced for the amount in foreign currency at which it appears in the records of the branch or subsidiary company. In some cases the replacement price in foreign currency would undoubtedly have increased since the fall in exchange, and it would be inequitable to treat the *lower of cost or market* as a mere translation at the closing rate of the foreign currency cost price, where the article could now be replaced only at a much higher amount in foreign currency. Where the selling price obtainable in dollars, after deducting a reasonable percentage to cover selling and other local expenses, exceeds the cost of the article in dollars at the rate prevailing as of the date of purchase, such original dollar equivalent may be considered as the cost for purposes of inventory.

17. Current liabilities payable in foreign currency should be translated into dollars at the rate of exchange in force on the date of the balance sheet.

18. Long-term liabilities and capital stock stated in foreign currency should not be translated at the closing rate, but at the rates of exchange prevailing when they were originally incurred or issued. This is a general rule, but an exception may exist in respect to long-term debt incurred or capital

stock issued in connection with the acquisition of fixed assets, permanent investments, or long-term receivables a short time before a substantial and presumably permanent change in the exchange rate. In such instances it may be appropriate to state the long-term debt or the capital stock at the new rate and proper to deal with the exchange differences as an adjustment of the cost of the assets acquired.

Profit and Loss Statement

19. The operating statements of foreign branches or subsidiaries, or of domestic corporations conducting their business in foreign currencies (buying, selling and manufacturing), should preferably, where there have been wide fluctuations in exchange, be translated at the average rate of exchange applicable to each month or, if this procedure would involve too much labor, on the basis of a carefully weighted average.

20. Where a major change in an exchange rate takes place during a fiscal year, there may be situations in which more realistic results will be obtained if income computed in foreign currencies is translated for the entire fiscal year at the new rates in effect after such major fluctuation. This procedure would have the practical advantage of making unnecessary a cutoff at the date of the change in the exchange rate. Where dividends have been paid prior to a major change in the exchange rate, out of earnings of the current fiscal year, that portion of the income for the year should be considered as having been earned at the rate at which such dividend was paid irrespective of the rates used in translating the remainder of the earnings.

21. While the possibility of losses from currency devaluation may ordinarily be considered to be a risk inherent in the conduct of business in foreign countries, the worldwide scope and unprecedented magnitude of devaluations that have occurred in recent years are such that they cannot be regarded as recurrent hazards of business. Accordingly, exchange adjustments arising from such extraordinary developments, if so material in amount that their inclusion in the income statement would impair the significance of net income to an extent that misleading inferences might be drawn therefrom, appear to be of such nature that they might appropriately be charged to surplus.

* * *

22. The foregoing is no more than a brief résumé of the generally accepted prin-

ciples pertaining to the treatment of foreign exchange as applied to the statements of accounts of American corporations. The

practical problems which arise in their application should receive careful consideration in each case.

Two members of the committee, Messrs. Lindquist and Mason, assented with qualification to adoption of chapter 12.

Mr. Lindquist believes that the accounting indicated in paragraph 11 for unrealized losses and gains arising from exchange fluctuations should be consistent for losses and gains to the extent that they result

from normal temporary fluctuations in exchange rates.

Mr. Mason does not approve the inconsistent treatment of unrealized losses and unrealized gains from exchange fluctuations. He would prefer to defer them both. He also believes that long-term receivables and long-term liabilities should be translated at current rates.

CHAPTER 13

Compensation

Section A—Pension Plans: Annuity Costs Based on Past Service

1. This section deals with the accounting treatment of costs arising out of past service which are incurred under pension plans involving payments to outside agencies such as insurance companies and trustees. Self-administered and informal plans which do not require payments to outside agencies are not dealt with because of their special features and lack of uniformity. The principles set forth herein, however, are generally applicable to those plans as well.

2. Charges with respect to pension costs based on past service have sometimes been made to surplus on the ground that such payments are indirectly compensation for services and that since the services upon which computation of the payments is based were performed in the past, the compensation should not be permitted to affect any period or periods other than those in which the services involved were performed. In other cases all annuity costs based on past service have been charged to income in the period of the plan's inauguration as a current cost of originating the plan. In still other cases the position has been taken that a pension plan cannot bring the hoped-for benefits in the future unless past as well as future services are given recognition and, accordingly, annuity costs based on past service have been spread over a period of present and future years. The last method is the one permitted under provisions of the Internal Revenue Code.¹

3. The committee believes that, even though the calculation is based on past service, costs of annuities based on such

service are incurred in contemplation of present and future services, not necessarily of the individual affected but of the organization as a whole, and therefore should be charged to the present and future periods benefited. This belief is based on the assumption that although the benefits to a company flowing from pension plans are intangible, they are nevertheless real. The element of past service is one of the important considerations in establishing pension plans, and annuity costs measured by such past service contribute to the benefits gained by the adoption of a plan. It is usually expected that such benefits will include better employee morale, the removal of superannuated employees from the payroll, and the attraction and retention of more desirable personnel, all of which should result in improved operations.

4. The committee, accordingly, is of the opinion that:

(a) Costs of annuities based on past service should be allocated to current and future periods; however, if they are not sufficiently material in amount to distort the results of operations in a single period, they may be absorbed in the current year;

(b) Costs of annuities based on past service should not be charged to surplus.

5. This opinion is not to be interpreted as requiring that charges be made to income rather than to reserves previously provided, or that recognition be given in the accounts of current or future periods to pension costs written off prior to the issuance of an opinion on this subject.

¹ See IRC Sec. 23(p)(1)(A).

Section B—Compensation Involved in Stock Option and Stock Purchase Plans

1. The practice of granting to officers and other employees options to purchase or rights to subscribe for shares of a corporation's capital stock has been followed by a considerable number of corporations over a period of many years. To the extent that such options and rights involve a measurable amount of compensation, this cost of services received should be accounted for as such. The amount of compensation involved may be substantial and omission of such costs from the corporation's accounting may result in overstatement of

net income to a significant degree. Accordingly, consideration is given herein to the accounting treatment of compensation represented by stock options or purchase rights granted to officers and other employees.¹

2. For convenience, this section will discuss primarily the problems of compensation raised by stock option plans. However, the committee feels that substantially the same problems may be encountered in connection with stock purchase plans made available to employees, and the discussion below is applicable to such plans also.

RIGHTS INVOLVING COMPENSATION

3. Stock options involving an element of compensation usually arise out of an offer or agreement by an employer corporation to issue shares of its capital stock to one or more officers or other employees (hereinafter referred to as grantees) at a stated price. The grantees are accorded the right to require issuance of the shares either at a specified time or during some determinable period. In some cases the grantee's

options are exercisable only if at the time of exercise certain conditions exist, such as that the grantee is then or until a specified date has been an employee. In other cases, the grantees may have undertaken certain obligations, such as to remain in the employment of the corporation for at least a specified period, or to take the shares only for investment purposes and not for resale.

RIGHTS NOT INVOLVING COMPENSATION

4. Stock option plans in many cases may be intended not primarily as a special form of compensation but rather as an important means of raising capital, or as an inducement to obtain greater or more widespread ownership of the corporation's stock among its officers and other employees. In general, the terms under which such options are granted, including any conditions as to exercise of the options or disposal of the stock acquired, are the most significant evidence ordinarily available as to the nature and purpose of a particular stock option or stock option plan. In practice, it is often apparent that a particular option or plan involves elements of two or more of the above purposes. Where the induce-

ments are not larger per share than would reasonably be required in an offer of shares to all shareholders for the purpose of raising an equivalent amount of capital, no compensation need be presumed to be involved.

5. Stock purchase plans also are frequently an integral part of a corporation's program to secure equity capital or to obtain widespread ownership among employees, or both. In such cases, no element of compensation need be considered to be present if the purchase price is not lower than is reasonably required to interest employees generally or to secure the contemplated funds.

¹ Bulletin 37, "Accounting for Compensation in the Form of Stock Options," was issued in November, 1948. Issuance of a revised bulletin in 1953 and its expansion to include stock purchase plans were prompted by the very considerable increase in the use of certain types of option and purchase plans following the enactment in 1950 of Section 130A of the Internal Revenue Code. This section granted specialized tax treatment to employee stock options if certain requirements were met as to the terms of the option, as to the circumstances under which the option was granted and could be exercised and as to the holding and disposal of the stock

acquired thereunder. In general, the effect of Section 130A is to eliminate or minimize the amount of income taxable to the employee as compensation and to deny to the issuing corporation any tax deduction in respect of such restricted options. In 1951, the Federal Salary Stabilization Board issued rules and regulations relating to stock options and purchase rights granted to employees whereby options generally comparable in nature to the restricted stock options specified in Section 130A might be considered for its purposes not to involve compensation, or to involve compensation only in limited amounts.

TIME OF MEASUREMENT OF COMPENSATION

6. In the case of stock options involving compensation, the principal problem is the measurement of the compensation. This problem involves selection of the date as of which measurement of any element of compensation is to be made and the manner of measurement. The date as of which measurement is made is of critical importance since the fair value of the shares under option may vary materially in the often extended period during which the option is outstanding. There may be at least six dates to be considered for this purpose: (a) the date of the adoption of an option plan, (b) the date on which an option is granted to a specific individual, (c) the date on which the grantee has performed any conditions precedent to exercise of the option, (d) the date on which the grantee may first exercise the option, (e) the date on which the option is exercised by the grantee, and (f) the date on which the grantee disposes of the stock acquired.

7. Of the six dates mentioned two are not relevant to the question considered in this bulletin—cost to the corporation which is granting the option. The date of adoption of an option plan clearly has no relevance, inasmuch as the plan per se constitutes no more than a proposed course of action which is ineffective until options are granted thereunder. The date on which a grantee disposes of the shares acquired under an option is equally immaterial since this date will depend on the desires of the individual as a shareholder and bears no necessary relation to the services performed.²

8. The date on which the option is exercised has been advocated as the date on which a cost may be said to have been incurred. Use of this date is supported by the argument that only then will it be known whether or not the option will be exercised. However, beginning with the time at which the grantee may first exercise the option he is in effect speculating for his own account. His delay has no discernible relation to his status as an employee but reflects only his judgment as an investor.

9. The date on which the grantee may first exercise the option will generally coincide with, but in some cases may follow, the date on which the grantee will have performed any conditions precedent to exercise of the option. Accordingly this date pre-

sents no special problems differing from those to be discussed in the next paragraph.

10. There remain to be considered the date on which an option is granted to a specific individual and the date on which the grantee has fulfilled any conditions precedent to exercise of the option. When compensation is paid in a form other than cash the *amount* of compensation is ordinarily determined by the fair value of the property which was agreed to be given in exchange for the services to be rendered. The time at which such fair value is to be determined may be subject to some difference of opinion but it appears that the date on which an option is granted to a specific individual would be the appropriate point at which to evaluate the cost to the employer, since it was the value at that date which the employer may be presumed to have had in mind. In most of the cases under discussion, moreover, the only important contingency involved is the continuance of the grantee in the employment of the corporation, a matter very largely within the control of the grantee and usually the main objective of the grantor. Under such circumstances it may be assumed that if the stock option were granted as a part of an employment contract, both parties had in mind a valuation of the option at the date of the contract; and accordingly, value at that date should be used as the amount to be accounted for as compensation. If the option were granted as a form of supplementary compensation otherwise than as an integral part of an employment contract, the grantor is nevertheless governed in determining the option price and the number of shares by conditions then existing. It follows that it is the value of the option at that time, rather than the grantee's ultimate gain or loss on the transaction, which for accounting purposes constitutes whatever compensation the grantor intends to pay. The committee therefore concludes that in most cases, including situations where the right to exercise is conditional upon continued employment, valuation should be made of the option as of the date of grant.

11. The date of grant also represents the date on which the corporation foregoes the principal alternative use of the shares which it places subject to option, i.e., the sale of such shares at the then prevailing

² This is the date on which income or gain taxable to the grantee may arise under Section 130A. Use of this date for tax purposes is

doubtless based on considerations as to the ability of the optionee to pay taxes prior to sale of the shares.

market price. Viewed in this light, the *cost* of utilizing the shares for purposes of the option plan can best be measured in relation to what could then have been obtained through sale of such shares in the open market. However, the fact that the grantor might, as events turned out, have obtained

at some later date either more or less for the shares in question than at the date of the grant does not bear upon the measurement of the compensation which can be said to have been in contemplation of the parties at the date the option was granted.

MANNER OF MEASUREMENT

12. Freely exercisable option rights, even at prices above the current market price of the shares, have been traded in the public markets for many years, but there is no such objective means for measuring the value of an option which is not transferable and is subject to such other restrictions as are usually present in options of the nature here under discussion. Although there is, from the standpoint of the grantee, a value inherent in a restricted future right to purchase shares at a price at or even above the fair value of shares at the grant date, the committee believes it is impracticable to measure any such value. As to the grantee any positive element may, for practical purposes, be deemed to be largely or wholly offset by the negative effect of the restrictions ordinarily present in options of the type under discussion. From the viewpoint of the grantor corporation no measurable cost can be said to have been incurred because it could not at the grant date have realized more than the *fair value* of the optioned shares, the concept of fair value as here used encompassing the possibility and prospect of future developments. On the other hand, it follows in the opinion of the committee that the value to the grantee and the related cost to the corpo-

ration of a restricted right to purchase shares at a price *below* the fair value of the shares at the grant date may for the purposes here under discussion be taken as the excess of the then fair value of the shares over the option price.

13. While market quotations of shares are an important and often a principal factor in determining the fair value of shares, market quotations at a given date are not necessarily conclusive evidence.³ Where significant market quotations cannot be obtained, other recognized methods of valuation have to be used. Furthermore, in determining the fair value of shares for the purpose of measuring the cost incurred by a corporation in the issuance of an option, it is appropriate to take into consideration such modifying factors as the range of quotations over a reasonable period and the fact that the corporation by selling shares pursuant to an option may avoid some or all of the expenses otherwise incurred in a sale of shares. The absence of a ready market, as in the case of shares of closely-held corporations, should also be taken into account and may require the use of other means of arriving at fair value than by reference to an occasional market quotation or sale of the security.

OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

14. If the period for which payment for services is being made by the issuance of the stock option is not specifically indicated in the offer or agreement, the value of the option should be apportioned over the period of service for which the payment of the compensation seems appropriate in the existing circumstances. Accrual of the compensation over the period selected should be made by means of charges against the income account. Upon exercise of an option the sum of the cash received and the amount of the charge to income should be

accounted for as the consideration received on issuance of the stock.

15. In connection with financial statements, disclosure should be made as to the status of the option or plan at the end of the period of report, including the number of shares under option, the option price, and the number of shares as to which options were exercisable. As to options exercised during the period, disclosure should be made of the number of shares involved and the option price thereof.

³ Whether treasury or unissued shares are to be used to fulfill the obligation is not material to a determination of value.

One member of the committee, Mr. Mason, assented with qualification to adoption of section (b) of chapter 13. One member, Mr. Knight, did not vote.

Mr. Mason assents only under the assumption that if an option lapses after the grantee becomes entitled to exercise it, the related compensation shall be treated as a contribution by the grantee to the capital of the grantor.

CHAPTER 14

Disclosure of Long-Term Leases in Financial Statements of Lessees

1. The growth in recent years of the practice of using long-term leases as a method of financing has created problems of disclosure in financial statements. In buy-build-sell-and-lease transactions, the purchaser of land builds to his own specifications, sells the improved property, and simultaneously leases the property for a period of years. Similar transactions are the sale and lease of existing properties or the lease of properties to be constructed by the lessor to the specifications of the lessee. The lessee ordinarily assumes all the expenses and obligations of ownership (such as taxes, insurance, interest, maintenance, and repairs) except payment of any mortgage indebtedness on the property.

2. There are many variations in such types of transactions. For example, some leases contain an *option* for acquisition of the property by the lessee, while other leases contain a *requirement* that the lessee purchase the property upon expiration of the lease. In some the price to be paid upon repurchase is related to the fair value of the property or the depreciated book value; in others it is an arbitrary amount with little or no relation to the property's worth, or a nominal sum. Some leases provide for a high initial rental with declining payments thereafter or renewal at substantially reduced rentals.

3. Where long-term leases are used as a substitute for ownership and mortgage borrowing a question arises as to the extent of disclosure to be made in financial statements of the fixed annual amounts payable and other important terms under such leases.¹

4. Although the types of sell-and-lease arrangements referred to in paragraph 1

differ in many respects from the conventional long-term lease,² the principles of disclosure stated herein are intended to apply to both. This chapter does not apply to short-term leases³ or to those customarily used for oil and gas properties.

5. The committee believes that material amounts of fixed rental and other liabilities maturing in future years under long-term leases and possible related contingencies are material facts affecting judgments based on the financial statements of a corporation, and that those who rely upon financial statements are entitled to know of the existence of such leases and the extent of the obligations thereunder, irrespective of whether the leases are considered to be advantageous or otherwise. Accordingly, where the rentals or other obligations under long-term leases are material in the circumstances, the committee is of the opinion that:

(a) disclosure should be made in financial statements or in notes thereto of:

(1) the amounts of annual rentals to be paid under such leases with some indication of the periods for which they are payable and

(2) any other important obligation assumed or guarantee made in connection therewith;

(b) the above information should be given not only in the year in which the transaction originates but also as long thereafter as the amounts involved are material; and

(c) in addition, in the year in which the transaction originates, there should be disclosure of the principal details of any important sale-and-lease transaction.

¹ Rule 3-18 (b) of Regulation S-X issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission reads: "Where the rentals or obligations under long-term leases are material there shall be shown the amounts of annual rentals under such leases with some indication of the periods for which they are payable, together with any important obligation assumed or guarantee made in connection therewith. If the rentals are conditional, state the minimum annual amounts."

² The conventional lease, a straight tenure contract between the owner of property and a lessee, generally does not involve buying, building, and selling of property by the lessee, or special repurchase arrangements.

³ Three years has been used as a criterion in some cases for classifying leases as short-term or long-term.

6. A lease arrangement is sometimes, in substance, no more than an instalment purchase of the property. This may well be the case when the lease is made subject to purchase of the property for a nominal sum or for an amount obviously much less than the prospective fair value of the property; or when the agreement stipulates that the rental payments may be applied in part as instalments on the purchase price; or when the rentals obviously are so out of line with rentals for similar properties as to negative the representation that the rental payments are for current use of the property and to create the presumption that portions of such rentals are partial payments under a purchase plan.

7. Since the lessee in such cases does not have legal title to the property and does not necessarily assume any direct mortgage obligation, it has been argued that any balance sheet which included the property among the assets and any related indebtedness among the liabilities would be incorrect. However, the committee is of the opinion that the facts relating to all such leases should be carefully considered and that, where it is clearly evident that the transaction involved is in substance a purchase, the "leased" property should be included among the assets of the lessee with suitable accounting for the corresponding liabilities and for the related charges in the income statement.

One member of the committee, Mr. Lindquist, assented with qualification to adoption of chapter 14.

* Mr. Lindquist's qualification relates to paragraph 6. He believes that at any time during a long-term lease, other than a reasonable period before its expiration, no determination is possible as to *prospective fair value of the*

property for comparison with the purchase price that may be stated in the lease. He also questions the ability of an accountant to carry out the implicit requirement for comparison of the lease rental with *rentals for similar properties* in view of the many physical and other factors on which would rest a conclusion of similarity of properties.

CHAPTER 15 Unamortized Discount, Issue Cost, and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded

1. Until the early days of the century, bond discount was commonly regarded as a capital charge. When the unsoundness of this treatment was recognized, alternative methods of treatment became accepted, under one of which the discount was distributed over the term of the issue, and under the other the discount was charged immediately against surplus, the latter being regarded generally as the preferable course.

2. Present-day treatment recognizes that on an issue of bonds the amount agreed to be paid (whether nominally as interest or as principal) in excess of the net proceeds constitutes the compensation paid for the use of the money. Where bonds are issued at a discount it is customary to distribute the discount over the term of the bond issue and to charge both the coupon interest and the allocated discount directly to income.

3. In the committee's opinion it is a sound accounting procedure to treat such discount as a part of the cost of borrowed

money to be distributed systematically over the term of the issue and charged in successive annual income accounts of the company. The anticipation of this income charge by a debit to income of a previous year or to surplus has in principle no more justification than would a corresponding treatment of coupons due in future years.

4. The argument advanced in favor of immediately writing off discount was that it extinguished an asset that was only nominal in character and that it resulted in a conservative balance sheet. The weight attached to this argument has steadily diminished, and increasing weight has been given to the arguments that all such charges should be reflected under the proper head in the income account, and that conservatism in the balance sheet is of dubious value if attained at the expense of a lack of conservatism in the income account, which is far more significant.

TREATMENT OF UNAMORTIZED DISCOUNT, ISSUE COST, AND REDEMPTION PREMIUM ON BONDS REFUNDED

5. Discussion of the treatment of unamortized discount, issue cost, and redemption premium on bonds refunded (hereinafter referred to as unamortized discount) has revolved mainly about three methods of disposing of the unamortized balance:

- (a) A direct write-off to income or earned surplus,
- (b) Amortization over the remainder of the original life of the issue retired, or
- (c) Amortization over the life of the new issue.

Each of these methods has had support in court decisions, in determinations by regulatory agencies, and in accounting literature. The reasoning and conclusions reached by the committee in regard to them are given here.

Direct Write-Off

6. It is acceptable accounting to write off unamortized discount in full in the year of refunding. This treatment is based on the view that the unamortized bond discount represents in effect the cost of the privilege of terminating a borrowing contract which has become disadvantageous and hence comes under the accounting doctrine that a loss or expense should be recognized as such not later than the time when the series of transactions giving rise to it is completed.

7. The decision as to whether a direct write-off of unamortized bond discount is to be made by a charge to income or to earned surplus should be governed by the criteria set forth in chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13. Where a write-off is made to earned surplus it should be limited to the excess of the unamortized discount over the reduction of current taxes to which the refunding gives rise.¹

Amortization Over Remainder of Original Life of Retired Issue

8. The second alternative, distributing the charge over the remainder of the original life of the bonds refunded, has strong support in accounting theory. Its chief merit lies in the fact that it results in reflection of the refinancing expense as a direct charge under the appropriate head in a series of income accounts related to the term of the original borrowing contract.

9. This method is based on the accounting doctrine that when a cost is incurred the

benefits of which may reasonably be expected to be realized over a period in the future, it should be charged against income over such period. In behalf of this method, it is argued that the unamortized bond discount represents the cost of making a more advantageous arrangement for the unexpired term of the old agreement. In other words, such discount is regarded as the cost of an option included in the borrowing contract to enable a corporation to anticipate the maturity of its obligations if it finds it possible to refund them at a lower cost, either as the result of a favorable change in interest rates or as the result of its own improved credit. Continuing this line of reasoning, it is argued that the cost of money over the entire period of the original issue is affected by the terms of the original contract, and that if the cost of anticipating maturity is incurred, it is only because it is advantageous to do so; if the saving over the unexpired term of the old bonds will exceed the amount of unamortized discount to be disposed of, such discount should properly be spread over that unexpired term as a proper element of the cost of borrowed money.

10. This method should be regarded as preferable. It conforms more closely than any other method to current accounting opinion.

11. Where this method is adopted a portion of the unamortized discount equal to the reduction in current income tax resulting from the refunding should be deducted in the income statement and the remainder should be apportioned over the future period.²

Amortization Over Life of New Issue

12. The third alternative, amortization over the life of the new issue, runs counter to generally accepted accounting principles. It cannot be justified on the ground that cost may be spread over the period during which the benefit therefrom may be presumed to accrue. Clearly discernible benefits from a refunding accrue only for the period during which the new issue is replacing the previously outstanding issue. To determine whether any benefit will accrue to an issuing corporation for the period during which the new issue is to be outstanding after the maturity date of the old issue would require an ability to foresee interest rates to be in effect during that period. Since such fore-

¹ See chapter 10(b), paragraph 10.

² See chapter 10(b), paragraph 12.

sight is plainly impossible, there is no ground for assuming a benefit will result during that period. Moreover, the method does not possess any marked practical advantages in comparison with the second alternative. On the contrary, it results in an understatement of the annual cost of money after refunding and during the remainder of the term of the old issue, and consequently might tend to encourage consummation of transactions which are not, when properly viewed, advantageous. Furthermore, not only is there a lack

of logical relationship between the amount of unamortized discount on the *old* issue and the term of the *new* issue, but also it is unconservative from both the balance-sheet and the income standpoints to carry forward part of the unamortized discount over the longer period. The committee considers the argument that the expense of retiring the old issue is a part of the cost of the new transaction to be untenable. In view of the above considerations the committee's conclusion is that this method is not acceptable.

OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

13. If the unamortized discount is carried forward after refunding it is acceptable to accelerate the amortization over a shorter period than that mentioned in paragraph 9, as long as the charge is made against income and is not in any year so large as seriously to distort the income figure for that year. Such acceleration may be regarded as a middle course between two alternatives (immediate writing off and spreading over the life of the old issue), each of which is acceptable, and, therefore, as being itself acceptable.

14. If the debt is to be paid off through a new issue with a term less than the remaining life of the old issue the amortization should be completed over the shorter period.

15. The method employed should be clearly disclosed, and if the unamortized discount is

carried forward the amount of the annual charge should, if significant in amount, be shown separately from other charges for amortization of bond discount and expense.

16. The committee does not regard the charging of unamortized bond discount to capital surplus as an acceptable accounting treatment.

17. If the debt is discharged—otherwise than by refunding—before the original maturity date of the issue, any balance of discount and other issue cost then remaining on the books, and any redemption premium, should be written off at the date of such retirement by a charge against income, unless the amount is relatively so large as to fall within the provisions of chapter 8, paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

Four members of the committee, Messrs. Peoples, Queenan, Wernitz, and Williams, assented with qualification, and one member, Mr. Mason, dissented to adoption of chapter 15.

Messrs. Peoples, Queenan, Wernitz, and Williams do not agree with the conclusions expressed in paragraph 12. They believe there are circumstances in which the unamortized discount and redemption premium applicable to an issue being refunded can properly be considered as a cost of the opportunity of issuing new bonds under more favorable terms. They believe there is support to be found in accounting theory and practice for this view. They further believe that it is inappropriate to disapprove this

particular treatment and at the same time to approve the wide variety of treatments permitted by paragraphs 6 through 11, and paragraph 13.

Mr. Mason dissents since he believes that, with the exception of a public utility where an equitable result under regulatory procedures may call for the second alternative, the items under discussion should be a direct write-off to income or earned surplus, where lower interest rates have led to the refunding operation. If the refunding takes place in order to extend present interest rates in anticipation of higher rates in the future, the probable benefits would, in his opinion, justify spreading the costs over the life of the new issue.

APPENDIX A List of Accounting Research Bulletins With Cross-References

The following is a chronological list of Accounting Research Bulletins 1 through 42, which are now superseded. It indicates

the chapter of the restatement containing each former bulletin, or portion thereof, as revised.

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Restatement Chapter Number</i>
			Introduction and Chap. 1
1	Sept., 1939	General Introduction and Rules Formerly Adopted..	
2	Sept., 1939	Unamortized Discount and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded	15
3	Sept., 1939	Quasi-Reorganization or Corporate Readjustment—Amplification of Institute Rule No. 2 of 1934.....	7(a)
4	Dec., 1939	Foreign Operations and Foreign Exchange.....	12
5	April, 1940	Depreciation on Appreciation.....	9(b)
6	April, 1940	Comparative Statements	2(a)
7	Nov., 1940	Reports of Committee on Terminology.....	*
8	Feb., 1941	Combined Statement of Income and Earned Surplus...	2(b)
9	May, 1941	Report of Committee on Terminology.....	*
10	June, 1941	Real and Personal Property Taxes.....	10(a)
11	Sept., 1941	Corporate Accounting for Ordinary Stock Dividends...	7(b)
12	Sept., 1941	Report of Committee on Terminology.....	*
13	Jan., 1942	Accounting for Special Reserves Arising Out of the War	**
14	Jan., 1942	Accounting for United States Treasury Tax Notes..	3(b)
15	Sept., 1942	The Renegotiation of War Contracts.....	11(b)
16	Oct., 1942	Report of Committee on Terminology.....	*
17	Dec., 1942	Post-War Refund of Excess-Profits Tax.....	**
18	Dec., 1942	Unamortized Discount and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded (Supplement).....	15
19	Dec., 1942	Accounting Under Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee Contracts..	11(a)
20	Nov., 1943	Report of Committee on Terminology.....	*
21	Dec., 1943	Renegotiation of War Contracts (Supplement)....	11(b)
22	May, 1944	Report of Committee on Terminology.....	*
23	Dec., 1944	Accounting for Income Taxes.....	10(b)
24	Dec., 1944	Accounting for Intangible Assets.....	5
25	April, 1945	Accounting for Terminated War Contracts.....	11(c)
26	Oct., 1946	Accounting for the Use of Special War Reserves....	**
27	Nov., 1946	Emergency Facilities	9(c)
28	July, 1947	Accounting Treatment of General Purpose Contingency Reserves	6
29	July, 1947	Inventory Pricing	4
30	Aug., 1947	Current Assets and Current Liabilities—Working Capital	3(a)
31	Oct., 1947	Inventory Reserves	6
32	Dec., 1947	Income and Earned Surplus.....	8
33	Dec., 1947	Depreciation and High Costs.....	9(a)
34	Oct., 1948	Recommendation of Committee on Terminology—Use of Term “Reserve”	*
35	Oct., 1948	Presentation of Income and Earned Surplus.....	8
36	Nov., 1948	Pension Plans—Accounting for Annuity Costs Based on Past Services.....	13(a)

* Terminology bulletins published separately.

** Withdrawn. See explanation ff. in Appendix C.

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Restatement Chapter Number</i>
37	Nov., 1948	Accounting for Compensation in the Form of Stock Options	13(b)
38	Oct., 1949	Disclosure of Long-Term Leases in Financial Statements of Lessees	14
39	Oct., 1949	Recommendation of Subcommittee on Terminology—Discontinuance of the Use of the Term "Surplus" ..	*
40	Sept., 1950	Business Combinations	7(c)
41	July, 1951	Presentation of Income and Earned Surplus (Supplement to Bulletin No. 35)	8
13 (Addendum)	July, 1951	Limitation of Scope of Special War Reserves	**
26 (Addendum)	July, 1951	Limitation of Scope of Special War Reserves	**
42	Nov., 1952	Emergency Facilities—Depreciation, Amortization, and Income Taxes	9(c)
11 (Revised)	Nov., 1952	Accounting for Stock Dividends and Stock Split-Ups ..	7(b)
37 (Revised)	Jan., 1953	Accounting for Compensation Involved in Stock Option and Stock Purchase Plans	13(b)

* Terminology bulletins published separately.

** Withdrawn. See explanation ff. in Appendix C.

APPENDIX B Changes of Substance Made in the Course of Restating and Revising the Bulletins

1. Restatement and revision of the Accounting Research Bulletins involved numerous changes in wording, amounting in some cases to complete rewriting, but most of these changes were made in the interest of clarification, condensation, or elimination of material no longer pertinent. Changes in substance where necessary were made

and are set forth below by chapters. Particular attention is called to the comments respecting the application of government securities against liabilities for federal taxes on income, write-offs of intangibles, and the treatment of refunds of income taxes based on the carry-back of losses and unused excess-profits credits.

APPLICABILITY OF BULLETINS

2. In Bulletin No. 1 no general comment was made as to the applicability of the committee's pronouncements other than to state that they should not be regarded as applicable to investment trusts. That statement has been omitted. A new statement of applicability appears in the introduction, which indicates that, in general, the committee's opinions should be regarded as applicable primarily to business enterprises organized for profit. The statement reads as follows:

3. "The principal objective of the committee has been to narrow areas of difference and inconsistency in accounting practices, and to further the development and recognition of generally accepted accounting principles, through the issuance of

opinions and recommendations that would serve as criteria for determining the suitability of accounting practices reflected in financial statements and representations of commercial and industrial companies. In this endeavor, the committee has considered the interpretation and application of such principles as appeared to it to be pertinent to particular accounting problems. The committee has not directed its attention to accounting problems or procedures of religious, charitable, scientific, educational, and similar non-profit institutions, municipalities, professional firms, and the like. Accordingly, except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit."

CURRENT ASSETS AND CURRENT LIABILITIES**CHAPTER 3, SECTION (a)**

4. A comment has been included under current assets to the effect that the description of the basis of pricing inventories

should include an indication of the method of determining the cost—e.g., *average cost, first-in first-out, last-in first-out, etc.*

APPLICATION OF UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT SECURITIES AGAINST LIABILITIES FOR FEDERAL TAXES ON INCOME**CHAPTER 3, SECTION (b)**

5. In Bulletin No. 14 the committee expressed approval of the offsetting of United States Treasury Tax Notes, Tax Series A-1943 and B-1943, against liabilities for federal taxes on income in the balance sheet, provided that at the date of the balance sheet or of the independent auditor's report there was no evidence of an intent not to surrender the notes in payment of the taxes. Government securities having restrictive terms similar to those contained in the 1943 tax series are no longer issued but certain other types of government securities have

since been issued which, by their terms, may be surrendered in payment of liabilities for federal taxes on income. In section (b) of chapter 3 the committee sanctions the offsetting of these securities against liabilities for federal taxes on income. It also expresses the opinion that extension of the practice to include the offset of other types of United States government securities, although a deviation from the general rule against offsets, is not so significant a deviation as to call for an exception in an accountant's report on the financial statements.

INTANGIBLE ASSETS**CHAPTER 5**

6. Bulletin No. 24, which was published in 1944, stated the committee's belief that the long accepted practice of eliminating type (b) intangibles (i.e., intangibles with no limited term of existence and as to which there is, at the time of acquisition, no indication of limited life) against any existing surplus, capital or earned, even though the value of the asset was unimpaired, should be discouraged, especially if proposed to be effected by charges to capital surplus.

7. In chapter 5 the committee expresses the opinion that lump-sum write-offs of type (b) intangibles should in no case be charged against capital surplus, should not be made against earned surplus immediately after acquisition, and, if not amortized systematically, should be carried at cost until an event has taken place which indicates a loss or a limitation on the useful life of the intangibles.

CONTINGENCY RESERVES**CHAPTER 6**

8. In chapter 6 the opinion is expressed that the preferable balance-sheet treatment of general purpose contingency reserves (a

subject not specifically covered in Bulletins Nos. 28 and 31) is to show them under stockholders' equity.

QUASI-REORGANIZATION OR CORPORATE READJUSTMENT**CHAPTER 7, SECTION (a)**

9. Bulletin No. 3 stated that a readjustment of accounts through quasi-reorganization calls for the opening of a new earned surplus account dating from the effective date of the readjustment, but made no reference to the length of time such dating

should continue. Section (a) of chapter 7 states that "... this dating should be disclosed in financial statements until such time as the effective date is no longer deemed to possess any special significance."

BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**CHAPTER 7, SECTION (c)**

10. The opinions expressed in Bulletin No. 40 have been amplified to indicate that any adjustment of assets or of surplus which would be in conformity with gen-

erally accepted accounting principles in the absence of a combination would be equally acceptable if effected in connection with a pooling of interests.

INCOME TAXES

CHAPTER 10, SECTION (b)

11. In connection with the presentation of allocated income taxes in the income statement, the committee recognizes the possibility of disclosure in a footnote or in the body of the income statement in special cases when the recommended presentation is not considered to be practicable. The revision also contains a statement that in some cases the use of a current over-all effective tax rate or, as in the case of deferred income, an estimated future tax rate may be appropriate in computing the tax effect attributable to a particular transaction.

12. In the old bulletin the committee recommended that where tax reductions result from the carry-forward of losses or unused excess-profits credits, the income statement indicate the results of operations without inclusion of such reduction, which reduction should be shown as a final item before the amount of net income for the period, except that where there is substantial reason to believe that misleading inferences might be drawn from such inclusion the tax reduction might be credited to surplus. Section (b) of chapter 10 adds an alternative treatment whereby the amount of taxes

estimated to be actually payable for the year may be shown in the income statement, with the amount of the tax reduction attributable to the amounts carried forward indicated either in a footnote or parenthetically in the body of the income statement.

13. The opinion was expressed in the previous bulletin that claims for refunds of income taxes based on the carry-back of losses or unused excess-profits credits should be credited to income, except that under certain circumstances they might be credited to surplus. Section (b) of chapter 10 expresses the opinion that they should be carried to income. This may be done either by indicating in the income statement for the year the results of operations before application of the claim for refund, which should then be shown as a final item before the amount of net income, or by charging income with the amount of taxes estimated to be actually payable for the year and showing the amount of the reduction attributable to the carry-back in a footnote or parenthetically in the body of the income statement.

RENEGOTIATION OF GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS

CHAPTER 11, SECTION (b)

14. The committee has modified the recommendations made in Bulletin No. 21 respecting the methods to be used in disclosing the renegotiation status and the provision or lack of provision for refund in relation to prior year settlements. It believes that individual judgment should

determine which cases require disclosure of the basis of determining the amount provided. The committee has also indicated that the comments in section (b) of chapter 11 are applicable to price redetermination estimated to result in retroactive price reduction.

FOREIGN OPERATIONS AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE

CHAPTER 12

15. In Bulletin No. 4 it was stated that a safe course to follow is to take earnings from foreign operations into the accounts of United States companies only to the extent that funds have been received in the United States. In chapter 12 these words are added: "or unrestricted funds are available for transmission thereto."

16. An exception is noted in chapter 12 to the general rule of translating long-term liabilities and capital stock stated in foreign currency at the rate of exchange prevailing when they were originally incurred or issued. The exception relates to long-term debt incurred or stock issued in connection with the acquisition of fixed assets, perma-

nent investments, or long-term receivables a short time before a substantial and presumably permanent change in the exchange rate. The opinion is expressed that in such instances it may be appropriate to state the long-term debt or the capital stock at the new rate and proper to deal with the exchange differences as an adjustment of the cost of the assets acquired.

17. The revision also takes into consideration the possibility that in some situations more realistic results will be obtained by translating income for the entire fiscal year at the new rates in effect after such major fluctuation. Where dividends have been paid prior to a major change in the ex-

change rate, out of earnings of the current fiscal year, that portion of the income for the year should be considered as having been earned at the rate at which such dividend was paid irrespective of the rates used in translating the remainder of the earnings.

18. Consideration is also given to the matter of devaluation losses arising from world-wide readjustment, as to which the committee comments that where they are so material that their inclusion in the income statement would impair the significance of

net income to an extent that misleading inferences might be drawn therefrom, consideration may appropriately be given to charging them to surplus.

19. The three preceding paragraphs relate to changes which, in part, give recognition to recommendations made in a statement entitled *Accounting Problems Arising from Devaluation of Foreign Currencies* issued as a research memorandum in November, 1949.

UNAMORTIZED DISCOUNT, ISSUE COST, AND REDEMPTION PREMIUM ON BONDS REFUNDED

CHAPTER 15

20. When Bulletin No. 2 was issued the committee considered three methods of writing off unamortized discount on refunded bonds (including issue cost and redemption premium):

- (a) Write-off by a direct charge to earned surplus in the year of refunding;
- (b) Amortization over the remainder of the original life of the issue retired; or
- (c) Amortization over the life of the new issue.

21. Methods (a) and (b) were at that time approved as acceptable practice, with a comment that, with a continuance of the shift in emphasis from the balance sheet to the income account, method (b) might well become the preferred procedure. Method (c) was stated to be unacceptable except where such treatment was authorized or prescribed by a regulatory body to whose jurisdiction the accounting corporation was subject, or had been adopted by the company prior to the publication of Bulletin No. 2.

22. In chapter 15 a write-off in full in the year of refunding is stated to be acceptable. The committee believes, however, that the charge should be to income rather than earned surplus, unless the net income figure would thereby be so distorted as to invite misleading inferences. It further believes that any write-off made to earned surplus should be limited to the excess of the unamortized discount over the reduction of current taxes to which the refunding gives rise.

23. Distribution of the charge, by systematic charges against income, over the remainder of the original life of the bonds refunded (method (b)) is stated in chapter 15 to be the preferred method, conforming more closely than any other to current accounting opinion. When this method is adopted an amount equal to the reduction in current income tax resulting from the refunding should be deducted in the income statement, and the remainder should be apportioned over the future period.

24. Amortization over the life of the new issue, unless it is less than the remaining life of the old issue, is stated to be an unacceptable practice.

APPENDIX C

Bulletins Not Included in the Restatement and Revision

1. Accounting research bulletins No. 13, *Accounting for Special Reserves Arising Out of the War*, and No. 26, *Accounting for the Use of Special War Reserves*, are not included in the restatement. Those bulletins were formally withdrawn by the committee in July, 1951, by the issuance of addenda. At that time the committee commented that, "in the light of subsequent developments of accounting procedures, these bulletins should no longer be relied upon as a

basis for the establishment and use of reserves."

2. Bulletin No. 17, *Post-War Refund of Excess-Profits Tax*, is withdrawn because it no longer has applicability under present tax laws.

3. Bulletins Nos. 7, 9, 12, 16, 20, 22, 34, and 39, which were issued as recommendations of the committee on terminology, are being published separately.

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44

DECLINING-BALANCE DEPRECIATION

OCTOBER, 1954

1. The declining-balance method of estimating periodic depreciation has a long history of use in England and in other countries including, to a limited extent, the United States. Interest in this method has been increased by its specific recognition for income-tax purposes in the Internal Revenue Code of 1954.

2. The declining-balance method is one of those which meets the requirements of being "systematic and rational." In those cases where the expected productivity or revenue-earning power of the asset is relatively greater during the earlier years of its life, or where maintenance charges tend to increase during the later years, the declining-balance method may well provide the most satisfactory allocation of cost. The conclusions of this bulletin also apply to other methods, including the "sum-of-the-years-digits" method, which produce substantially similar results.

The statement entitled "Declining-balance Depreciation" was adopted by the assenting votes of nineteen members of the committee, of whom one, Mr. Stans, assented with qualification. Mr. Burns dissented.

Mr. Stans does not approve the conclusions in the last sentence of paragraph 4. He believes that the reductions in taxes in the earlier years of use in the situations described clearly represent deferments of payment until later years and that the number of years involved has no bearing on the problem. He believes that well-established accounting principles require that deferred income taxes be recognized in every case

3. When a change to the declining-balance method is made for general accounting purposes, and depreciation is a significant factor in the determination of net income, the change in method, including the effect thereof, should be disclosed in the year in which the change is made.

4. There may be situations in which the declining-balance method is adopted for tax purposes but other appropriate methods are followed for financial accounting purposes. In such cases it may be that accounting recognition should be given to deferred income taxes. However, the committee is of the opinion that, in the ordinary situation, deferred income taxes need not be recognized in the accounts unless it is reasonably certain that the reduction in taxes during the earlier years of use of the declining-balance method for tax purposes is merely a deferment of income taxes until a relatively few years later, and then only if the amounts are clearly material.

in which the amounts involved are significant.

Mr. Burns dissents because he believes that the reductions in taxes in the earlier years of use in all cases would clearly represent deferments of payment until later years and that the number of years involved has no bearing on the problem. He believes that compliance with well-established accounting principles requires that deferred income taxes be recognized in every case in which a significant amount is involved in order to avoid a misstatement of reported net income, and he believes that the bulletin should contain a definite statement to that effect.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee and the research department. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Insti-

tute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.

2. Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting

¹ Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1, paragraph 56.

for transactions arising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the committee does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1953-1954)

JOHN A. LINDQUIST,
Chairman

GARRETT T. BURNS

ROBERT CALDWELL, JR.

ALMAND R. COLEMAN

L. T. FLATLEY

ROY F. GODFREY

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER

THOMAS G. HIGGINS

WILLIAM L. KEATING

COLIN MACLENNAN

HOWARD W. MALOY

JOHN K. MCCLARE

JOHN PEOPLES

DONALD P. PERRY

JOHN W. QUEENAN

MAURICE H. STANS

J. HAROLD STEWART

WILLIAM W. WERTZ

EDWARD B. WILCOX

ROBERT W. WILLIAMS

CARMAN G. BLOUGH

Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)

DECLINING-BALANCE DEPRECIATION

(Supersedes Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 issued in October 1954)

JULY, 1958

1. The declining-balance method of estimating periodic depreciation has a long history of use in England and in other countries including, to a limited extent, the United States. Interest in this method has been increased by its specific recognition for income-tax purposes in the Internal Revenue Code of 1954.

2. The declining-balance method is one of those which meets the requirements of being "systematic and rational." In those cases where the expected productivity or revenue-earning power of the asset is relatively greater during the earlier years of its life, or where maintenance charges tend to increase during the later years, the declining-balance method may well provide the most satisfactory allocation of cost. The conclusions of this bulletin also apply to other methods, including the "sum-of-the-years-digits" method, which produce substantially similar results.

3. When a change to the declining-balance method is made for general accounting purposes, and depreciation is a significant factor in the determination of net income, the change in method, including the effect thereof, should be disclosed in the year in which the change is made.

4. There may be situations in which the declining-balance method is adopted for income-tax purposes but other appropriate methods are used for financial accounting purposes. In such cases, accounting recognition should be given to deferred income taxes if the amounts thereof are material, except in those rare cases, such as are mentioned in paragraph 8, where there are special circumstances which may make such

procedure inappropriate. The foregoing provision as to accounting recognition of deferred income taxes applies to a single asset, or to a group of assets which are expected to be retired from service at about the same time; in this case an excess of depreciation taken for income-tax purposes during the earlier years would be followed by the opposite condition in later years, and there would be a tax deferment for a definite period. It applies also to a group of assets consisting of numerous units which may be of differing lengths of life and which are expected to be continually replaced; in this case an excess of depreciation taken for income-tax purposes during the earlier years would be followed in later years by substantial equality between the annual depreciation for income-tax purposes and that for accounting purposes, and a tax deferment would be built up during the earlier years which would tend to remain relatively constant thereafter. It applies further to a gradually expanding plant; in this case an excess of depreciation taken for income-tax purposes may exist each year during the period of expansion in which event there would be a tax deferment which might increase as long as the period of expansion continued.

5. Where it may reasonably be presumed that the accumulative difference between taxable income and financial income will continue for a long or indefinite period, it is alternatively appropriate, instead of crediting a deferred tax account, to recognize the related tax effect as additional amortization or depreciation applicable to such assets in recognition of the loss of future deductibility for income-tax purposes.

DISCUSSION

6. Following the passage of the Internal Revenue Act of 1954 in August of that year, permitting the use of declining-balance and similar accelerated depreciation methods for federal income-tax purposes, the committee anticipated that many companies would be considering whether such methods should be adopted for general accounting purposes. In October of that year, Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 was

issued in which the committee stated that such accelerated methods met the requirement of being "systematic and rational." The committee also stated that when such methods were adopted for general accounting purposes, appropriate disclosure of the change should be made whenever depreciation was a significant factor in the determination of net income.

¹ *Accounting Terminology Bulletin* No. 1, paragraph 56.

7. Since the issuance of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44, the committee has been observing and studying cases involving the application of the bulletin. Studies of published reports and other source material have indicated that, where material amounts are involved, recognition of deferred income taxes in the general accounts is needed to obtain an equitable matching of costs and revenues and to avoid income distortion, even in those cases in which the payment of taxes is deferred for a relatively long period. This conclusion is borne out by the committee's studies which indicate that where accelerated depreciation methods are used for income-tax purposes only, most companies do give recognition to the resultant deferment of income taxes or, alternatively, recognize the loss of future deductibility for income-tax purposes of the cost of fixed assets by an appropriate credit to an accumulated amortization or depreciation account applicable to such assets.

8. Many regulatory authorities permit recognition of deferred income taxes for accounting and/or rate-making purposes, whereas some do not. The committee believes that they should permit the recognition of deferred income taxes for both purposes. However, where charges for deferred income taxes are not allowed for rate-making purposes, accounting recognition need not be given to the deferment of taxes if it may reasonably be expected that

increased future income taxes, resulting from the earlier deduction of declining-balance depreciation for income-tax purposes only, will be allowed in future rate determinations.

9. In those rare situations in which accounting for deferred income taxes is not appropriate, full disclosure should be made of the amount of deferred income taxes arising out of the difference between the financial statements and the tax returns when the declining-balance method is adopted for income-tax purposes but other appropriate methods are used for financial accounting purposes.

10. The committee believes that, in applying the provisions of this bulletin to cases where there was no accounting recognition of deferred income taxes for the years since 1953, the entries made for periods subsequent to the issuance of this bulletin should be based upon all assets acquired after 1953 as to which the declining-balance method has been elected for tax purposes. As is indicated in the "Notes" to each Accounting Research Bulletin, opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. If a retroactive adjustment is made for prior periods, the adjustment may be made in a lump sum, or the deficiency may be systematically accumulated over a reasonable future period of time.

The statement entitled "Declining-balance Depreciation" (July 1958) was adopted unanimously by the twenty-one members of the committee, of whom five, Messrs. Burns, Graham, Halvorson, Jennings, and Powell, assented with qualification.

Mr. Burns objects to the exceptions mentioned in paragraph 4 and discussed in paragraphs 8 and 9. He believes that accounting principles apply equally to all companies operated for profit and that the exceptions referred to are wholly inconsistent with the basic principles stated in paragraph 4; further, that the last sentence of paragraph 8 is based upon an untenable concept, namely, that accounting resulting from the application of an accounting rule prescribed by a regulatory commission may properly be approved by public accountants notwithstanding the fact that the rule is clearly contrary to generally accepted accounting principles.

Mr. Graham objects to the exceptions mentioned in the second sentence of para-

graph 4 and discussed in the last sentence of paragraph 8 and in paragraph 9. He believes that accepted accounting principles should be applied uniformly to all corporations, including regulated companies. He does not believe that rate-making rules which are in conflict with these accepted principles constitute a sound basis for sanctioning a departure from these principles in financial reporting. Furthermore, he disagrees with the validity of the assumption which, by implication, forms the basis for this exception; he does not believe that public utility rates will always be adjusted automatically to compensate fully, or even substantially, for increases in future income taxes; he believes that this assumption is not in accord with the known realities of rate regulation and is not, therefore, a proper basis for the anticipation of future revenues.

Mr. Halvorson dissents from the recommendations of paragraph 4 because he believes its requirements for accounting recognition of deferred income taxes should

be limited to a requirement for compliance with the recommendations of chapter 10(b) of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43; he believes that paragraph 4 is effectively a revision of chapter 10(b) and that it is improper thus to make a substantive change in the committee's existing recommendations for tax allocation in the guise of a revision of a bulletin on depreciation.

Messrs. Jennings and Powell dissent from the conclusion (expressed in paragraph 4 and implied in the related discussion) that where the declining-balance method is adopted for income-tax purposes but other appropriate methods are used for financial

accounting purposes, there should be accounting recognition of deferred income taxes, except for certain rare cases. They believe this calls for more extensive allocation of income taxes among periods of time than is necessary or desirable, especially where the situation is such that the so-called tax deferment is in effect a permanent tax reduction. Further, they object to the use of a bulletin on depreciation incidentally as a vehicle for making an important change in the committee's views, as set forth in previous bulletins, on accounting for income taxes.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee, the technical services department, and the director of research. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.*

2. *Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions rising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the committee does not*

wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. *It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.*

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1957-58)

WILLIAM W. WERTZ,
Chairman

NORTON M. BEDFORD

GARRETT T. BURNS

KEITH W. DUNN

CARL M. ESENOFF

WILLARD J. GRAHAM

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

CHARLES A. HOYLER

WILLIAM P. HUTCHISON

DONALD R. JENNINGS

RALPH E. KENT

GEORGE W. LAFFERTY

JOHN F. MACHA

JOHN K. MCCLARE

HERBERT E. MILLER

JOHN PEOPLES

WELDON POWELL

SAMUEL L. READY

WALTER R. STAUB

WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN

EDWARD B. WILCOX

CARMAN G. BLOUGH,

Director of Research



American Institute of Certified Public Accountants

270 MADISON AVENUE, NEW YORK 16, N. Y.

April 15, 1959

TO THE MEMBERS OF THE AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

GENTLEMEN:

Question has been raised with respect to the intent of the committee on accounting procedure in using the phrase "a deferred tax account" in Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (revised), *Declining-balance Depreciation*, to indicate the account to be credited for the amount of the deferred income tax (see paragraphs 4 and 5).

The committee used the phrase in its ordinary connotation of an account to be shown in the balance sheet as a liability or a deferred credit. A provision in recognition of the deferral of income taxes, being required for the proper determination of net income, should not at the same time result in a credit to earned surplus or to any other account included in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.

Three of the twenty-one members of the committee, Messrs. Jennings, Powell and Staub, dissented to the issuance at this time of any letter interpreting Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (revised).

COMMITTEE ON ACCOUNTING PROCEDURE

By WILLIAM W. WERNTZ, Chairman

COMMITTEE ON ACCOUNTING PROCEDURE (1958-59)

WILLIAM W. WERNTZ,
Chairman
NORTON M. BEDFORD
GARRETT T. BURNS
KEITH W. DUNN
CARL M. ESENOFF
CLIFFORD E. GRAESE
WILLARD J. GRAHAM

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON
CHARLES A. HOYLER
DONALD R. JENNINGS
RALPH E. KENT
GEORGE LAFFERTY
JOHN F. MACHA
JOHN K. McCLARE
HERBERT E. MILLER

WELDON POWELL
S. L. READY
WALTER R. STAUB
WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN
EDWARD B. WILCOX
DELMAR G. WILSEY

CARMAN G. BLOUGH,
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 45

LONG-TERM CONSTRUCTION-TYPE CONTRACTS

OCTOBER, 1955

1. This bulletin is directed to the accounting problems in relation to construction-type contracts in the case of commercial organizations engaged wholly or partly in the contracting business. It does not deal with cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts, which are discussed in Chapter 11, Section A, of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43**, other types of cost-plus-fee contracts, or contracts such as those for products or services customarily billed as shipped or rendered. In general the type of contract here under consideration is for construction of a specific project. While such contracts are generally carried on at the job site, the bulletin would also be applicable in appropriate cases to the

manufacturing or building of special items on a contract basis in a contractor's own plant. The problems in accounting for construction-type contracts arise particularly in connection with long-term contracts as compared with those requiring relatively short periods for completion.

2. Considerations other than those acceptable as a basis for the recognition of income frequently enter into the determination of the timing and amounts of interim billings on construction-type contracts. For this reason, income to be recognized on such contracts at the various stages of performance ordinarily should not be measured by interim billings.

GENERALLY ACCEPTED METHODS

3. Two accounting methods commonly followed by contractors are the percentage-of-completion method and the completed-contract method.

Percentage-of-Completion Method

4. The percentage-of-completion method recognizes income as work on a contract progresses. The committee recommends that the recognized income be that percentage of estimated total income, either:

- (a) that incurred costs to date bear to estimated total costs after giving effect to estimates of costs to complete based upon most recent information, or
- (b) that may be indicated by such other measure of progress toward completion as may be appropriate having due regard to work performed.

Costs as here used might exclude, especially during the early stages of a contract, all or a portion of the cost of such items as materials and subcontracts if it appears that such an exclusion would result in a more meaningful periodic allocation of income.

5. Under this method current assets may include costs and recognized income not yet billed, with respect to certain contracts; and liabilities, in most cases current liabilities, may include billings in excess of costs and recognized income with respect to other contracts.

6. When the current estimate of total contract costs indicates a loss, in most circumstances provision should be made for the loss on the entire contract. If there is a close relationship between profitable and unprofitable contracts, such as in the case of contracts which are parts of the same project, the group may be treated as a unit in determining the necessity for a provision for loss.

7. The principal advantages of the percentage-of-completion method are periodic recognition of income currently rather than irregularly as contracts are completed, and the reflection of the status of the uncompleted contracts provided through the current estimates of costs to complete or of progress toward completion.

8. The principal disadvantage of the percentage-of-completion method is that it is necessarily dependent upon estimates of ultimate costs and consequently of currently accruing income, which are subject to the uncertainties frequently inherent in long-term contracts.

Completed-Contract Method

9. The completed-contract method recognizes income only when the contract is completed, or substantially so. Accordingly, costs of contracts in process and current billings are accumulated but there are no interim charges or credits to income other than provisions for losses. A contract may

* *Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins*, American Institute of Accountants, 1953.

be regarded as substantially completed if remaining costs are not significant in amount.

10. When the completed-contract method is used, it may be appropriate to allocate general and administrative expenses to contract costs rather than to periodic income. This may result in a better matching of costs and revenues than would result from treating such expenses as period costs, particularly in years when no contracts were completed. It is not so important, however, when the contractor is engaged in numerous projects and in such circumstances it may be preferable to charge those expenses as incurred to periodic income. In any case there should be no excessive deferring of overhead costs, such as might occur if total overhead were assigned to abnormally few or abnormally small contracts in process.

11. Although the completed-contract method does not permit the recording of any income prior to completion, provision should be made for expected losses in accordance with the well established practice of making provision for foreseeable losses. If there is a close relationship between profitable and unprofitable contracts, such as in the case of contracts which are parts of the same project, the group may be treated as a unit in determining the necessity for a provision for losses.

12. When the completed-contract method is used, an excess of accumulated costs over related billings should be shown in the balance sheet as a current asset, and an excess of accumulated billings over related costs should be shown among the liabilities, in most cases as a current liability. If costs exceed billings on some contracts, and bill-

ings exceed costs on others, the contracts should ordinarily be segregated so that the figures on the asset side include only those contracts on which costs exceed billings, and those on the liability side include only those on which billings exceed costs. It is suggested that the asset item be described as "costs of uncompleted contracts in excess of related billings" rather than as "inventory" or "work in process," and that the item on the liability side be described as "billings on uncompleted contracts in excess of related costs."

13. The principal advantage of the completed-contract method is that it is based on results as finally determined, rather than on estimates for unperformed work which may involve unforeseen costs and possible losses.

14. The principal disadvantage of the completed-contract method is that it does not reflect current performance when the period of any contract extends into more than one accounting period and under such circumstances it may result in irregular recognition of income.

Selection of Method

15. The committee believes that in general when estimates of costs to complete and extent of progress toward completion of long-term contracts are reasonably dependable, the percentage-of-completion method is preferable. When lack of dependable estimates or inherent hazards cause forecasts to be doubtful, the completed-contract method is preferable. Disclosure of the method followed should be made.

COMMITMENTS

16. In special cases disclosures of extraordinary commitments may be required, but generally commitments to complete contracts in process are in the ordinary course of a contractor's business and are not required to be disclosed in a statement of

financial position. They partake of the nature of a contractor's business, and generally do not represent a prospective drain on his cash resources since they will be financed by current billings.

The statement entitled "Long-term Construction-type Contracts" was adopted unanimously by the twenty-one members of the committee, of whom two, Mr. Coleman and Mr. Dixon, assented with qualification.

Mr. Coleman and Mr. Dixon do not approve the statements in paragraphs 6 and 11 as to provisions for expected losses on contracts. They believe that such provisions

should be made in the form of footnote disclosure or as a reservation of retained earnings, rather than by a charge against revenues of the current period.

Mr. Coleman also questions the usefulness of the refinement of segregating the offset costs and billings by character of excess as set forth in the second sentence of paragraph 12. He suggests that a more useful alternative would be to show in any event

total costs and total billings on all uncompleted contracts (a) with the excess shown either as a current asset or a current liability,

and (b) with a supporting schedule indicating individual contract costs, billings, and explanatory comment.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee and the research department. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.*

2. *Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of*

the opinions. However, the committee does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. *It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.*

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1954-1955)

JOHN A. LINDQUIST,
Chairman
GORDON S. BATTELLE
GARRETT T. BURNS
ROBERT CALDWELL, JR.
ALMAND R. COLEMAN
ROBERT L. DIXON
L. T. FLATLEY

THOMAS D. FLYNN
CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
HARRY D. HOPSON
DONALD R. JENNINGS
WILLIAM L. KEATING
COLIN MACLENNAN
H. W. MALOY
JOHN K. MCCLARE

JOHN PEOPLES
WELDON POWELL
WALTER R. STAUB
ROSS T. WARNER
WILLIAM W. WERNTZ
EDWARD B. WILCOX
CARMAN G. BLOUGH,
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 46

DISCONTINUANCE OF DATING EARNED SURPLUS

FEBRUARY, 1956

1. Paragraph 10 of Chapter 7(a), *Quasi-Reorganization or Corporate Readjustment*, of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, *Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins*, reads as follows:

After such a readjustment earned surplus previously accumulated cannot properly be carried forward under that title. A new earned surplus account should be established, dated to show that it runs from the effective date of the readjustment, and this dating should be disclosed

in financial statements until such time as the effective date is no longer deemed to possess any special significance.

2. The committee believes that the dating of earned surplus following a quasi-reorganization would rarely, if ever, be of significance after a period of ten years. It also believes that there may be exceptional circumstances in which the discontinuance of the dating of earned surplus could be justified at the conclusion of a period less than ten years.

The statement entitled "Discontinuance of Dating Earned Surplus" was adopted by the assenting votes of

twenty members of the committee. One member, Mr. Keating, did not vote.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee and the research department. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.*

2. *Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the committee*

does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. *It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.*

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1955-1956)

JOHN A. LINDQUIST,
Chairman
GORDON S. BATTELLE
GARRETT T. BURNS
ROBERT CALDWELL
ALMAND R. COLEMAN
ROBERT L. DIXON
L. T. FLATLEY
THOMAS D. FLYNN

CARL H. FORSBERG
LEVERNE W. GARCIA
DONALD R. JENNINGS
WILLIAM L. KEATING
HOMER L. LUTHER
JOHN K. MCCLARE
JOHN PEOPLES
WELDON POWELL

WALTER R. STAUB
ROSS T. WARNER
WILLIAM W. WERTZ
EDWARD B. WILCOX
JAMES B. WILLING
—
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 47

ACCOUNTING FOR COSTS OF PENSION PLANS

SEPTEMBER, 1956

1. Variations in the provisions of pension plans in the United States, in their financial arrangements, and in the circumstances attendant upon their adoption, have resulted in substantial differences in accounting for pension costs. This bulletin indicates guides which, in the opinion of the committee, are acceptable for dealing with costs of pension plans in the accounts and reports of companies having such plans. It is not concerned with funding as such.

2. The term *pension plan* is here intended to mean a formal arrangement for employee retirement benefits, whether established unilaterally or through negotiation, by which commitments, specific or implied, have been made which can be used as the basis for estimating costs. It does not include profit-sharing plans or deferred-compensation contracts with individuals. It does not apply to informal arrangements by which voluntary payments are made to retired employees, usually in amounts fixed at or about the time of an employee's retirement and in the light of his then situation but subject to change or discontinuance at the employer's will; where such informal arrangements exist, the pay-as-you-go method of accounting for pension costs generally is appropriate, although the accrual method is equally appropriate in cases where costs can be estimated with reasonable accuracy.

3. When a pension plan is first adopted, it is customary to provide that pensions for covered employees will give recognition not only to services which are to be rendered by them in the future, but also to services which have been rendered by them prior to the adoption of the plan. The costs of the pensions to the employer, therefore, usually are based in part on past services and in part on current and future services of the employees. The committee considers that all of such costs are costs of doing business, incurred in contemplation of present and future benefits, as are other employment costs such as wages, salaries, and social security taxes. It, therefore, is of the opinion that past service benefit costs should be charged to operations during the current and future periods benefited, and should not be charged to earned surplus *at the inception of the plan*. The committee believes that, in the case of an *existing plan* under which inadequate charges or no charges for

past services have been made thus far and the company has decided to conform its accounting to the preferred procedure expressed in this bulletin, it may be appropriate to charge to earned surplus the amount that should have been accumulated by charges to income since inception of the plan.

4. In addition to the basic features of a pension plan relating to employee eligibility and the level of pension payments, other factors enter into the determination of the ultimate costs of pensions. Some of these are:

- (a) other benefits (such as social security) where amounts of pension payments are integrated therewith;
- (b) length of life of employees both before and after retirement;
- (c) employee turnover;
- (d) in some cases, alternatives as to age at which employees may retire;
- (e) future compensation levels; and
- (f) in a funded plan, future rates of earnings on the fund and the status of fund investments.

Because of these factors, the total cost of the pensions that will be paid ultimately to the present participants in a plan cannot be determined precisely in advance, but, by the use of actuarial techniques, reasonably accurate estimates can be made. There are other business costs for which it is necessary to make periodic provisions in the accounts based upon assumptions and estimates. The committee believes that the uncertainties relating to the determination of pension costs are not so pronounced as to preclude similar treatment.

5. In the view of many, the accrual of costs under a pension plan should not necessarily be dependent on the funding arrangements provided for in the plan or governed by a strict legal interpretation of the obligations under the plan. They feel that because of the widespread adoption of pension plans and their importance as part of compensation structures, a provision for cancellation or the existence of a terminal date for a plan should not be the controlling factor in accounting for pension costs, and that for accounting purposes it is reasonable to assume in most cases that a plan, though modified or renewed (because of terminal

dates) from time to time, will continue for an indefinite period. According to this view, costs based on current and future services should be systematically accrued during the expected period of active service of the covered employees, generally upon the basis of actuarial calculations. Such calculations may be made as to each employee, or as to categories of employees (by age, length of service, or rate of pay, for example), or they may be based upon an average of the expected service lives of all covered employees. These calculations, although made primarily for funding purposes, may be used also for accounting purposes. They should, of course, be revised at intervals. Also according to this view, costs based on past services should be charged off over some reasonable period, provided the allocation is made on a systematic and rational basis and does not cause distortion of the operating results in any one year. The length of the period benefited by costs based on past services is subject to considerable difference of opinion. Some think that the benefits accrue principally during the early years of a plan; others feel that the period primarily benefited approximates the remaining service life of the employees covered by a plan at the time of its adoption; still others believe that the benefits of such costs extend over an indefinite period, possibly the entire life of a plan and its successors, if any. In practice, costs based on past services have in many instances been charged off over a ten- to twelve-year period, or over a fixed longer period such as twenty or thirty years. (The minimum period presently permitted for tax purposes is ten years if the initial past-service cost is immediately paid in full, or about twelve years if one-tenth of the initial past-service cost plus interest is paid each year.)

6. In the view of others, the full accrual of pension costs may be unnecessary. They point out that in some cases accounting for such costs in the manner indicated in paragraph 5 would result, as to a given year or cumulatively or both, in the accrual of costs under a pension plan in amounts differing materially from the payments made under the plan into a pension fund or to retired employees, and in other cases it would require the employer to record pension costs in amounts varying widely from his legal liabilities. They say that a company would in all probability never be called upon to utilize the entire amount of an actuarially calculated full accrual, and that, in the event of liquidation of the business,

any amounts accrued with respect to employees who have not at the time acquired vested rights would, except for a voluntary act of grace, revert to the surplus of the company. They also believe that in the case of an unfunded or partially funded plan the accumulation of a substantial accrual would lead to pressure for full funding, possibly to the detriment of the company and its security holders, and that fear of this might deter management from entering into pension arrangements beneficial to employees. They also feel that the method of accounting envisioned in paragraph 5 disregards the probability that future unfavorable changes in a company's economic position undoubtedly would lead to changes in the pension arrangements it would make for its employees. According to this view, management should have wider discretion in accounting for pension costs, provided there is adequate disclosure as to the method followed.

7. The committee regards the method outlined in paragraph 5 as being the method most likely to effect a reasonable matching of costs and revenues, and therefore considers it to be preferable. However, the committee believes that opinion as to the accounting for pension costs has not yet crystallized sufficiently to make it possible at this time to assure agreement on any one method, and that differences in accounting for pension costs are likely to continue for a time. Accordingly, for the present, the committee believes that, as a minimum, the accounts and financial statements should reflect accruals which equal the present worth, actuarially calculated, of pension commitments to employees to the extent that pension rights have vested in the employees, reduced, in the case of the balance sheet, by any accumulated trusted funds or annuity contracts purchased.

8. The committee believes that the costs of many pension plans are so material that the fact of adoption of a plan or an important amendment to it constitutes significant information in financial statements. When a plan involving material costs is adopted, there should be a footnote to the financial statements for the year in which this occurs, stating the important features of the plan, the proposed method of funding or paying, the estimated annual charge to operations, and the basis on which such annual charge is determined. When an existing plan is amended to a material extent, there should be similar disclosure of the pertinent features of the amendment.

When there is a change in the accounting procedure which materially affects the results of operations, there should be appropriate indication thereof. If there are costs of material amount based on past or current

services for which reasonable provision has not been, or is not being, made in the accounts, appropriate disclosure should be made in a footnote to the financial statements as long as this situation exists.

The statement entitled "Accounting for Costs of Pension Plans" was adopted unanimously by the twenty-one members of the committee, of whom six, Messrs. Flatley, Jennings, Lindquist, Luther, Powell and Staub, assented with qualification.

The six members assenting with qualification object to that part of paragraph 3 which appears to sanction the charging to

earned surplus in some circumstances of pension costs based on past service. They believe this to be in conflict with section A of chapter 13 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, in which the committee expresses the opinion that costs of annuities based on past service should not be charged to surplus. They consider the conclusions expressed in chapter 13 to be sound for the reasons therein stated.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee and the research department. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.

2. Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the committee does not wish to discourage the revision of

past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1955-1956)

JOHN A. LINDQUIST,
Chairman
GORDON S. BATTELLE
GARRETT T. BURNS
ROBERT CALDWELL
ALMAND R. COLEMAN
ROBERT L. DIXON
L. T. FLATLEY
THOMAS D. FLYNN

CARL H. FORSBERG
LEVERNE W. GARCIA
DONALD R. JENNINGS
WILLIAM L. KEATING
HOMER L. LUTHER
JOHN K. MCCLARE
JOHN PEOPLES
WELDON POWELL

WALTER R. STAUB
ROSS T. WARNER
WILLIAM W. WERNITZ
EDWARD B. WILCOX
JAMES B. WILLING
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 48

BUSINESS COMBINATIONS

(Supersedes chapter 7(c) of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43)

JANUARY, 1957

1. Whenever two or more corporations are brought together, or combined, for the purpose of carrying on the previously conducted businesses, the accounting to give effect to the combination will vary depending largely upon whether an important part of the former ownership is eliminated or whether substantially all of it is continued. This bulletin differentiates these two types of combinations, the first of which is designated herein as a *purchase* and the second as a *pooling of interests*, and indicates the nature of the accounting treatment appropriate to each type.

2. For accounting purposes, the distinction between a *purchase* and a *pooling of interests* is to be found in the attendant circumstances rather than in the designation of the transaction according to its legal form (such as a merger, an exchange of shares, a consolidation, or an issuance of stock for assets and businesses), or in the number of corporations which survive or emerge, or in other legal or tax considerations (such as the availability of surplus for dividends).

3. For accounting purposes, a *purchase* may be described as a business combination of two or more corporations in which an important part of the ownership interests in the acquired corporation or corporations is eliminated or in which other factors requisite to a pooling of interests are not present.

4. In contrast, a *pooling of interests* may be described for accounting purposes as a business combination of two or more corporations in which the holders of substantially all of the ownership interests¹ in the constituent corporations become the owners of a single corporation which owns the assets and businesses of the constituent corporations, either directly or through one or more subsidiaries, and in which certain other factors discussed below are present. Such corporation may be one of the constituent corporations or it may be a new corporation. After a pooling of interests, the net assets of all of the constituent corporations will in a large number of cases be held by a single corporation. However,

the continuance in existence of one or more of the constituent corporations in a subsidiary relationship to another of the constituents or to a new corporation does not prevent the combination from being a pooling of interests if no significant minority interest remains outstanding, and if there are important tax, legal, or economic reasons for maintaining the subsidiary relationship, such as the preservation of tax advantages, the preservation of franchises or other rights, the preservation of the position of outstanding debt securities, or the difficulty or costliness of transferring contracts, leases, or licenses.

5. In determining the extent to which a new ownership or a continuity of old ownership exists in a particular business combination, consideration should be given to attendant circumstances. When the shares of stock that are received by the several owners of one of the predecessor corporations are not substantially in proportion to their respective interests in such predecessor, a new ownership or purchase of the predecessor is presumed to result. Similarly, if relative voting rights, as between the constituents, are materially altered through the issuance of senior equity or debt securities having limited or no voting rights, a purchase may be indicated. Likewise, a plan or firm intention and understanding to retire a substantial part of the capital stock issued to the owners of one or more of the constituent corporations, or substantial changes in ownership occurring shortly before or planned to occur shortly after the combination, tends to indicate that the combination is a purchase. However, where a constituent corporation has had two or more classes of stock outstanding prior to the origin of the plan of combination, the redemption, retirement, or conversion of a class or classes of stock having senior or preferential rights as to assets and dividends need not prevent the combination from being considered to be a pooling of interests.

6. Other attendant circumstances should also be taken into consideration in determining whether a purchase or a pooling of

¹ As used in this bulletin, the term "ownership interests" refers basically to common stock, although in some cases the term may also

include other classes of stock having senior or preferential rights as well as classes whose rights may be restricted in certain respects.

interests is involved. Since the assumption underlying the pooling-of-interests concept is one of continuity of all of the constituents in one business enterprise, abandonment or sale of a large part of the business of one or more of the constituents militates against considering the combination as a pooling of interests. Similarly, the continuity of management or the power to control management is involved. Thus, if the management of one of the constituents is eliminated or its influence upon the over-all management of the enterprise is very small, a purchase may be indicated. Relative size of the constituents may not necessarily be determinative, especially where the smaller corporation contributes desired management personnel; however, where one of the constituent corporations is clearly dominant (for example, where the stockholders of one of the constituent corporations obtain 90% to 95% or more of the voting interest in the combined enterprise), there is a presumption that the transaction is a purchase rather than a pooling of interests.

7. No one of the factors discussed in paragraphs 5 and 6 would necessarily be determinative and any one factor might have varying degrees of significance in different cases. However, their presence or absence would be cumulative in effect. Since the conclusions to be drawn from consideration of these different relevant circumstances may be in conflict or partially so, determination as to whether a particular combination is a purchase or a pooling of interests should be made in the light of all such attendant circumstances.

8. When a combination is deemed to be a purchase, the assets acquired should be recorded on the books of the acquiring corporation at cost, measured in money, or, in the event other consideration is given, at the fair value of such other consideration, or at the fair value of the property acquired, whichever is more clearly evident. This is in accordance with the procedure applicable to accounting for purchases of assets.

9. When a combination is deemed to be a pooling of interests, a new basis of accountability does not arise. The carrying amounts of the assets of the constituent corporations, if stated in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and appropriately adjusted when deemed necessary to place them on a uniform accounting basis, should be carried forward; and the combined earned surpluses and deficits, if any, of the constituent corporations should

be carried forward, except to the extent otherwise required by law or appropriate corporate action. Adjustments of assets or of surplus which would be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the absence of a combination are ordinarily equally appropriate if effected in connection with a pooling of interests; however, the pooling-of-interests concept implies a combining of surpluses and deficits of the constituent corporations, and it would be inappropriate and misleading in connection with a pooling of interests to eliminate the deficit of one constituent against its capital surplus and to carry forward the earned surplus of another constituent.

10. Where one or more of the constituent corporations continues in existence in a subsidiary relationship, and the requirements of a pooling of interests have been met, the combination of earned surpluses in the consolidated balance sheet is proper since a pooling of interests is not an acquisition as that term is used in paragraph 3 of chapter 1(a) of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43 which states that earned surplus of a subsidiary corporation created prior to acquisition does not form a part of the consolidated earned surplus. Under the pooling-of-interests concept, the new enterprise is regarded as a continuation of all the constituent corporations and this holds true whether it is represented by a single corporation or by a parent corporation and one or more subsidiaries. If, however, prior to the origin of a plan of combination one party to the combination had been acquired by another such party as a subsidiary in circumstances which precluded the transactions from being considered a pooling of interests, the parent's share of the earned surplus of the subsidiary prior to such acquisition should not be included in the earned surplus of the pooled corporations.

11. Because of the variety of conditions under which a pooling of interests may be carried out, it is not practicable to deal with the accounting presentation except in general terms. A number of problems will arise. For example, if a single corporation survives in a pooling of interests, the stated capital of such corporation may be either more or less than the total of the stated capitals of the constituent corporations. In the former event, the excess may be deducted first from the total of any other contributed capital (capital surplus), and next from the total of any earned surplus, of the constituent corporations. When the stated capital of the surviving corporation is less than the combined stated capitals of the

constituent corporations, the difference should appear in the balance sheet of the surviving corporation as other contributed capital (capital surplus), analogous to that created by a reduction in stated capital where no combination is involved.

12. When a combination is considered to be a pooling of interests, statements of operations issued by the continuing business for the period in which the combination occurs should ordinarily include the combined results of operations of the constituent interests for the part of the period preceding the date on which the combination was effected; if combined statements are not furnished, statements for the constituent

corporations prior to the date of combination should be furnished separately or in appropriate groups. Results of operations of the several constituents during periods prior to that in which the combination was effected, when presented for comparative purposes, may be stated on a combined basis, or shown separately where, under the circumstances of the case, that presentation is more useful and informative. Disclosure that a business combination has been, or in the case of a proposed combination will be, treated as a pooling of interests should be made and any combined statements clearly described as such.

The statement entitled "Business Combinations" was unanimously adopted

by the twenty-one members of the committee.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee and the research department. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.*

2. *Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the committee does*

not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. *It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.*

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1956-57)

WILLIAM W. WERTZ
Chairman
GORDON S. BATTELLE
GARRETT T. BURNS
DIXON FAGERBERG, JR.
L. T. FLATLEY
THOMAS D. FLYNN
CARL H. FORSBERG

LEVERNE W. GARCIA
WILLARD J. GRAHAM
NEWMAN T. HALVORSON
DONALD R. JENNINGS
HOMER L. LUTHER
JOHN K. MCCLARE
HERBERT E. MILLER
JOHN PEOPLES

WELDON POWELL
WALTER R. STAUB
WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN
ROSS T. WARNER
EDWARD B. WILCOX
JAMES B. WILLING
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 49

EARNINGS PER SHARE

APRIL, 1958

1. Statistical presentations of periodic net income (or loss) in terms of earnings per share¹ are commonly used in prospectuses, proxy material, and annual reports to shareholders, and in the compilation of business earnings statistics for the press, statistical services, and other publications. This bulletin deals with a number of problems arising in the computation and presentation of such statistics.

2. The committee has previously considered certain aspects of this matter² and now reaffirms its earlier conclusions that:

- (a) It is, in many cases, undesirable to give major prominence to a single figure of earnings per share;
- (b) Any computation of earnings per share for a given period should be related to the amount designated in the income statement as net income for such period; and
- (c) Where material extraordinary charges or credits have been excluded from the determination of net income, the per-share amount of such charges and credits should be reported separately and simultaneously.

3. Not only does the use of a single figure for earnings per share involve the same limitations of usefulness as does a single figure for net earnings, but also, in many circumstances, the computation of earnings per share involves unique prob-

lems. While it is desirable to achieve as much uniformity as is feasible, clear explanation and disclosure of methods used are especially important in this area of financial reporting.

4. The committee suggests the following general guides to be used in computing and presenting earnings per share:

- (a) Where used without qualification, the term *earnings per share* should be used to designate the amount applicable to each share of common stock or other residual security outstanding.
- (b) Earnings per share, and particularly comparative statistics covering a period of years, should generally be stated in terms of the common stock position as it existed in the years to which the statistics relate, unless it is clear that the growth or decline of earnings will be more fairly presented, as for example, in the case of a stock split, by dividing prior years' earnings by the current equivalent of the number of shares then outstanding.
- (c) *In all cases in which there have been significant changes in stock during the period to which the computations relate, an appropriate explanation of the method used should accompany the presentation of earnings per share.*

SINGLE-YEAR COMPUTATIONS

5. In the computation of earnings per share for a single year, minor increases or decreases in the number of shares outstanding during the year may be disregarded, and it is appropriate to base the computation on the number of shares outstanding at the end of the year. In the case of a substantial increase or decrease in the number of shares resulting from the issuance or reacquisition of stock for cash or other property during the year, it is generally appropriate to base the computation of earnings per share on a weighted average of the

number of shares outstanding during the year. Where there has been little or no opportunity to utilize the proceeds from the issuance of such shares, as would most clearly be the case when the shares were issued shortly before the end of the year, such shares may be disregarded in the computation. When an increase in the number of shares outstanding results from a stock dividend or a stock split, or a reduction in the number of shares outstanding results from a reverse split, without proceeds or disbursements, the computation

¹ As used herein, the term *earnings per share* connotes either earnings or losses per share.

² Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, *Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research*

Bulletins (1953), Chapter 8, par. 14. Also see Chapter 2(b), par. 4.

should be based on the number of shares outstanding at the end of the year. For purposes of determining the number of shares outstanding, reacquired shares should be excluded.

6. If there has been a stock split³ or a reverse split after the balance-sheet date but before the issuance of the financial report, it is desirable to base the computation of earnings per share on the new number of shares, since the reader's primary interest is presumed to be in the present stock position. Similar considerations may apply to stock dividends,³ although a relatively small stock dividend may properly be disregarded. In these cases of changes after the balance-sheet date, it is preferable to choose the more useful and informative basis of computation rather than to present two simultaneous and possibly confusing computations on different bases. When computations of earnings per share reflect changes in the number of shares after the balance-sheet date, it is important that this fact be clearly disclosed since there may be a presumption that earnings per share are based on the number of shares shown on the balance sheet. It is equally important that significant changes in the number of shares after the balance-sheet date be disclosed when such changes are not reflected in the computation of earnings per share.

7. Where there are shares outstanding senior to the common stock or other residual security, the claims of such securities on net income should be deducted from net income or added to net loss before computing per-share figures, since the term *earnings per share* is ordinarily used to designate the amount applicable to each share of common stock or other residual

security outstanding. In arriving at net income applicable to common stock for purposes of the per-share computations, provision should be made for cumulative preferred dividends for the year, whether or not earned. In the case of a net loss, the amount of the loss should be increased by any cumulative preferred stock dividends for the year. Where such dividends are cumulative only if earned, no adjustment of this nature is required except to the extent of income available therefor. In all cases the effect that has been given to dividend rights of senior securities in arriving at the earnings per share of common stock should be disclosed.

8. The following special considerations relate to convertible securities:

- (a) When debt capital, preferred stock, or other security has been converted into common stock during the year, earnings per share should ordinarily be based on a weighted average of the number of shares outstanding during the year. When the weighted average is used in such cases, adjustments for the year in respect of interest or other related factors are not made.
- (b) When capitalizations consist essentially of two classes of common stock, one of which is convertible into the other and is limited in its dividend rights until conversion takes place as, for example, when certain levels of earnings are achieved, two earnings-per-share figures, one assuming conversion, are ordinarily necessary for full disclosure of the situation.

COMPARATIVE STATISTICS

9. Presentations of earnings-per-share data for a period of several years should be governed basically by the criteria for single year presentations, but may involve a number of special considerations in view of changes in conditions during the period, and the purpose for which the data are to be used. It should be recognized that any tabulation of earnings per share for a period of years may have little bearing on the present position, and may fail to give any indication of present expectations. Variations in the capital structure may have substantial effects on earnings per share. The usefulness of such

statistics depends in large measure on collateral historical information and disclosure of methods of computation used. The committee's recommendations which follow are intended as guides to general uniformity but not as substitutes for explanations and disclosures or as cures for the inherent defects in statistical presentations of earnings per share.

10. When computations of earnings per share for a period of years, such as are submitted in annual reports and in prospectuses, include periods in which there have been stock splits or reverse splits, the earn-

³ See Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, Chapter 7(b).

ings for periods prior to the dates of the splits should be divided by the current equivalent of the number of shares outstanding in the respective prior periods in order to arrive at earnings per share in terms of the present stock position. Similar treatment should be accorded to stock dividends; however, it is permissible not to extend such treatment to small recurrent stock dividends, although in a prospectus or when such dividends in the aggregate become material, consideration should be given to recognizing the cumulative effect thereof. On the other hand, where, during the period of years for which data are given, there have been issuances or reacquisitions of stock for cash or other property, or, issuances in connection with conversions of debt capital, preferred stock, or other security, the computations of earnings per share for the years prior to such changes are not affected; it follows that earnings per share for these years should be based on the number of shares outstanding in the various years. When both situations have occurred, the effect of each should be reflected in accordance with the foregoing recommendations.

11. When equity securities are being publicly offered:

- (a) If there have been significant conversions of debt capital, preferred stock, or other security during the period of years for which data are given, it is appropriate to present supplementary calculations revising past figures to reflect subsequent conversions, on a pro forma basis.
- (b) If the securities being offered, or their proceeds, are to be used to retire outstanding securities in circum-

stances which assure such retirement, it may be useful to present, in addition to otherwise appropriate calculations, supplementary computations to show pro forma earnings per share for at least the most recent year as if such substitution of securities had been made. When this is done, the basis of the supplementary computations should be clearly disclosed. Where, however, the securities being offered, or their proceeds, are to be used, not to retire existing securities, but for such purposes as expansion of the business, earnings per share should be computed without adjustment for any increase in the number of shares anticipated as a result of such offering.

12. Where there has been a pooling of interests⁴ during the period of years for which data are given, in connection with which the number of shares outstanding or the capital structure in other respects has been changed, the method used in computing earnings per share for those years prior to the pooling of interests should be based on the new capital structure. When there is to be a pooling of interests in connection with which the number of shares outstanding or the capital structure in other respects will be changed, earnings per share for any period for which income statements of the constituent companies are presented in combined form should be computed on a basis consistent with the exchange ratio to be used in the pooling of interests. In either case earnings per share should, in all other respects, be computed in conformity with the principles set forth in the foregoing paragraphs.

EARNINGS COVERAGE OF SENIOR SECURITIES

13. Where periodic net income is related to outstanding shares of senior securities, such as preferred stock, the committee believes that, under most circumstances, the term *earnings per share* is not properly applicable in view of the limited dividend rights

of such senior securities. In such cases it may be helpful to show the number of times or the extent to which the requirements of senior dividends have been earned, but such information should not be designated as earnings per share.

MISCELLANEOUS

14. It is impracticable to deal, in this bulletin, with all of the possible conditions and circumstances under which it may be necessary or desirable to compute data in terms of earnings per share—for example,

acquisitions, mergers, reorganizations, convertible and participating securities, outstanding stock options, retirements, and various combinations of these circumstances. While such situations should be dealt with

⁴ See Accounting Research Bulletin No. 48, *Business Combinations* (1957).

in harmony with the recommendations made in this bulletin, they call for especially careful consideration of facts and the exercise of judgment in the light of all the circumstances of the case and the purposes for

which the data are prepared. In such complex situations as those mentioned in this paragraph, a clear disclosure of the basis on which the computations have been made is essential.

DIVIDENDS PER SHARE

15. Although this bulletin deals primarily with earnings per share, certain considerations may apply comparably to dividends per share. In general, dividends per share constitute historical facts and should be so reported. However, in certain cases, such as a stock split as mentioned in paragraph 10, a presentation of dividends per share in terms of the current equivalent of the

number of shares outstanding at the time of the dividend is necessary so that dividends per share and earnings per share will be stated on the same basis. When dividends per share are stated on any other than the historical basis, it is generally desirable that such statement be supplemental to the historical record, and its basis and significance should be fully explained.

The statement entitled "Earnings per Share" was unanimously adopted by

the twenty-one members of the committee.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee, the technical services department, and the director of research. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.

2. Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of

the opinions. However, the committee does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1957-58)

WILLIAM W. WERNTZ,
Chairman
NORTON M. BEDFORD
GARRETT T. BURNS
KEITH W. DUNN
CARL M. ESENOFF
WILLARD J. GRAHAM
NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

CHARLES A. HOYLER
WILLIAM P. HUTCHISON
DONALD R. JENNINGS
RALPH E. KENT
GEORGE W. LAFFERTY
JOHN F. MACHA
JOHN K. MCCLARE
HERBERT E. MILLER

JOHN PEOPLES
WELDON POWELL
SAMUEL L. READY
WALTER R. STAUB
WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN
EDWARD B. WILCOX
CARMAN G. BLOUGH,
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 50

CONTINGENCIES

OCTOBER, 1958

1. In the preparation of financial statements presenting financial position or operating results, or both, it is necessary to give consideration to contingencies. In accounting a contingency is an existing condition, situation or set of circumstances, involving a considerable degree of uncertainty, which

may, through a related future event, result in the acquisition or loss of an asset, or the incurrence or avoidance of a liability, usually with the concurrence of a gain or loss. A commitment which is not dependent upon some significant intervening factor or decision should not be described as a contingency.

DISCUSSION

2. The contingencies with which this bulletin is primarily concerned are those in which the outcome is not sufficiently predictable to permit recording in the accounts, but in which there is a reasonable possibility of an outcome which might materially affect financial position or results of operations. Examples of contingencies which may result in the incurrence of liabilities, or in losses, are pending or threatened litigation, assessments or possible assessments of additional taxes, or other claims such as renegotiation refunds, that are being or would be contested, guarantees of indebtedness of others, and agreements to repurchase receivables which have been sold. Examples of contingencies which may result in the acquisition of assets, or in gains, are claims against others for patent infringement, price redetermination upward and claims for reimbursement under condemnation proceedings. Material contingencies of the types discussed in this paragraph should be disclosed.

3. Other contingencies may exist where the outcome is reasonably foreseeable, such as probable tax assessments which will not be contested, or anticipated losses from uncollectible receivables. Contingencies of this type which are expected to result in losses should be reflected in the accounts. However, contingencies which might result in gains usually are not reflected in the accounts since to do so might be to recognize revenue prior to its realization,¹ but there should be adequate disclosure.

4. There are also general risk contingencies that are inherent in business operations and which affect many if not all companies, such as the possibility of war, strike, losses from catastrophes not ordinarily insured against, or a business recession. Contingencies of this type need not be reflected in financial statements either by incorporation in the accounts or by other disclosure.²

DISCLOSURE

5. Disclosure of contingencies referred to in paragraph 2 should be made in financial statements or in notes thereto. The disclosure should be based as to its extent on judgment in the light of the specific circumstances and should indicate the nature of the contingency, and should give an appraisal of the outlook. If a monetary estimate of the amount involved is not feasible, disclosure should be made in general terms describing the contingency and explaining that no estimated amount is determinable. When amounts are not otherwise determinable, it may be appropriate to indicate the opinion of management or counsel as to the amount which may be involved. In some cases, such as a law suit involving a substantial amount, management may reasonably expect to settle the matter without incurrence of any significant liability; however, consideration should

be given to disclosing the existence of the litigation and the opinion of management or counsel with respect thereto. Although disclosures discussed here should be made with respect to those contingencies which may result in material gains or assets as well as with respect to those which may result in material losses or liabilities, care should be exercised in the case of gains or assets to avoid misleading implications as to the likelihood of realization. The discussion in this bulletin does not deal with the question as to whether the existence of any of the contingencies discussed above is such as to require a qualified opinion or a disclaimer of an opinion by the independent certified public accountant.

6. Certain other situations requiring disclosures have sometimes inappropriately been described as though they were contingencies,

¹ See Chapter 1, Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, *Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins*.

² For the committee's position with respect to contingency reserves, see Chapter 6 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.

even though they are of a nature not possessing the degree of uncertainty usually associated with the concept of a contingency. Examples are unused letters of credit, long-term leases, assets pledged as security for loans, pension plans, the existence of cumulative preferred stock dividends in arrears,

and commitments such as those for plant acquisition or an obligation to reduce debts, maintain working capital, or restrict dividends. While some of these situations may develop into contingencies, they should not be described as contingencies prior to such eventuality.

The statement entitled "Contingencies" was adopted unanimously by the twenty-one members of the committee, of whom two, Messrs. Bedford and Halvorson, assented with qualification.

Mr. Bedford objects to the provision in paragraph 3 that anticipated losses due to a contingency should be recognized in an accounting period prior to the actual incurrence of the loss. He believes that such deductions from revenue, in order to match adequately costs and revenues, should be based upon sufficient statistical evidence or experience to justify an accounting treatment different from that afforded gains. Without the sufficient statistical evidence or experience and without evidence to indicate a loss has been incurred, he believes a contingent loss should be disclosed in such a manner as not to require the recognition of the loss until the loss has been incurred.

Mr. Halvorson believes the bulletin fails in the essential matter of definition in the second sentence of paragraph 1. He feels that "a considerable degree of uncertainty" is beside the point, and that the definition as it stands would not exclude many types of commitments. He believes that the point should be that the "existing condition" and the "related future event" would affect present financial position or present or past operations, and would be so recorded in the statements, if all the uncertainties could be resolved at the time the statements are being issued. He also believes that the bulletin should not deal with the "general risk" contingencies described in paragraph 4, as they are not of a peculiarly accounting nature, and the attempt to accommodate them in an accounting bulletin has required a definition that is so broad as to fail in its purpose.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee, the technical services department, and the director of research. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.*

2. *Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of*

the opinions. However, the committee does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. *It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.*

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1957-58)

WILLIAM W. WERTZ,
Chairman
NORTON M. BEDFORD
GARRETT T. BURNS
KEITH W. DUNN
CARL M. ESENOFF
WILLARD J. GRAHAM
NEWMAN T. HALVORSON
CHARLES A. HOYLER

WILLIAM P. HUTCHISON
DONALD R. JENNINGS
RALPH E. KENT
GEORGE W. LAFFERTY
JOHN F. MACHA
JOHN K. MCCLARE
HERBERT E. MILLER
JOHN PEOPLES

WELDON POWELL
SAMUEL L. READY
WALTER R. STAUB
WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN
EDWARD B. WILCOX
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
Director of Research

Accounting Research Bulletin No. 51

CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

AUGUST, 1959

PURPOSE OF CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS

1. The purpose of consolidated statements is to present, primarily for the benefit of the shareholders and creditors of the parent company, the results of operations and the financial position of a parent company and its subsidiaries essentially as if the group were a single company with one or more

branches or divisions. There is a presumption that consolidated statements are more meaningful than separate statements and that they are usually necessary for a fair presentation when one of the companies in the group directly or indirectly has a controlling financial interest in the other companies.

CONSOLIDATION POLICY

2. The usual condition for a controlling financial interest is ownership of a majority voting interest, and, therefore, as a general rule ownership by one company, directly or indirectly, of over fifty per cent of the outstanding voting shares of another company is a condition pointing toward consolidation. However, there are exceptions to this general rule. For example, a subsidiary should not be consolidated where control is likely to be temporary, or where it does not rest with the majority owners (as, for instance, where the subsidiary is in legal reorganization or in bankruptcy). There may also be situations where the minority interest in the subsidiary is so large, in relation to the equity of the shareholders of the parent in the consolidated net assets, that the presentation of separate financial statements for the two companies would be more meaningful and useful. However, the fact that the subsidiary has a relatively large indebtedness to bondholders or others is not in itself a valid argument for exclusion of the subsidiary from consolidation. (Also, see Chapter 12 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43 for the treatment of foreign subsidiaries.)

separate statements. On the other hand, separate statements or combined statements would be preferable for a subsidiary or group of subsidiaries if the presentation of financial information concerning the particular activities of such subsidiaries would be more informative to shareholders and creditors of the parent company than would the inclusion of such subsidiaries in the consolidation. For example, separate statements may be required for a subsidiary which is a bank or an insurance company and may be preferable for a finance company where the parent and the other subsidiaries are engaged in manufacturing operations.

3. In deciding upon consolidation policy, the aim should be to make the financial presentation which is most meaningful in the circumstances. The reader should be given information which is suitable to his needs, but he should not be burdened with unnecessary detail. Thus, even though a group of companies is heterogeneous in character, it may be better to make a full consolidation than to present a large number of

4. A difference in fiscal periods of a parent and a subsidiary does not of itself justify the exclusion of the subsidiary from consolidation. It ordinarily is feasible for the subsidiary to prepare, for consolidation purposes, statements for a period which corresponds with or closely approaches the fiscal period of the parent. However, where the difference is not more than about three months, it usually is acceptable to use, for consolidation purposes, the subsidiary's statements for its fiscal period; when this is done, recognition should be given by disclosure or otherwise to the effect of intervening events which materially affect the financial position or results of operations.

5. Consolidated statements should disclose the consolidation policy which is being followed. In most cases this can be made apparent by the headings or other information in the statements, but in other cases a footnote is required.

CONSOLIDATION PROCEDURE GENERALLY

6. In the preparation of consolidated statements, intercompany balances and transactions should be eliminated. This includes intercompany open account balances, security

holdings, sales and purchases, interest, dividends, etc. As consolidated statements are based on the assumption that they represent the financial position and operating results

of a single business enterprise, such statements should not include gain or loss on transactions among the companies in the group. Accordingly, any intercompany profit or loss on assets remaining within the group should be eliminated; the concept usually applied for this purpose is gross profit or loss. (See also paragraph 17.) However, in a regulated industry where a parent or sub-

sidary manufactures or constructs facilities for other companies in the consolidated group, the foregoing is not intended to require the elimination of intercompany profit to the extent that such profit is substantially equivalent to a reasonable return on investment ordinarily capitalized in accordance with the established practice of the industry.

ELIMINATION OF INTERCOMPANY INVESTMENTS

7. Where the cost to the parent of the investment in a purchased¹ subsidiary exceeds the parent's equity in the subsidiary's net assets at the date of acquisition, as shown by the books of the subsidiary, the excess should be dealt with in the consolidated balance sheet according to its nature. In determining the difference, provision should be made for specific costs or losses which are expected to be incurred in the integration of the operations of the subsidiary with those of the parent, or otherwise as a result of the acquisition, if the amount thereof can be reasonably determined. To the extent that the difference is considered to be attributable to tangible assets and specific intangible assets, such as patents, it should be allocated to them. Any difference which cannot be so applied should be shown among the assets in the consolidated balance sheet under one or more appropriately descriptive captions. When the difference is allocated to depreciable or amortizable assets, depreciation and amortization policies should be such as to absorb the excess over the remaining life of related assets. For subsequent treatment of intangibles, see Chapter 5 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.

8. In general, parallel procedures should be followed in the reverse type of case. Where the cost to the parent is less than its equity in the net assets of the purchased subsidiary, as shown by the books of the subsidiary at the date of acquisition, the amount at which such net assets are carried in the consolidated statements should not exceed the parent's cost. Accordingly, to the extent that the difference, determined as indicated in paragraph 7, is considered to be attributable to specific assets, it should be allocated to them, with corresponding adjustments of the depreciation or amortization. In unusual circumstances there may be a remaining difference which it would be acceptable to show in a credit account, which ordinarily would be taken into income in future periods on a

reasonable and systematic basis. A procedure sometimes followed in the past was to credit capital surplus with the amount of the excess; such a procedure is not now considered acceptable.

9. The earned surplus or deficit of a purchased¹ subsidiary at the date of acquisition by the parent should not be included in consolidated earned surplus.

10. When one company purchases two or more blocks of stock of another company at various dates and eventually obtains control of the other company, the date of acquisition (for the purpose of preparing consolidated statements) depends on the circumstances. If two or more purchases are made over a period of time, the earned surplus of the subsidiary at acquisition should generally be determined on a step-by-step basis; however, if small purchases are made over a period of time and then a purchase is made which results in control, the date of the latest purchase, as a matter of convenience, may be considered as the date of acquisition. Thus there would generally be included in consolidated income for the year in which control is obtained the postacquisition income for that year, and in consolidated earned surplus the postacquisition income of prior years, attributable to each block previously acquired. For example, if a 45% interest was acquired on October 1, 1957 and a further 30% interest was acquired on April 1, 1958, it would be appropriate to include in consolidated income for the year ended December 31, 1958, 45% of the earnings of the subsidiary for the three months ended March 31, and 75% of the earnings for the nine months ended December 31, and to credit consolidated earned surplus in 1958 with 45% of the undistributed earnings of the subsidiary for the three months ended December 31, 1957.

11. When a subsidiary is purchased during the year, there are alternative ways of

¹ See Accounting Research Bulletin No. 48, *Business Combinations*, for the difference in

treatment between a purchase and a pooling of interests.

dealing with the results of its operations in the consolidated income statement. One method, which usually is preferable, especially where there are several dates of acquisition of blocks of shares, is to include the subsidiary in the consolidation as though it had been acquired at the beginning of the year, and to deduct at the bottom of the consolidated income statement the preacquisition earnings applicable to each block of stock. This method presents results which are more indicative of the current status of the group, and facilitates future comparison with subsequent years. Another method of prorating income is to include in the consolidated

statement only the subsidiary's revenue and expenses subsequent to the date of acquisition.

12. Where the investment in a subsidiary is disposed of during the year, it may be preferable to omit the details of operations of the subsidiary from the consolidated income statement, and to show the equity of the parent in the earnings of the subsidiary prior to disposal as a separate item in the statement.

13. Shares of the parent held by a subsidiary should not be treated as outstanding stock in the consolidated balance sheet.

MINORITY INTERESTS

14. The amount of intercompany profit or loss to be eliminated in accordance with paragraph 6 is not affected by the existence of a minority interest. The complete elimination of the intercompany profit or loss is consistent with the underlying assumption that consolidated statements represent the financial position and operating results of a single business enterprise. The elimination of the intercompany profit or loss may be allocated proportionately between the majority and minority interests.

15. In the unusual case in which losses applicable to the minority interest in a subsidiary exceed the minority interest in the equity capital of the subsidiary, such excess and any further losses applicable to the minority interest should be charged against the majority interest, as there is no obligation of the minority interest to make good such losses. However, if future earnings do materialize, the majority interest should be credited to the extent of such losses previously absorbed.

INCOME TAXES

16. When separate income tax returns are filed, income taxes usually are incurred when earnings of subsidiaries are transferred to the parent. Where it is reasonable to assume that a part or all of the undistributed earnings of a subsidiary will be transferred to the parent in a taxable distribution, provision for related income taxes should be made on an estimated basis at the time the earnings are included in consolidated income, unless these taxes are immaterial in amount when effect is given, for example, to dividend-received deductions or foreign-tax credits.

There is no need to provide for income tax to the parent company in cases where the income has been, or there is evidence that it will be, permanently invested by the subsidiaries, or where the only likely distribution would be in the form of a tax-free liquidation.

17. If income taxes have been paid on intercompany profits on assets remaining within the group, such taxes should be deferred or the intercompany profits to be eliminated in consolidation should be appropriately reduced.

STOCK DIVIDENDS OF SUBSIDIARIES

18. Occasionally, subsidiary companies capitalize earned surplus arising since acquisition, by means of a stock dividend or otherwise. This does not require a transfer to capital surplus on consolidation, inasmuch as the

retained earnings in the consolidated financial statements should reflect the accumulated earnings of the consolidated group not distributed to the shareholders of, or capitalized by, the parent company.

UNCONSOLIDATED SUBSIDIARIES IN CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS

19. There are two methods of dealing with unconsolidated subsidiaries in consolidated statements. Whichever method is adopted should be used for all unconsolidated subsidiaries, subject to appropriate modification in special circumstances. The preferable method, in the view of the committee, is to

adjust the investment through income currently to take up the share of the controlling company or companies in the subsidiaries' net income or net loss, except where the subsidiary was excluded because of exchange restrictions or other reasons which raise the question of whether the increase in equity

has accrued to the credit of the group. (Adjustments of the investment would also be made for "special" debits or credits shown on the income statements of the unconsolidated subsidiaries below the net income for the period, and for similar items shown in the schedule of earned surplus.) The other method, more commonly used at present, is to carry the investment at cost, and to take up income as dividends are received; however, provision should be made for any material impairment of the investment, such as through losses sustained by the subsidiaries, unless it is deemed to be temporary. When the latter method is followed, the consolidated statements should disclose, by footnote or otherwise, the cost of the investment in the unconsolidated subsidiaries, the equity of the consolidated group of companies in their net assets, the dividends received from them in the current period, and the equity of the consolidated group in their earnings for the period; this information may be given in total or by individual subsidiaries or groups of subsidiaries.

20. Whichever method of dealing with unconsolidated subsidiaries is followed, if there is a difference between the cost of the investment and the equity in net assets at the date of acquisition, appropriate recognition should be given to the possibility that, had the subsidiaries been consolidated, part of such difference would have been reflected in adjusted depreciation or amortization. Also, appropriate recognition should be given to the necessity for an adjustment for inter-

company gains or losses on transactions with unconsolidated subsidiaries. If sales are made to unconsolidated subsidiaries and the investment in the subsidiaries is carried at cost plus the equity in undistributed earnings, an elimination of unrealized intercompany gains and losses should be made to the same extent as if the subsidiaries were consolidated. The same applies where intercompany sales are made by the unconsolidated subsidiaries. If, however, the investment is carried at cost, it is not necessary to eliminate the intercompany gain on sales to such subsidiaries, if the gain on the sales does not exceed the unrecorded equity in undistributed earnings of the unconsolidated subsidiaries. If such gain is material, it should be appropriately disclosed. Where the sales are made by the unconsolidated subsidiaries to companies included in the consolidated group, the intercompany gains or losses should be eliminated in arriving at the amount of the equity in the undistributed earnings of the unconsolidated subsidiaries which will be disclosed in a footnote or otherwise. (See paragraph 19.)

21. Where the unconsolidated subsidiaries are, in the aggregate, material in relation to the consolidated financial position or operating results, summarized information as to their assets, liabilities and operating results should be given in the footnotes or separate statements should be presented for such subsidiaries, either individually or in groups, as appropriate.

COMBINED STATEMENTS

22. To justify the preparation of consolidated statements, the controlling financial interest should rest directly or indirectly in one of the companies included in the consolidation. There are circumstances, however, where combined financial statements (as distinguished from consolidated statements) of commonly controlled companies are likely to be more meaningful than their separate statements. For example, combined financial statements would be useful where one individual owns a controlling interest in several corporations which are related in their operations. Combined statements would also be used to present the financial position

and the result of operations of a group of unconsolidated subsidiaries. They might also be used to combine the financial statements of companies under common management.

23. Where combined statements are prepared for a group of related companies, such as a group of unconsolidated subsidiaries or a group of commonly controlled companies, intercompany transactions and profits or losses should be eliminated, and if there are problems in connection with such matters as minority interests, foreign operations, different fiscal periods, or income taxes, they should be treated in the same manner as in consolidated statements.

PARENT-COMPANY STATEMENTS

24. In some cases parent-company statements may be needed, in addition to consolidated statements, to indicate adequately the position of bondholders and other creditors or preferred stockholders of the parent.

Consolidating statements, in which one column is used for the parent company and other columns for particular subsidiaries or groups of subsidiaries, often are an effective means of presenting the pertinent information.

The statement entitled "Consolidated Financial Statements" was unanimously adopted by the twenty-one members of the committee, of whom nine, Messrs. Bedford, Dunn, Graese, Graham, Halvorson, Hoyler, Kent, Powell, and Werntz, assented with qualification.

Mr. Bedford objects to the provision in paragraph 2 that ownership of over fifty per cent of the outstanding voting stock is the general rule governing consolidation policy. He believes the over fifty per cent ownership requirement is at best only one of several criteria evidencing the existence of a consolidated entity.

Messrs. Graese and Hoyler do not agree with the statement made in the last sentence of paragraph 8. Mr. Graese believes there are cases in which the crediting of a capital surplus account with the "excess credit" will result in a more appropriate presentation of consolidated operations and financial position, particularly in (but not limited to) situations where the acquisition of control of the subsidiary has been accomplished over an extended period of time or where there are acquisitions of minority interest at a date considerably after obtaining control. Mr. Hoyler is of the opinion that there have been, and probably will be, circumstances under which credits to capital surplus of the excesses referred to in this paragraph will be appropriate.

Messrs. Halvorson and Werntz object to the relative emphasis given to the recommendations in paragraph 10, which they believe should be reversed. They believe that the date of the purchase which results in control should generally be considered to be the date of acquisition; however, if a limited number of purchases are made over a period of time pursuant to a plan or program which culminates in control, they agree that the earned surplus of the subsidiary at acquisition may be determined on a step-by-step basis.

Mr. Halvorson disagrees with the recommendation in paragraph 18. In his view, the usual subsidiary is a closely held corporation, and consequently is under no pressure to declare stock dividends and is under no compulsion to follow the "fair value" method of accounting for them if it does. If it does capitalize earned surplus by means of a stock dividend or otherwise, particularly "otherwise," he feels that it must have been done with a purpose relating to its financial position, at the direction of, and with the acquiescence of, the parent company, and

that the capitalization should carry through into the consolidated surplus accounts. If the subsidiary is one in which there is a publicly held minority interest, and a stock dividend is issued and accounted for on a fair-value basis in the manner of an independent publicly owned corporation, the accounting for earned surplus in respect of the majority interest would be the same as that for the minority interest, and again he believes that the capitalization should follow through into the consolidated surplus accounts. Mr. Powell also disagrees with the conclusion expressed in this paragraph. He believes that if a parent causes a subsidiary to freeze a part or all of its earned surplus through the payment of a stock dividend or otherwise, thus making such surplus unavailable for ordinary dividends, it should follow a similar procedure on consolidation.

Mr. Kent believes the consolidation policy section is deficient since it fails to restrict the increasing practice of not including certain subsidiaries in consolidated financial statements. He suggests that the bulletin may possibly result in further increasing such practice as a consequence of the preference expressed in paragraph 19 for the inclusion of the equity in earnings of unconsolidated subsidiaries in consolidated statements. It is his belief that in the usual situation a full consolidation policy as implied in paragraph 1 is generally preferable, supplemented by such summarized financial information, in footnotes or otherwise, as may be appropriate.

Messrs. Dunn and Graham believe that the "preferable" method in paragraph 19 should be recognized as the only acceptable method of dealing with unconsolidated subsidiaries in consolidated statements, and that the method which carries the investment in unconsolidated subsidiaries at cost, and takes up as income only the dividends received, should be discontinued as rapidly as is practicable. They feel that the "preferable" method conforms to the purpose of consolidated statements as set forth in paragraph 1—to present the results of operations and the financial position essentially as if the group were a single company, and that its uniform adoption would increase the comparability of the financial statements of different companies, and would avoid the possibility of manipulation of reported consolidated earnings through the control of dividends received by the parent.

Mr. Dunn believes that paragraph 20 should require the elimination of intercompany gain on sales to unconsolidated subsidiaries if the

failure to do so would have a material effect on the reported consolidated income, regardless of whether the gain on intercompany

sales exceeds the unrecorded equity in undistributed earnings of the unconsolidated subsidiaries.

NOTES

(See Introduction to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.)

1. *Accounting Research Bulletins* represent the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the committee on accounting procedure, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter by the committee, the technical services department, and the director of research. Except in cases in which formal adoption by the Institute membership has been asked and secured, the authority of the bulletins rests upon the general acceptability of opinions so reached.

2. Opinions of the committee are not intended to be retroactive unless they contain a statement of such intention. They should not be considered applicable to the accounting for transactions arising prior to the publication of the opinions. However, the com-

mittee does not wish to discourage the revision of past accounts in an individual case if the accountant thinks it desirable in the circumstances. Opinions of the committee should be considered as applicable only to items which are material and significant in the relative circumstances.

3. It is recognized also that any general rules may be subject to exception; it is felt, however, that the burden of justifying departure from accepted procedures must be assumed by those who adopt other treatment. Except where there is a specific statement of a different intent by the committee, its opinions and recommendations are directed primarily to business enterprises organized for profit.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (1958-59)

WILLIAM W. WERTZ,
Chairman

NORTON M. BEDFORD

GARRETT T. BURNS

KEITH W. DUNN

CARL M. ESENOFF

CLIFFORD E. GRAESE

WILLARD J. GRAHAM

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

CHARLES A. HOYLER

DONALD R. JENNINGS

RALPH E. KENT

GEORGE W. LAFFERTY

JOHN F. MACHA

JOHN K. MCCLARE

HERBERT E. MILLER

WELDON POWELL

SAMUEL L. READY

WALTER R. STAUB

WILLIAM J. VON MINDEN

EDWARD B. WILCOX

DELMAR G. WILSEY

CARMAN G. BLOUGH

Director of Research

Topical Index to Accounting Research Bulletins

References are to page numbers.

A

Abnormal or excessive costs of fixed assets	6030-6033
Accelerated amortization	
of discount, etc., on refunded bonds	6059
of emergency facilities	6033, 6034
of intangibles	6019
Accelerated depreciation	
declining-balance depreciation	6065.
emergency facilities	6067-6069
	6034, 6035
Acceptances receivable, trade	6011
Accepted procedures	
departure from	
burden of justifying	6006, 6051
immaterial items (see also Disclosure)	6006, 6008
may differ from income tax requirements	6034
Accountants	
private (company)—application of recom-	
mendations	6007
public, responsibility of	6007
Accounting	
and the corporate system	6005, 6006
uniformity in	6005, 6006
Accounts payable	
accrued or estimated	
disclosure	6037
inclusion in current liabilities	
bonus payments	6011
for materials and supplies	6011
payments measured by current trans-	
actions	6012
product guarantees and servicing	6012
wages, salaries, commissions, rentals,	
royalties	6011
where payee unknown	6012
from funds accumulated in accounts not	
classified as current	6012
Accounts receivable	
effective realizable cash value	6012
from unusual transactions	6011
instalment	6011
officers, employees, or affiliated com-	
panies—separate disclosure	6007
when includible in current assets	6011
Accrual basis of accounting, as applied to	
termination claims	6046
Accrued liabilities (see Accounts payable)	
Acquisition and production cost, as applied	
to inventories	6014
Acquisitions for lump sum	6018-6020
Administrative expenses—exclusion from in-	
ventory cost, except part clearly related to	
production	6015
Adoption of opinions (see Committee	
opinions)	
Advance collections for goods or services—	
when included in current liabilities	6011
Advances and loans to affiliates, officers, or	
employees	
separate disclosure	6007
when excluded from current assets	6011

Advances by Government on contracts—offset and disclosure of	6041, 6044, 6045
Advances made for purposes of control, etc.	6011
Advertising, prepaid—classification	6011
Affiliates, receivables from . shown separately from other accounts	6007
. when classified as current assets	6011
Agency obligations—classification	6011
Agricultural products, in inventory pricing	6018
All-inclusive income statement	6028, 6029
Allocation . financial statements based on	6038
. of cost of lump-sum purchases	6018-6020
. of costs against applicable revenues	6014, 6015, 6021, 6046
. of costs, through depreciation or amortization	6019, 6020, 6031-6035
. of income taxes (<i>see</i> Income taxes)	
Allowance accounts, deduction of	6012
Amortization . accelerated	6019, 6033-6035, 6059
. bond discount, etc., on refunded issues	6057-6059
. emergency facilities	6033-6035
. intangibles	6019, 6020
Amplification of Institute Rule No. 2 of 1934	6022, 6023
Annuities under pension plans, costs of	6052
Application of Government securities against liabilities for Federal taxes on income	6012, 6013
Appraisals, property	6031-6033
Appreciation . of investments, tax provision on unrealized	6041
. of property	
. credit arising from	6033
. depreciation on	6033
Appropriations of earned surplus	6020, 6021
Appropriations of net income	6031-6033
Appropriations of net income (<i>see also</i> Net income)	
Approval of opinions (<i>see</i> Committee opinions)	
Assets . intangible, chapter on	6018-6020
. lump-sum payment for	6018-6020
. sales of capital, classification of receivables for	6011
. unusual sales, material charges or credits arising from	6029
Assets not acquired for resale or not of type generally dealt in—profits or losses	6029
Assumptions as to flow of cost factors	6015
Auditor (<i>see</i> Accountants)	
Authority of committee opinions	6006
Average cost, in inventory pricing	6012, 6015

B

- Balance sheet—link between income statements 6005, 6009
- Balanced quantities 6017
- Basket purchase of assets 6018-6020
- Bonds or bonded debt (*see* **Funded debt**)
- Bonds, discount on
 - not chargeable immediately to surplus 6057
 - part of compensation for use of money (*see also* **Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded**) 6057
- Bonus payments
 - determinable only approximately—classification 6012
 - under long-term leases—classification 6011
- Bonus shares 6053-6055
- Branches, foreign, operations of 6049-6052
- Buildings—profits or losses on sale of 6029
- Business combinations 6026, 6027, 6081-6083
 - pooling of interests
 - accounting treatment 6027, 6082
 - continuation of one company as subsidiary 6082
 - disclosures 6027, 6083
 - distinguishing features 6026, 6081, 6082
 - financial statements 6082, 6083
 - purchase
 - accounting treatment 6026, 6027, 6082
 - cost, how measured 6026, 6027, 6082
 - distinguishing features 6026, 6081, 6082
- Buy-build-sell-and-lease transactions (*see also* **Leases, long-term**) 6056, 6057

C

- Capital
 - legal 6024, 6025
 - working 6010-6013
- Capital accounts 6022-6027
 - business combination 6026, 6027, 6081-6083
 - quasi-reorganization 6022, 6023
 - stock dividends and stock split-ups 6023-6026
- Capital assets
 - receivables from sale of 6011
 - short-term debts arising from acquisition of 6011
- Capital stock
 - compensation involved in stock option and stock purchase plans 6053-6055
 - credits to, in connection with stock dividends 6024, 6025
 - donated, issued nominally for property—proceeds of subsequent sale not a credit to surplus 6007
 - net asset value of outstanding, affected by purchases and retirements 6008
 - treasury stock (*see also* **Stock dividends and stock split-ups**) 6007, 6008, 6030
- Capital stocks of subsidiaries (*see* **Investments: subsidiaries**)
- Capital surplus
 - adjustments in pooling of interests 6027
 - adjustments in quasi-reorganization 6022, 6023
 - appreciation of property—treatment of credit 6033

Capital surplus—continued

- correction of erroneous credits made in past 6023
 - credits to, in connection with stock dividends 6024, 6025
 - donated stock 6007
 - earned surplus of a subsidiary prior to acquisition 6007, 6027
 - intangibles not to be written off against 6020
 - not chargeable with unamortized bond discount 6059
 - not to be used to relieve income account of charges 6007, 6020, 6022, 6059
 - substitute term for 6004
 - transactions in company's own stock 6008, 6030
- Capitalization of earned surplus (*see* **Earned surplus**)**
- Carry-back or carry-forward of losses and unused excess-profits credits 6040**
- Cash**
- includible in current assets if available for current operations 6010
 - restricted, earmarked, or otherwise not available—classification 6011
- Cash surrender value of life insurance policies**
- exclusion from current assets 6011
 - loans, classification of 6011, 6012
- Certificates of necessity 6033, 6034**
- Changes in price levels**
- inventory 6015-6018, 6020, 6021, 6051
 - productive facilities (*see also* **Foreign operations and foreign exchange**) 6030-6033
- Changes of substance 6061-6064**
- Charges and credits to surplus**
- charges over years tend to exceed credits 6028
 - credit from appreciation—not available for transfer to earned surplus 6033
 - material extraordinary (*see* **Material extraordinary charges and credits**)
 - proceeds of donated stocks sold not a credit to surplus 6007
 - tendency to be overlooked when omitted from income statement 6028
 - tendency to restrict narrowly 6005
 - transactions in company's own capital stock (*see also* **Earned surplus and Capital surplus**) 6008, 6030
- Charitable organizations—committee's attention not directed to 6006**
- Circulating assets 6010**
- Collections received in advance—when included in current liabilities 6011**
- Combinations, business (*see* **Business combinations**)**
- Combined financial statements 6094**
- Combined statement of income and earned surplus**
- advantages 6009
 - disadvantages and limitations 6009, 6010
 - not an excuse for less care in distinguishing income items from surplus items 6010

Commissions accrued—inclusion in current liabilities	6011	Consolidating statements	6094
Commitments—net losses on—recognition in accounts and separate disclosure	6017, 6018	Construction contracts (see Government contracts; Long-term construction-type contracts)	
Committee on cooperation with stock exchanges	6008	Contingencies	6089, 6090
Committee opinions		. accounting for	6089
. applicability of	6006	. assets	6089
. immaterial items	6006	. definitions	6089
. types of organization to whom attention has not been directed	6006	. disclosure of	6089, 6090
. authority of	6006	. distinguished from commitments, etc.	6089, 6090
. burden of justifying departure from	6006	. liabilities	6089
. changes of substance	6061-6064	. recoverable subcontractor's claims	6048, 6049
. not retroactive	6006	. types	6089
. voting procedure	6006	Contingency reserves	6020, 6021
Company accounts—primary responsibility of management	6007	. balance-sheet classification	6021, 6033
Comparability, exceptions to	6009	. exclusion of charges and credits from determination of net income	6030
Comparative financial statements		. no costs or losses chargeable thereto	6021
. exceptions to comparability	6009	. no transfers therefrom to income	6021, 6030
. identification of statements covered in scope of report	6009	. not to be used to relieve income of future years	6020, 6021
. in connection with renegotiation	6045	Contingent assets (see Contingencies)	
. limitations of single statements	6008, 6009	Contingent liabilities (see Contingencies)	
. reclassifications of prior figures	6009	Contracts	
. repeating footnotes, explanations, and accountants' qualifications re prior figures	6009	. general rule for recognizing profits	6042
Compensation (see Pension plans and Stock option and stock purchase plans)		. long-term, provision for income taxes on deferred profits	6040
Completed contract method	6071, 6072	. partial performance (see also Government contracts)	6041, 6042, 6046
Conservatism	6022, 6057	Contracts, Government	
Consistency from year to year		. cost-plus-fixed-fee	6041-6044
. comparative statements	6009	. renegotiation	6044, 6045
. inventory pricing	6017	. termination	6045-6049
Consolidated financial statements	6091-6096	(see also under these headings)	
. combined statements	6094	Copyrights (see also Intangible assets)	6019
. consolidation policy	6091, 6095	Corporate readjustment (see Quasi-reorganization)	
. disclosure of	6091	Corporation accounting, separate entity concept	6023, 6024
. consolidation procedure	6091	Cost	
. earned surplus of subsidiary at date of acquisition	6007, 6092	. allocation of, in lump-sum purchases	6018-6020
. elimination of intercompany investments allocation of, through depreciation or amortization	6019, 6020, 6031-6035
. cost in excess of parent's equity	6020, 6092	. as applied to inventories	
. cost less than parent's equity	6092, 6095	. acquisition and production	6014
. stock of subsidiary acquired in blocks	6092, 6095	. application of different methods to different parts	6015
. foreign subsidiaries	6050	. approximate	6015
. income statement		. average	6012, 6015
. subsidiary acquired during the year	6092, 6093	. definition	6014, 6015
. subsidiary disposed of during the year	6093	. departure from, when utility is below cost	6015
. income taxes		. first-in first-out (Fifo)	6012, 6015
. allocation	6093	. flow of cost factors	6015
. earnings of subsidiary	6093	. identification of specific items	6015
. intercompany profit eliminations	6092	. is primary basis	6014
. minority interests		. last-in first-out (Lifo)	6012, 6015, 6018
. intercompany profit elimination	6093	. of goods previously written down	6014
. losses	6093	. recoverable	6018
. mutual stockholdings	6093	. replacement	6016, 6018
. parent company statement	6094	. reversed mark-up—retail inventory method	6015, 6016
. purpose of	6091	. selection of basis	6015
. quasi-reorganization, earned surplus in	6022	. standard	6015
. stock dividends of subsidiary	6093	. uniformity within a given industry desirable	6015
. unconsolidated subsidiaries	6093, 6094		
. disclosures	6094		

Cost—continued

as applied to inventories—continued	
when higher basis recognized	6017, 6018
work in process and finished goods	
(see also <i>Inventory pricing</i>)	6015
definition	6014, 6015, 6019
non-cash acquisitions	6019
departure from, in relation to inventories	6015
depreciation and high costs	6031, 6032
depreciation based on	6031-6033, 6065, 6067
excessive or abnormal	6030-6033
factors, flow of	6015
generally accepted basis of accounting	
for assets, at cost when acquired	6019
for fixed assets	6031-6033
for intangibles	6019
for inventories	6014
matching against revenue	6014, 6015, 6021, 6046
non-cash acquisitions	6019
of compensation	
pension plans	6052
stock option and stock purchase plans	6053-6055
Cost factors, flow of	6015
Cost or market, whichever is lower	6016-6018
how applied in pricing inventories	6016, 6017
necessitates shifting of income	6018
synonymous with <i>lower of cost or market</i>	6016
Cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts	6041-6044
custodianship responsibility for Government materials	6042
delivery may not have usual significance	6043
fees on partial performance	
amounts includible in income	6041, 6043
unbilled—how classified	6041, 6043, 6044
when includible in income	6041, 6042, 6046
major accounting problems	6042-6044
nature and general provisions of	6041, 6042
offsetting advances and other items	6041, 6044
reimbursable costs and fees, inclusion in or exclusion from sales	6041-6043
revolving fund	6042, 6044
title to materials	6042
unbilled costs and fees, how classified in balance sheet	6041, 6043, 6044
Costs, expenses, losses, and profits other than from capital stock transactions—desirability of inclusion over the years in determination of income	6009, 6029
Costs, matching against revenues	6014, 6015, 6021, 6046
Credits to surplus	
credit from appreciation—not available for transfer	6033
proceeds of donated stock sold not a credit to surplus	6007
treatment of adjustments arising from transactions in a company's own capital stock (see also <i>Charges and credits to surplus</i>)	6008, 6030
Cumulative effect of immaterial items	6006, 6008
Currency revaluation	6032, 6049-6052
Current assets and current liabilities	6010-6012
circulating assets	6010

Current assets and current liabilities—continued

criteria relating to operating cycle	6010
current assets	
definition	6010
inclusions and exclusions	6011
current liabilities	
definition	6011
inclusions and exclusions	6011, 6012
long-term obligations to provide increased working capital for long periods	6012
one-year interpretation	6010
past definitions overly concerned with immediate realizability	6010
restrictions under terms of bond indentures, credit agreements, and preferred stock agreements	6010
working assets	6010
working capital, definition	6010

Current maturities (see *Funded debt*)

Current operating performance income statement	6028, 6029
---	------------

Current replacement cost, as applied to inventories	6016
--	------

D

Damage, inventory	6016
Dating earned surplus	6023
discontinuance of	6075
Debt discount and expense	
exclusion from current assets	6011
not chargeable immediately to surplus	6057
on bonds discharged, otherwise than by refunding, before maturity—how written off	6030, 6059
on bonds refunded	6057-6059
part of compensation for use of money (see also <i>Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded</i>)	6057
Decline in foreign exchange rates (see <i>Foreign operations and foreign exchange</i>)	

Declining-balance depreciation	6065, 6067-6069
income tax allocation	6065, 6067-6069

Deductions from sales—provision for re-negotiation refund	6045
alternative treatment	6045

Defense contracts (see *Government contracts*)

Deferred charges	
balance-sheet classification	6011
items included which result in tax reductions	6039, 6040

Deferred income—balance-sheet classification	6011
---	------

Deferred income taxes (see *Income taxes*)

Definitions	
all-inclusive income statement	6028
contingencies	6089
cost	6014, 6015, 6019
current assets	6010
current liabilities	6011
current operating performance income statement	6028
depreciation and depreciation accounting	6034
income	6023
inventory	6014

Definitions—continued	
<i>market</i> , as used in phrase, <i>lower of cost or market</i>	6016
net realizable value, in inventory pricing.....	6016
net working capital.....	6010
non-operating gains and losses.....	6027
operating cycle.....	6011
operating income and charges.....	6027
pension plan.....	6077
pooling of interests.....	6081
product charges.....	6015
purchase.....	6081
realizable value.....	6016
stock dividend.....	6023
stock split-up.....	6023
working capital.....	6010
Delivery of goods sold under contract	
may not have usual significance in Government CPFF contracts.....	6043
test of realization of profit or loss.....	6041, 6042, 6046
Departure from accepted procedures	
burden of justifying.....	6006, 6051
cumulative effect of immaterial items (see also Disclosure).....	6006, 6008
Depletion—payments measured by, how classified	6012
Deposit on ten-year lease received as rent for final period—exclusion from current liabilities	6011
Depreciable assets	
exclusion from current assets.....	6011
exclusion from inventory.....	6014
goods and supplies to be used in production of—exclusion from inventory.....	6014
Depreciated currency	6032, 6049-6052
Depreciation	
allocation of cost of productive facilities over useful life.....	6031, 6034
and high costs.....	6031-6033
cost basis generally accepted concept.....	6031
declining-balance.....	6065, 6067-6069
on appreciation.....	6033
on emergency facilities.....	6033-6035
on older facilities whose productive life is shortened by acquisition of emergency facilities.....	6035
sum-of-the-years-digits (see Depreciation, declining-balance).....	
Depreciation accounting	
allocation, not valuation.....	6034
definition.....	6034
Depreciation and high costs	6031-6033
accelerated depreciation where expected life less than normal.....	6031
basic change should await further study.....	6031, 6032
cost basis generally accepted concept.....	6031
excessive costs of property	
immediate write-down disapproved.....	6031
write-down excluded from determination of net income.....	6030
prevailing sentiment of groups consulted.....	6032
provision for replacement of property at higher price levels	
excluded from determination of net income.....	6030-6033
what recognition of current prices would entail.....	6031-6033
Deterioration of inventory	6016
Determination of net income—exclusions from (see also <i>Net income</i>)	6020, 6021, 6029-6033
Devaluation of foreign currency	6050, 6051
Development and research	
deferred costs not includible in current assets.....	6011
in connection with intangibles.....	6020
Differences between taxable and ordinary income (see <i>Income taxes</i>)	
Disclosure	
bonds retired before maturity.....	6059
change in depreciation method.....	6065, 6067
comparative statements	
exceptions to comparability.....	6009
repetition of applicable footnotes, explanations, and qualifications.....	6009
consolidated financial statements	
consolidated policy.....	6091
unconsolidated subsidiaries.....	6094
contingencies.....	6089, 6090
deferred income taxes when not recorded.....	6068
dividends per share.....	6088
earned surplus	
carried forward in combination of interests.....	6027, 6082
dating after quasi-reorganization.....	6023, 6075
earnings per share.....	6085-6087
effect on income of change in basis of pricing inventories.....	6017
emergency facilities—depreciation, amortization, and income taxes—procedures followed.....	6035
foreign operations	
earnings not received in U. S.....	6049
foreign subsidiaries unconsolidated	
investment and carrying basis.....	6050
surplus previously included in consolidated surplus.....	6050
inclusion of foreign items in statements of U. S. companies.....	6049, 6050
income and other taxes	
differences between taxable and ordinary income, and related tax liability.....	6040, 6041
estimated character where amount uncertain.....	6037
when recommended methods of allocation not practicable.....	6040
intangible assets—rate and approval of, and reasons for, amortization of intangibles of indefinite life.....	6020
inventories	
carrying basis.....	6012, 6015, 6017, 6018
change in, and effect on income.....	6017
identification of standard costs.....	6015
when above cost.....	6017, 6018
where practicable, method of determining cost.....	6012
loss from write-down to lower of cost or market.....	6017
net loss on firm purchase commitments.....	6017, 6018
investments—market value when included in current assets.....	6012
long-term construction-type contracts.....	6072
long-term leases.....	6056, 6057
loss representing write-down of inventories to lower of cost or market.....	6017

Disclosure—continued

- material extraordinary charges and credits 6028-6030
 - net income after special items and net income per share—care in designating 6030, 6031
 - net income—clear showing of 6010, 6021, 6030
 - net loss on firm purchase commitments 6017, 6018
 - officers, employees, or affiliated companies, receivables from 6007
 - offset of Government advances by, or against, amounts due on contracts 6041, 6044, 6045, 6048
 - offset of Government securities against Federal income taxes 6012, 6013
 - omission from current liabilities of maturing long-term debt to be refunded 6012
 - pension plans 6077, 6078
 - pooling of interests 6082
 - quasi-reorganization
 - dating of surplus from 6023, 6075
 - estimates, as to assets or liabilities 6022
 - proposed adjustments 6007, 6022
 - renegotiation
 - basis used in determining provision 6044
 - effect of refunds for prior years—possible revision of prior statement 6045
 - uncertainties resulting from possibility of 6044, 6045
 - sale-and-lease transactions 6056, 6057
 - stock dividends and stock split-ups 6024, 6025, 6026
 - stock option and stock purchase plans involving compensation—exercise of options during period and status of plan at close 6055
 - termination claims
 - amount of claims and of advances 6044, 6045, 6047
 - contractor's costs and profit elements included in sales 6045, 6047, 6048
 - relationship of certain liabilities to possible termination claim 6047
 - segregation of claims from claims against other contractors 6047
 - subcontractors' claims not reasonably determinable 6049
 - undeterminable elements, essential facts regarding 6045, 6047, 6049
 - termination loans—cross-reference to claim 6047
 - treasury stock when carried as an asset 6007
 - unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded—method of write-off and segregation of amount 6059
- Discount on bonds**
- compensation for use of money 6057
 - exclusion from current assets 6011
 - not chargeable immediately to surplus 6057
 - how written off 6030, 6059
 - when bonds discharged other than by refunding 6030, 6059
 - when bonds refunded (*see also* Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded) 6057-6059
- Disposal credits, terminated war and defense contracts** 6049
- Distillery—operating cycle** 6011

Distortion

- danger in use as criterion 6028
- effect of extraordinary items (*see also* Material extraordinary charges and credits) 6028-6031

Distribution, division, or severance of assets

6024, 6025, 6026

Dividends

- by subsidiary from surplus at acquisition—not income 6007
- deduction as single item from net income 6030
- on treasury stock, not income 6007
- per share 6085
- stock (*see also* Stock dividends and stock split-ups) 6023-6026

Donated capital stock, nominally issued for property

- not cost of property 6007
- subsequent sale not credit to surplus 6007

Double freight, in pricing inventories 6015**E****Earned surplus**

- appreciation of property—treatment of credit 6033
- appropriations
 - contingency reserves 6020, 6021
 - inventory reserves 6020, 6021
 - replacement of productive facilities at higher levels 6031-6033
- capitalization of
 - after readjustment (*see also* Quasi-reorganization) 6022, 6023
 - stock dividends and stock split-ups (*see also* Stock dividends and stock split-ups) 6024, 6025
 - subsidiary of pooled company 6027, 6082
 - subsidiary's at acquisition 6007
- carried forward in pooling of interests 6027, 6082
- subsidiary of pooled company 6027, 6082
- charges and credits to
 - criteria for 6029, 6030
 - discount on bonds, not immediately chargeable to 6057
 - major loss from currency devaluation 6051
 - over years, desirability of inclusion in net income 6009
 - real and personal property taxes 6037, 6038
- refunded or retired bonds—unamortized discount, premium, etc. 6058, 6059
- renegotiation refunds 6045
- special items at foot of income statement equivalent to 6030
- SEC, Regulation S-X Rule 5-03 6030
- tendency to be overlooked when omitted from income statement 6028
- tendency to restrict narrowly 6005, 6009
- write-off or write-down of intangibles 6020
- not permissible immediately after acquisition 6020
- combined statement of income and earned surplus 6009, 6010
- dating of, after quasi-reorganization 6023, 6075
- discount on bonds—not chargeable 6057
- donated treasury stock nominally issued for property—proceeds 6007

Earned surplus—continued	
in quasi-reorganization	
dating of new earned surplus	6023, 6075
exhaustion before recourse to capital surplus	6022
no consolidated earned surplus survives, if any losses charged to capital surplus (see also Quasi-reorganization)	6022
income and earned surplus	6027-6031
subsidiaries	
foreign	6050
in quasi-reorganization	6022
prior to acquisition	6007
dividend declared from, not a credit to income	6007
substitute term for	6004
taxes attributable to charges and credits to—treatment in statements	6039-6041
transactions in company's own stock	6008, 6030
Earnings per share	6085-6088
calculation	6085
common stock	6085, 6086
comparative statistics	6086, 6087
convertible securities	6086
disclosures	6085-6087
effect of splits	6085, 6086
effect of stock dividends	6086
often given undue prominence	6010, 6030
pooling of interest	6087
pro forma earnings	6087
relate to net income	6030, 6085
retroactive adjustments	6086, 6087
senior securities	6087
single-year computations	6085, 6086
where special items excluded	6030, 6031
Earthquake, losses from	6029
Educational organizations—committee's attention not directed to	6006
Eisner v. Macomber (252 U. S. 189)	6024
Emergency facilities—depreciation, amortization, and income taxes	6033-6035
certificates of necessity	6033, 6034
considerations underlying percentages certified	6033, 6034
period of amortization for tax purposes	6033
depreciation considerations	6034, 6035
useful life governs if materially different from amortization period for tax purposes	6035
recognition of income tax effects when amortization for tax purposes exceeds book amortization	6035
special charge to income for additional amortization in lieu of deferred income taxes	6035
special charge to income for additional taxes (preferred treatment)	6035
credit to deferred taxes	6035
rates to be used	6035
treatment following amortization period	6035
treatment following amortization period	6035
Employees	
loans and advances—when excluded from current assets	6011
receivables from	
segregation	6007
when current asset	6011

Equalization of income	
avoidance of practice that leads to	6027
danger that use of <i>distortion</i> as criterion may accomplish	6028
reserves not to be used to accomplish	6020, 6021
Equipment (see Property and Emergency facilities)	
Equipment trust obligations — payments measured by current transactions (see also Funded debt)	6012
Estimated liabilities	6012, 6037, 6039, 6040, 6044, 6048, 6065, 6067-6069, 6071, 6089
Excess-profits credits	6040
Excess profits, refunds of (see also Renegotiation)	6045
Excess-profits taxes (see Income taxes)	
Excessive or abnormal costs	6030-6033
immediate write-down disapproved	6031
Excessive spoilage, in inventory pricing	6015
Exchange rate (see Foreign operations and foreign exchange)	
Exclusions from determination of net income (see also Net income)	6020, 6021, 6029, 6030, 6031-6033
Extraordinary items excluded from net income (see also Net income)	6029, 6030

F

Facilities	
emergency	6033-6035
productive (see Property)	
Factory lay-out, deferred rearrangement costs—exclusion from current assets	6011
Fair balance sheet, quasi-reorganization	6022
Fair value	
in non-cash acquisitions	6019
in purchase of assets	6026, 6027
of assets carried forward in quasi-reorganization	6022
of non-cash compensation	6054
of stock dividends	6024
of stock under option	6054, 6055
Federal Salary Stabilization Board	6053
Federal taxes on income—payable and accrued	
offset of government securities against	6012, 6013
offset of other assets not acceptable (see also Income taxes)	6013
Fifo method of costing	6012, 6015
Financial statements	
based on allocations	6038
based on <i>going concern</i> concept	6010
combined statement of income and earned surplus	6009, 6010
comparative	6008, 6009
consolidated	6091-6096
income—all inclusive v. current operating performance	6027-6029
income equalization, avoidance of	6027
periodic compilation of inventory	6013
significance and usefulness in relation to inflation	6031-6033

Financial statements—continued

- supplementary, to explain need for retention of earnings (*see also Disclosure*) . . . 6032

First-in first-out method of costing . . . 6012, 6015**Fixed assets**

- accounting based on cost . . . 6031-6033
- effect of recording appraisals . . . 6033
- where stock issued therefor is subsequently donated . . . 6007
- acquired with other assets for lump sum . . . 6019, 6020
- annual appropriations for replacement at higher levels—exclusion from determination of net income . . . 6030-6033
- appraisals . . . 6031-6033
- buy-build-sell-and-lease transactions (*see also Leases, long-term*) . . . 6056, 6057
- emergency facilities . . . 6033-6035
- excessive cost—exclusion of write-off from determination of net income . . . 6030, 6031
- instalment purchase through long-term lease . . . 6057
- materials for construction of—exclusion from inventory . . . 6014
- profits or losses on sale of . . . 6029
- receivables from sale of—classification . . . 6011
- short-term debt arising from acquisition of—classification (*see also Depreciation, Intangible assets and Reserves*) . . . 6011

Flow of cost factors . . . 6015**Footnotes, explanations, and accountants' qualifications—prior year, repeated in comparative statements** . . . 6009**Foreign business (*see Foreign operations and foreign exchange*)****Foreign exchange (*see Foreign operations and foreign exchange*)****Foreign operations and foreign exchange** . . . 6049-6052

- consolidation of foreign subsidiaries . . . 6050
- intercompany profits where unconsolidated subsidiaries—not acceptable practice to include . . . 6050
- currency devaluation, inherent risk . . . 6051
- material losses from . . . 6051
- disclosure . . . 6049
- foreign earnings beyond amounts received in U. S. . . 6049
- foreign subsidiaries unconsolidated . . . 6050
- investment and carrying basis . . . 6050
- surplus previously included in consolidated surplus . . . 6050
- inclusion of foreign items . . . 6049, 6050
- doubtful realization in dollars and known losses, provision for . . . 6049
- earnings from, sound procedure for showing . . . 6049
- exchange losses and gains . . . 6050
- realized . . . 6050
- unrealized . . . 6049-6052
- major devaluations . . . 6051
- suspense account, where gains . . . 6050-6052
- exchange rates used in translation . . . 6050-6052
- capital stock . . . 6051
- current assets . . . 6051
- current liabilities . . . 6051
- depreciation . . . 6051
- dividends . . . 6051
- fixed assets . . . 6050
- inventory . . . 6051
- long-term receivables and payables . . . 6050-6052

Foreign operations and foreign exchange—continued

- exchange rates used in translation—continued . . . 6051
- operating accounts . . . 6050
- permanent investments . . . 6050
- selection of, where more than one . . . 6050
- substantial change, effect of . . . 6050, 6051
- unrealized losses and gains from exchange fluctuations . . . 6049-6052

Foreign subsidiaries . . . 6050**Form of statements**

- combined statements of income and earned surplus . . . 6009, 6010
- comparative financial statements . . . 6008, 6009 (*see under the foregoing headings*)
- income—all-inclusive v. current operating performance . . . 6027-6029
- income presentation—avoidance of practice that leads to income equalization . . . 6027

Franchises—fixed term and perpetual . . . 6019**Freight, double—in pricing inventories** . . . 6015**Funded debt**

- cash to be used for payment of . . . 6011
- current maturities . . . 6011
- discharge, other than by refunding—treatment of discount, etc. . . 6030, 6059
- payments measured by current transactions . . . 6012
- retired or refunded—treatment of discount, etc. (*see also Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded*) . . . 6030, 6057-6059
- serial maturities . . . 6011
- sinking fund provisions—current requirement . . . 6011
- to be refunded . . . 6012

G**Gain**

- income basically a realized gain . . . 6023, 6042
- may not be anticipated (*see also Profit and Income*) . . . 6007, 6017

Gain or loss

- non-operating and operating gains and losses—definition . . . 6027
- on stock dividend sold (*see also Profit and Income*) . . . 6024

General and administrative expenses

- exclusion from inventory costs . . . 6015
- long-term construction-type contracts . . . 6072

General contingency reserves (*see also Contingency reserves*) . . . 6020, 6021**Going concern concept**

- financial statements based on . . . 6010
- income statement based on . . . 6027

Going value . . . 6019**Gold—inventory pricing** . . . 6017**Goodwill (*see Intangible assets*)****Government contracts** . . . 6041-6049

- cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts . . . 6041-6044
- price redetermination . . . 6044
- renegotiation . . . 6044, 6045
- terminated war and defense contracts . . . 6045-6049 (*see under the foregoing headings*)

Government securities—offset against Federal tax liabilities	6012, 6013
Guarantees	
long-term.....	6012
servicing and repairs.....	6012
under long-term leases.....	6056, 6057

H

High costs	
and depreciation.....	6031-6033
annual appropriations in contemplation of.....	6030
excessive costs of fixed assets.....	6030, 6031

I

Identified cost, in inventory pricing	6015
Idle facility expense, in inventory pricing	6015
Immaterial items	
cumulative effect.....	6008
dealt with as expediency suggests.....	6006
Impairment of significance of net income	6020-6022, 6029-6031, 6045, 6051
Income	
<i>all-inclusive and current operating performance</i> concepts.....	6028, 6029
arbitrary shifting through use of reserves.....	6020, 6021
basically a realized gain.....	6023, 6042
completed contract method.....	6071, 6072
depreciation on appreciation chargeable to.....	6033
disclosure of effect of change in basis of pricing inventory.....	6017
equalization	
avoidance of practice that leads to.....	6027
danger that use of <i>distortion</i> as a criterion may accomplish.....	6028
reserves should not be used to accomplish.....	6020, 6021
estimates and assumptions enter into determination of.....	6027
general concepts.....	6027, 6028
inclusion of refund claims based on carry-back and carry-forwards.....	6040, 6041
long-run.....	6009, 6017, 6027
of corporation not income to stockholder.....	6023-6026
on stock dividends sold.....	6024
<i>operating and non-operating</i> — general definition.....	6027
payments on indebtedness measured by collection of—how classified.....	6012
percentage of completion.....	6071, 6072
proper determination through matching costs against revenues.....	6014, 6015, 6021, 6046
provisions for taxes on (<i>see also</i> Income taxes).....	6038-6040
stock dividends.....	6023-6026
transactions in corporation's own stock.....	6008, 6030
when it accrues (<i>see also</i> Net income).....	6007, 6017, 6023, 6024, 6042, 6044
Income and earned surplus	6027-6031
combined statement of.....	6009, 6010
Income-earning capacity	6009, 6029
Income per share (<i>see</i> Earnings per share)	

Income statement

affected by estimates and assumptions.....	6027
<i>all-inclusive</i>	6028, 6029
arguments advanced against.....	6028, 6029
claims of proponents.....	6028
defined.....	6028
allocation of income taxes.....	6038-6041
and tax return, differences between.....	6038, 6039
avoidance of <i>equalization</i> an important objective.....	6027
based on <i>going concern</i> concept.....	6027
combined with earned surplus statement.....	6009, 6010
comparative.....	6008, 6009
<i>current operating performance</i>	6028, 6029
arguments advanced against.....	6028
claims of proponents.....	6028, 6029
defined.....	6028
general concepts.....	6009, 6010, 6028
importance attached to.....	6005, 6009, 6017, 6028, 6057
<i>operating and non-operating</i> income and charges.....	6027
periodic compilation of inventory.....	6013
possible revision for major retroactive renegotiation refunds.....	6045
tentative instalment in long-time financial results (<i>see also</i> Financial statements, Income, and Net income).....	6009, 6021
Income taxes	6038-6041
accepted procedures may differ from tax requirements.....	6034
allocation	
as additional amortization or depreciation.....	6035, 6067
declining-balance depreciation.....	6065, 6067-6069
emergency facilities.....	6035
general concepts.....	6038, 6039
instalment sales.....	6040
long-term contracts.....	6040, 6041
methods of applying allocation principle	
charges to surplus.....	6039, 6041
computation of tax effect.....	6039
credits to surplus.....	6039
deferred-charge and estimated liability accounts.....	6039-6041, 6058
regulated industries.....	6067, 6068
special treatment when recommended methods not practicable.....	6040
unrealized appreciation of securities.....	6041
carry-backs.....	6040
carry-forwards.....	6040, 6041
combined with renegotiation refunds.....	6045
consolidated financial statements.....	6093
disclosure of differences between taxable and ordinary income.....	6040, 6041
instalment sales, deferred profits.....	6040, 6041
investments, unrealized appreciation.....	6041
long-term contracts, deferred profits.....	6040, 6041
payable and accrued	
inclusion in current liabilities.....	6011
offset of Government securities.....	6012, 6013
offset of other assets.....	6013
prior-year.....	6029, 6039-6041
reduction arising from write-off of discount, premium, etc., in refunding operations.....	6039, 6040, 6057, 6058
special charge—emergency facilities.....	6035
credit to deferred taxes.....	6035
rates to be used.....	6035

Income taxes—continued

- special charge—emergency facilities—continued
- .. treatment following emergency..... 6035
- special charge or credit to income in lieu of..... 6035, 6039-6041

Inflation, in relation to replacement of plant facilities 6020, 6021, 6030-6033**Instalment or deferred receivables—when includible in current assets**..... 6011**Instalment purchase of property through long-term lease arrangement**..... 6057**Instalment sales**

- income taxes on deferred profits... 6040, 6041
- receivables—classification 6011

Insurance prepaid—classification 6011**Intangible assets (acquired through issuance of securities or purchased for cash)**..... 6018-6020

- amortization 6019, 6020
- discretionary 6019
- classification 6018, 6019
- cost, in non-cash acquisitions..... 6019
- excess of cost of stock of subsidiary over net assets at acquisition... 6019, 6020, 6092
- initial carrying amount..... 6019
- limitation on write-off..... 6020
- mixed with tangibles..... 6019, 6020
- purchase of subsidiary's stock or basket purchase of assets..... 6020
- segregation of those with limited life..... 6020
- total or partial loss of value..... 6019, 6020
- with limited term of existence
- .. amortization over period benefited..... 6019
- .. partial write-down 6019, 6020, 6029, 6030
- with no limited term of existence
- .. amortization, when appropriate..... 6019, 6020
- .. discretionary 6019
- .. disclosures regarding amortization..... 6020
- .. shareholders' or directors' approval..... 6020
- .. write-downs and write-offs..... 6020, 6029, 6030

Intercompany profits — unconsolidated foreign subsidiaries 6050, 6093, 6094**Interest prepaid, classification**..... 6011**Interim billings (see Long-term construction-type contracts)****Inventories**

- carrying basis (see Inventory pricing)
- definition 6014
- disclosure
- .. carrying basis 6012, 6015, 6017, 6018
- .. loss from write-down to lower of cost or market..... 6017
- .. net losses on firm purchase commitments 6017, 6018
- .. when above cost..... 6017, 6018
- .. where practicable, method of determining cost 6012
- exclusion of depreciable assets or goods which, when used, are so classified..... 6014
- inclusion in current assets..... 6010, 6011
- major objective of accounting for..... 6014
- matching costs against revenues..... 6014
- non-commercial businesses 6014
- obsolescence or deterioration..... 6016, 6020
- oil producers—operating materials and supplies treated as inventories..... 6014
- periodic compilation necessary..... 6013
- perpetual inventory records..... 6013

Inventories—continued

- primary basis of accounting is cost.... 6014, 6015
- public utilities 6014
- reserves
- .. for losses feared or expected... 6020, 6021, 6030
- .. for pricing according to accounting principles 6021
- retained in termination of war and defense contracts 6046, 6048, 6049
- retired depreciable asset held for sale..... 6014
- to be used in producing long-term assets..... 6014
- trading concern 6014
- Inventory pricing**..... 6013-6018
- abnormal idle facility expense, spoilage, freight, rehandling cost, etc. 6015
- above cost 6007, 6016-6018
- agricultural products 6018
- conditions which justify..... 6017, 6018
- disclosure 6017, 6018
- minerals 6018
- packing-house industry 6007
- precious metals, gold, silver..... 6017
- application of chapter to mercantile and manufacturing companies 6014
- balanced quantities 6017
- consistency from year to year..... 6017
- disclosure of significant change and of effect on income..... 6017
- cost
- .. acquisition and production..... 6014
- .. application of different methods to different parts of inventory..... 6015
- .. approximate 6015
- .. average 6012, 6015
- .. definition 6014, 6015
- .. departure from cost when utility is below cost 6015
- .. first-in first-out (Fifo)..... 6012, 6015
- .. flow of cost factors..... 6015
- .. identification of specific lots..... 6015
- .. is primary basis..... 6014
- .. last-in first-out (Lifo)..... 6012, 6015
- .. of goods previously written down..... 6014
- .. recoverable 6018
- .. replacement 6016, 6018
- .. reversed mark-up — retail inventory method 6015, 6016
- .. selection of basis..... 6015
- .. standard 6015
- .. uniformity within an industry..... 6015
- .. when higher basis recognized..... 6017, 6018
- .. work in process and finished goods..... 6015
- cost or market, whichever is lower (see lower of cost or market, below)
- disclosure
- .. carrying basis 6012, 6015, 6017, 6018
- .. change in basis and effect on income..... 6017
- .. identification of standard costs..... 6015
- .. when above cost..... 6017, 6018
- .. where practicable, method of determining cost 6012
- .. loss representing write-down to lower of cost or market..... 6017
- .. net losses on firm purchase commitments 6018
- .. lower of cost or market..... 6015-6018
- .. applied to items or totals..... 6016, 6017
- .. costs of completion and disposal..... 6016
- .. should be applied realistically..... 6016
- .. synonymous with cost or market, whichever is lower..... 6016
- market
- .. definition 6016

Inventory pricing—continued	
market—continued	
when not appropriate	6016, 6017
overheads—inclusions and exclusions	6015
primary basis is cost	6014
realizable value	6016
reserve for future decline	6021
selling price	6007, 6016-6018
work in process and finished goods	6015
Inventory reserves	6020, 6021, 6030
for losses feared or expected	6020, 6021, 6030
for pricing according to accounting principles	6021
Investment companies—provision for income taxes on unrealized appreciation	6041
Investments	
made for purposes of control, etc.	6011
marketable securities included in current	
carrying basis not to exceed market	6012
disclosure of market	6012
stock dividends and split-ups received	6023, 6024
allocation of cost	6024
subsidiaries	
dividend on, from surplus at acquisition	6007
excess of cost over net assets at acquisition (see <i>Intangible assets</i>)	
exclusion from current assets	6011
foreign (see <i>Foreign operations and foreign exchange</i>)	
unrealized appreciation booked by investment companies, provision for income taxes on	6041
Issue costs, on bonds retired or refunded	6057-6059
Items which are equivalent of cash	6010

L

Land and other natural resources	6011
Land not acquired for resale—profits or losses on sale of	6029
Last-in first-out method of costing	6012, 6015, 6018
Leases (see also <i>Intangible assets</i>)	6019
Leases, long-term	
advance receipt of rental for final period of ten-year lease	6011
bonus payments under	6011
buy-build-sell-and-lease transaction	6056
disclosure in financial statements of lessees	6056, 6057
as to rentals	6056
as to sale-and-lease transaction	6056
guarantees under	6056
liabilities under	6056, 6057
not applicable to oil and gas leases	6056
SEC Regulation S-X, Rule 3-18(b)	6056
where in substance a purchase	6057
period used as criterion	6056
prospective fair value of property	6057
rentals	
declining	6056
for similar properties	6057
used as means of financing	6056
Legal capital	6024, 6025
Liabilities, current	6010-6012

Liabilities, estimated (see <i>Estimated liabilities</i>)	
Liabilities under long-term leases	6056, 6057
Licenses (see also <i>Intangible assets</i>)	6019
Life insurance policies	
cash surrender value—exclusion from current assets	6011
loans on—classification	6011, 6012
Life method of costing	6012, 6015, 6018
Limitation of charges to earned surplus	6005, 6009, 6029, 6030, 6045, 6058
Liquidation concept	6010
Loans and advances to affiliates, officers, or employees—when not current assets	6011
Loans payable	
long-term	
payments measured by current transactions	6012
to provide increased working capital for long periods	6012
on life insurance policies—classification	6011, 6012
on termination claims—classification	6045, 6047
short-term obligations—classification	6011
Long-term construction-type contracts	6071-6073
completed contract method	6071, 6072
estimated losses	6071, 6072
excess of accumulated billings over related costs	6072, 6073
excess of accumulated costs over billings	6072, 6073
general and administrative expenses	6072
income taxes of deferred profits	6040, 6041
interim billing	6071
percentage of completion method (see also <i>Government contracts</i>)	6042, 6043, 6071, 6072
Long-term debt	
cash to be used for payment of	6011
retirement or refunding (see also <i>Funded debt and Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded</i>)	6057-6059
Long-term deferments of delivery of goods or services	6011
Long-term leases (see <i>Leases, long-term</i>)	
Long-term obligation	
periodic payments measured by current transactions—how classified	6012
serial maturities—classification	6011
to provide increased working capital for long periods (see also <i>Funded debt</i>)	6012
Long-term warranties—classifications	6011
Loss or gain	
not included in income statement	6038-6041
on foreign exchange	6050
on stock dividends sold	6024
operating and non-operating, general definition (see also <i>Profit and Income</i>)	6027
Losses	
anticipated contingencies	6089, 6090
in foreign operations	6049, 6050
currency devaluation	6051
in quasi-reorganization	6022
in utility of intangibles	6019, 6020
long-term construction-type contracts	6071, 6072
of a type not usually insured against	6029
on firm purchase commitments—recognition and separate disclosure	6017, 6018

Losses—continued

- on inventory not on hand or contracted for 6021
- on inventory on hand—deterioration, obsolescence, market decline 6016
- separate disclosure of material write-down market 6017
- on sales of property not acquired for resale and not of type generally dealt in 6029
- time limit for recognition of 6058
- Lower of cost or market** (see **Inventory pricing**)
- Lump-sum payment for tangible and intangible assets** 6018-6020

M

- Machinery not acquired for resale—profits or losses on** 6029
- Maintenance material and parts** 6011
- Management**
 - primary responsibility for accounts 6007
 - representations as to increased value of property 6033
 - representations as to stock dividends and stock split-ups 6025
 - responsibility of providing for replacement of plant 6031, 6032
 - use of supplementary financial schedules, explanations or footnotes, to explain need for retention of earnings 6032
- Mark-downs, as applied to inventories** 6016
- Market**
 - definition, as used in phrase *lower of cost or market* 6016
 - effect of stock dividends on 6024, 6025
- Market value of temporary investments, disclosure** 6012
- Marketable securities**
 - unrealized appreciation taken up by investment companies—income taxes on 6041
 - when included in current assets
 - carrying basis not above market 6012
 - disclosure of market 6012
- Matching costs against applicable revenues** 6014, 6015, 6021, 6046
- Material differences between taxable and book income** (see **Income taxes**)
- Material extraordinary charges and credits**
 - charges tend to exceed credits 6028
 - disclosure 6028-6030
 - exclusion from net income 6029, 6030
 - specific examples (see also **Net income**) 6037, 6038, 6040, 6041, 6045, 6051, 6058, 6059
 - tendency to be overlooked when omitted from income statement 6028
- Materiality**
 - opinions apply only to items material and significant 6006
 - opinions apply to group of items whose cumulative effect is material and significant (see also **Material extraordinary charges and credits**) 6006, 6008
- Merchandise or stock on hand** 6010, 6011

Merger

- legal designation as, not controlling factor in differentiation of purchase from pooling of interests (see also **Business combinations**) 6026
- Mineral products—inventory pricing** 6018
- Misleading statements and inferences**
 - reduction of income through provisions for reserves not chargeable thereto 6020, 6021
 - through including material extraordinary or prior-year items in income 6028-6030, 6038-6041, 6045, 6051, 6058, 6059
- Moving expenses deferred** 6011
- Municipalities—committee's attention not directed to** 6006

N

- Necessity, certificates of** 6033, 6034
- Net income**
 - concept, differences of opinion as to most useful 6028
 - deduction of the single item of dividends not subject to misconception 6030
 - depreciation on appreciation, included in determination of 6033
 - desirability, over years, of comprehending all profits and losses 6009, 6010, 6029
 - disclosure of effect of change in basis of pricing inventory 6017
 - effect of accelerated amortization of emergency facilities and deferment of income taxes 6035
 - effect of stock option and stock purchase plans involving compensation 6053-6055
 - estimated character of 6027
 - exclusion from determination of 6020, 6021, 6029, 6030
 - appropriations of replacement of property at higher levels 6030-6033
 - items always excluded 6021, 6030
 - material extraordinary items 6029, 6030
 - alternative methods of presentation 6030, 6031
 - committee's preference 6030, 6031
 - disclosure 6028-6031
 - net income and net income after special items—care in designating 6030, 6031
 - per share income, where excluded items 6030, 6031
 - SEC Regulation S-X, item 17, Rule 5-03 6030
 - specific examples 6037, 6038, 6040, 6041, 6045, 6051, 6058, 6059
 - write-downs of excessive costs of property 6030-6033
 - general concepts 6027, 6028
 - impairment of significance 6020-6022, 6029, 6031, 6038-6041, 6045, 6051
 - income taxes, treatment of (see **Income taxes**)
 - indiscriminate use of term 6027, 6030
 - per share
 - often given undue prominence 6010, 6030
 - recommendations re presentation 6030, 6085-6088
 - presumption that all items of profit and loss recognized during year are used 6029
 - proprietary concept 6028
 - responsibility to determine by sound methods and show clearly 6010, 6021
 - shifting, through reserve provisions not chargeable to revenue (see also **Income**) 6020, 6021

Net realizable value, inventory pricing	6016
Net working capital	6010
New York Stock Exchange	
committee on stock list	6003
correspondence <i>re</i> profits or losses on treasury stock	6008
recommendations to	6004, 6007
No-cost settlements	6046, 6049
Non-operating gain or loss—definition	6027
Non-profit institutions—committee's attention not directed to	6006
Non-recurring income credits and charges	6027, 6028
Non-retroactivity of opinions	6006
Notes payable	
on termination claims	6045, 6047
short-term obligations	6011
Notes receivable	
arising from unusual transactions	6011
instalment or deferred	6011
officers, employees, and affiliates—separate disclosure	6007
when includible in current assets	6011

O

Obsolescence—inventory	6016
Officers' accounts, notes, and loans receivable	
separate disclosure	6007
when excluded from current assets	6011
when included in current assets	6011
Offsetting assets and liabilities	
against Federal taxes on income	
Government securities	6012, 6013
other assets, including cash—not acceptable practice	6013
general principle regrading	6012
Government contracts	
loans not to be offset	6045, 6047
subcontractors' claims and liabilities therefor—alternative treatment	6048, 6049
various items	6041, 6042, 6044, 6045, 6048
Oil producers, operating materials and supplies	6014
One-year concept of current assets and current liabilities	6010
no clearly defined operating cycle	6011
Operating and non-operating income and charges—definition	6027
Operating cycle	
definition	6011
when one-year period used	6011
Operating supplies	
inclusion in current assets	6011
oil producers, treated as inventory	6014
Opinions	
auditors	
<i>re</i> comparative statements—specification of scope	6009
responsibility for clear expression of opinion, exceptions, etc.	6007
prior	
consideration of, by committee	6006
<i>re</i> profits on losses on treasury stock	6008
rules adopted by membership	6007
solicited (<i>see also</i> Committee opinions)	6006, 6032

Options	
in long-term leases	6056, 6057
stock	6053-6055
Organization costs (<i>see</i> Intangible assets)	
Overhead	
in inventory pricing	
general and administrative expenses excluded, except portion clearly related to production	6015
not acceptable procedure to exclude all	6015
selling expenses excluded	6015
sundry items	6015
Ownership, change in—evidence of purchase rather than pooling of interests	6026

P

Packinghouse industry—inventory valuation	6007
Parent company	
dividend from surplus of subsidiary at acquisition	6007
financial statements	6094
Patents (<i>see also</i> Intangible assets)	6019
Payables	
incurred for materials or in providing services for sale	6011
termination loans—presentation (<i>see also</i> Accounts payable and Funded debt)	6045, 6047
Pension plans	
accounting for cost of	6077-6079
accrual of costs	6077, 6078
annuity costs based on past service	6052, 6077, 6078
benefits expected	6052
chargeable to current and future periods	6052
not chargeable to surplus	6052
reserves previously provided	6052
written off prior to issuance of opinion	6052
definition of	6077
determination of costs	6077
disclosures	6077, 6078
minimum liability	6078
past service costs	6052, 6077, 6078
Percentage of completion	6042, 6043, 6071, 6072
Period charges	6015
Periodic net income	6005, 6017, 6027, 6033
Periodic payments (<i>see</i> Funded debt)	
Perpetual franchises (<i>see</i> Intangible assets)	
Perpetual inventory records	6013
Plant (<i>see</i> Property, and Leases, long-term)	
Plant costs, excessive—write-offs	6030, 6031
Pooling of interests (<i>see</i> Business combinations)	
Precious metals—inventory pricing	6017
Premium on bond issues retired or refunded (<i>see also</i> Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded)	6030, 6057-6059
Prepaid expenses—when included in current assets	6011
Price index	6033

Price level

- in relation to inventory.....6015-6018, 6020, 6021, 6051
- in relation to replacement of plant facilities6030-6033

Price redetermination, Government contracts

-6044

Pricing of inventories (see also Inventory pricing)

-6013-6018

Prior opinions (see Opinions)**Prior-year**

- charges and credits
- desirability of inclusion in net income over the years.....6009, 6010, 6029
- inclusion in net income, unless material6029
- income taxes6039-6041
- real and personal property taxes.....6037, 6038
- earnings, restatement where major re-negotiation refunds6045
- figures in comparative statements.....6008, 6009

Product charges

-6015

Production cost, as applied to inventories

-6014

Productive facilities (see Property)**Professional firms—committee's attention not directed to**

-6006

Profit

- deferred, on long-term contracts—provision for income taxes.....6040, 6041
- on foreign exchange—unrealized.....6050
- on sales of property6029
- on stock dividend subsequently sold.....6024
- on treasury stock sold6008
- when accruable under partial performance of contract6041-6046, 6071, 6072
- when deemed to be realized.....6007, 6017, 6042, 6044-6046
- exception in certain industries (see also Income)6007

Profit margin, in pricing inventories

-6016

Property

- accounting based on cost6033
- effect of recording appraisals6033
- where stock issued therefor is subsequently donated6007
- acquired with other assets for lump sum6019, 6020
- annual appropriations for replacement at higher levels6030-6033
- appraisals6031-6033
- depreciation on appreciation6033
- buy-build-sell-and-lease transactions (see also Leases, long-term)6056, 6057
- depreciation and high costs6031-6033
- depreciation on appreciation6033
- emergency facilities6033-6035
- excessive or abnormal costs—write-off
- excluded from determination of net income6030
- immediate write-off disapproved6031
- instalment purchase through long-term lease6057
- long-term leases6056, 6057
- materials for construction of—exclusion from inventory6014
- profits or losses on sale of6029
- receivables from sale of6011
- short-term debt from acquisition of.....6011

Property obligations

- payments measured by depletion6012
- short-term6011

Proprietary concept of net income

-6028

Pro rata profit on contracts

-6042, 6043

Purchase commitments, net losses on—

- recognition and separate disclosure.....6018

Purchase of a business (see Business combinations)**Purchase of capital stock by employees**

-6053-6055

Q**Qualifications, footnotes, and explanations, prior-year, repeated in comparative statements**

-6009

Quasi-reorganization or corporate readjustment

-6022, 6023
- application of section6022, 6023
- approval of stockholders6007, 6023
- disclosure
- dating of surplus6023, 6075
- estimates6022
- to shareholders6007, 6022
- effective date6023
- establishment and dating of new earned surplus account6023, 6075
- exclusion of adjustments from determination of net income6030
- exhaustion of earned surplus before recourse to capital surplus6022
- later adjustments6022
- procedure after readjustment6023
- procedure in arriving at fair and not unduly conservative balance sheet.....6022, 6023
- procedure in readjustment.....6007, 6022, 6023
- subsequent accounting similar to that appropriate for new company6023

R**Readjustment (see Quasi-reorganization)****Real and personal property taxes**

-6036-6038
- accounting treatment6011, 6036, 6037
- basis most acceptable6037
- disclosure of estimated character6037
- in financial statements.....6011, 6037, 6038
- legal liability6036

Realizable value

- current assets6012
- in inventory pricing6016

Rearrangement of factory layout—deferred cost

-6011

Receivables

- arising from unusual transactions6011
- instalment or deferred6011
- officers, employees, and affiliates—separate disclosure6007
- when includible in current assets6011

Recoverable cost, as applied to inventories

-6018

Redemption premium on bonds refunded

-6057-6059

Redetermination of prices under Govern-

- ment contracts6044

- Reduction of inventory to market—segregation of substantial and unusual write-down from cost of goods sold**..... 6017
- Refunding of long-term debt—exclusion from current liabilities of maturing debt to be refunded (see also Unamortized discount, etc., on bonds refunded)**..... 6012
- Refunds of excessive profits**..... 6045
- Refunds under Government contracts (see Renegotiation)**
- Regulated industries**
 deferred income taxes..... 6068
 intercompany profit elimination..... 6092
- Rehandling costs, in inventory pricing**..... 6015
- Religious organizations—committee's attention not directed to**..... 6006
- Renegotiation**..... 6044, 6045
 disclosure of uncertainties
 in addition to provision..... 6044
 when no estimate possible..... 6044
 provision for probable refunds..... 6044
 inclusion in current liabilities..... 6044
 possible disclosure of basis..... 6044
 treatment in income statement
 alternative treatment—separate charge, separate from or in combination with taxes on income..... 6045
 deduction from sales, preferred treatment..... 6045
 refunds for prior years..... 6045
 difference between provision and actual—accounting treatment..... 6045
 revision of prior year's statement..... 6045
- Rent**
 disclosures, long-term leases..... 6056, 6057
 payable—classification..... 6011
 payments on indebtedness measured by collection of—how classified..... 6012
 prepaid—classification..... 6011
 received for final period of ten-year lease, not current..... 6011
- Reorganization, corporate (see also Quasi-reorganization)**..... 6007, 6022, 6023
- Replacement cost**
 in inventory pricing..... 6016, 6018
 of productive facilities
 annual appropriations for replacement at higher levels—exclusion from determination of net income..... 6030-6033
 as depreciation basis..... 6031-6033
 write-off of excessive costs..... 6030-6033
- Representations by management**
 as to increased valuation of plant—effect on depreciation and income determination..... 6033
 as to stock split-ups and stock dividends—effect on accounting..... 6024, 6025
- Reproduction cost, in inventory pricing**..... 6016
- Research and development**
 deferred costs not includible in current assets..... 6011
 in connection with development and maintenance of intangibles..... 6019, 6020
- Reserves**
 contingency..... 6020, 6021
 balance-sheet classification..... 6021, 6033
 exclusion of charges and credits from determination of net income..... 6021, 6030
 no costs or losses chargeable..... 6021
 no transfers to income..... 6021, 6030
 not to be used to relieve income of future years..... 6020, 6021
- Reserves—continued**
 depreciation (see Depreciation and high costs and Emergency facilities)
 estimated or accrued liabilities
 effect of charges thereto on tax allocation..... 6038-6040
 inclusion in current liabilities..... 6012
 estimates of indeterminate losses, in re-adjustment..... 6022
 future taxes..... 6035, 6040
 inventory
 for losses feared or expected..... 6020, 6021, 6030
 for pricing according to accounting principles..... 6021
 not to be used for the purpose of equalizing income..... 6020, 6021
 pension..... 6052
 replacement of property at higher levels
 classification..... 6033
 provision excluded from determination of net income..... 6030, 6031, 6033
 uncollectible accounts..... 6012
 unearned discounts..... 6012
 unused portion, transfer of..... 6029, 6030, 6038
- Responsibility**
 of auditor, respecting opinion..... 6007
 of management
 for company accounts..... 6007
 re retention of earnings..... 6030, 6031
 to determine income by sound methods and to show it clearly..... 6010, 6021
- Retail method, in inventory pricing**..... 6015, 6016
- Retirement of capital stock—profits or losses on**..... 6008
- Retirement of long-term debt—maturing debt to be refunded not current liability (see also Debt discount and expense)**..... 6012
- Retroactivity of opinions**..... 6006, 6068
- Revenues, payments on indebtedness measured by—how classified**..... 6012
- Reversed mark-up, in inventory pricing**..... 6015
- Revolving fund, CPFF contracts**..... 6042, 6044
- Rights subscription**..... 6053-6055
- Riots, losses resulting from**..... 6029
- Royalties—balance-sheet classification**
 accrued liability..... 6011
 prepaid..... 6011
- Rules adopted by membership**..... 6007
 Amplification of Rule No. 2..... 6022, 6023

S

- Salaries and wages accrued**..... 6011
- Sale of capital stock to employees**..... 6053-6055
- Scientific organizations—committee's attention not directed to**..... 6006
- Scope of accountant's report—specifying, in comparative statements**..... 6009
- Secret processes (see also Intangible assets)**..... 6019
- Securities (see Investments)**
- Securities and Exchange Commission**..... 6030, 6056
- Sell-and-lease transactions**..... 6056, 6057
- Selling expenses—not part of inventory costs**..... 6015

- Selling price**
 . disclosure 6017, 6018
 . pricing inventory at 6007, 6016-6018
- Separate entity concept of corporation accounting** 6023, 6024
- Serail maturities (see Funded debt)**
- Servicing of products—inclusion of estimated liability in current liabilities** 6012
- Shifting of profits (see Equalization)**
- Short-term debts from acquisition of capital assets—inclusion in current liabilities** 6011
- Silver—inventory pricing** 6017
- Sinking funds**
 . cash to be used for payment of 6011
 . obligation for payments—inclusion in current liabilities 6011
- Sixteenth Amendment** 6024
- Special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges** 6008
- Special items excluded from net income (see Net income)**
- Spoilage, in inventory pricing** 6015
- Standard costs—adjustment to other basis** 6015
- Stated capital—pooling of interests** 6027
- Statements—(see Financial statements)**
- Stock dividends and stock split-ups** 6023-6026
 . as to issuer
 . . capitalization of earned surplus
 . . . amount
 . . . fair value of shares issued 6024, 6025
 . . . in excess of legal requirements
 . . . factors affecting need for 6024, 6025
 . . . legal requirements 6024, 6025
 . . . percentage and probable effect on market 6024, 6025
 . . . recurring split-ups 6025
 . . . representations to shareholders 6025
 . . . stock closely held 6025
 . . corporate action
 . . . avoidance of word *dividend*, as to large issuances 6025, 6026
 . . . disclosure 6024, 6025
 . . . issues less than 20-25%
 . . . as distributions of earnings 6024
 . . . effect on market 6024, 6025
 . . . recommendation *re* capitalization of earned surplus 6024, 6025, 6026
 . . . when capitalization of earned surplus not called for 6025, 6026
 . . . legal requirements 6024, 6025
 . . as to recipient 6023, 6024
 . . . allocation of cost 6024
 . . . corporate income not income to shareholder until distributed 6023-6026
 . . . *Eisner vs. Macomber* (252 U. S. 189) 6024
 . . . parent—dividend from subsidiary 6023-6026
 . . . public concept as income 6024
 . . . consolidated financial statements 6093
 . . . stock dividend defined 6023
 . . . stock split-up defined 6023
 . . . stock split-ups 6024, 6025
 . . . stock split-ups in form of dividends—recommended term 6024, 6025
 . . . when dividend becomes split-up 6024, 6025
- Stock (merchandise) on hand** 6010, 6011
- Stock option and stock purchase plans—compensation involved in** 6053-6055
 . disclosure—status of plan and exercise of options during period 6055
 . Federal Salary Stabilization Board, rules and regulations 6053
 . Internal Revenue Code, Section 130A 6053, 6054
 . issuance of stock, accounting for 6055
 . lapse of option—accounting treatment 6056
 . manner of measurement 6054, 6055
 . period over which apportioned 6055
 . rights involving compensation—description 6053
 . rights not involving compensation—description 6053
 . time of measurement 6054, 6055
- Stock rights** 6053-6055
- Stock split-ups** 6023-6026
- Study Group on Business Income** 6032
- Subcontractors' claims** 6048, 6049
- Subscription lists (see also Intangible assets)** 6019
- Subscription rights** 6053-6055
- Sum-of-the-years-digits (see Declining balance depreciation)**
- Supplementary financial schedules, explanations, or footnotes to explain need for retention of earnings** 6032
- Supplies—inclusion in current assets** 6011
- Surplus**
 . appreciation of property—treatment of credit 6033
 . charges and credits to
 . . tendency to restrict 6005, 6009
 . . transactions in company's own stock (see also Charges and credits to surplus) 6008, 6030
 . combined statement of income and 6009, 6010
 . sale of donated stock, treatment 6007
 . substituted term for 6004
 . taxes attributable to charges and credits to (see also Earned surplus, Capital surplus, and Income and earned surplus) 6039-6041
- Surplus reserves (see Reserves: contingency)**
- Suspense account—unrealized gains on foreign exchange** 6050
- T**
- Tax Notes, Treasury—offset of** 6012, 6013
- Tax savings—consideration in granting percentage certificates** 6033, 6034
- Taxable income, when different from book income (see Income taxes)**
- Taxes**
 . balance-sheet classification
 . . accrued 6011, 6037
 . . prepaid (see also Income taxes and Real and personal property taxes) 6011
 . Terminated war and defense contracts 6045-6049
 . . deferred and capitalized items 6047, 6048
 . . determination of claim 6045-6047
 . . formula settlement 6047
 . . profit includible 6047

Terminated war and defense contracts—continued
 . disclosure 6045, 6047, 6048
 . advances deducted 6045, 6047
 . claim, segregation 6045, 6047
 . cost and profit elements accounted for
 in sales 6045, 6047, 6048
 . relationship of advances to possible
 claim 6047
 . segregation from claims against other
 contracts 6047
 . subcontractors' claims not reasonably
 determinable 6049
 . undeterminable elements 6045, 6047, 6049
 . disposal credits 6046, 6049
 . inventory retained 6046, 6048, 6049
 . no-cost settlements 6046, 6049
 . presentation in financial statements 6045-
 6049
 . advances 6045, 6047
 . alternative treatments 6048, 6049
 . before recording claim 6047
 . classification of claim 6045, 6047
 . costs and expenses 6045, 6047, 6048
 . disclosure of claims not reasonably de-
 terminable 6049
 . disposal credits 6046, 6049
 . inventory items, no-cost settlements 6046,
 6049
 . inventory items reacquired 6046, 6048
 . loans 6045, 6047
 . offsets 6041, 6042, 6044, 6045, 6048
 . provision for probable loss 6048
 . subcontractors' claim 6048, 6049
 . when profit accrues 6045, 6046
 . where claims are undeterminable, delay-
 ing financial statements 6047
Termination cost memorandums 6046
Termination loans 6045, 6047
Third persons, collections for account of 6011
Ticket sales—advances 6011
**Time limit for recognition of losses and ex-
 penses 6058**
Tobacco industry—operating cycle 6011
Trade names (see also Intangible assets) 6019
Trade receivables and payables 6011, 6012
Trademarks (see also Intangible assets) 6019
Treasury stock
 . as an asset 6007
 . dividends not income 6007
 . profit or loss on sale 6008, 6030
Treasury Tax Notes 6012, 6013

U

**Unamortized debt discount and expense (see
 Debt discount and expense)**
**Unamortized discount, issue cost, and re-
 demption premium on bonds refunded 6057-
 6059**
 . amortization
 . . accelerated 6058,
 . . over life of new issue unacceptable 6059
 . preferred method 6058, 6059
 . tax reduction 6039, 6040, 6058
 . when life of new issue shorter than
 unexpired life of old 6059

**Unamortized discount, issue cost, and re-
 demption premium on bonds refunded—
 continued**
 . discharge, other than by refunding 6030,
 6059
 . disclosure of method and annual charge 6059
 . public utility 6059
 . write-off 6030, 6058, 6059
 . not to capital surplus 6059
 . tax reduction 6039, 6040, 6058
**Unamortized discount, etc., on funded debt
 retired before maturity 6030, 6059**
**Unbilled costs and fees under contracts (see
 also Government contracts) 6041, 6043,
 6044, 6071**
Uniformity
 . in accounting 6005, 6006
 . in depreciation bases 6031
 . in inventory pricing within industries (see
 also Consistency) 6015
**Uninsured losses of a type not customarily
 insured against 6029**
**United States Government securities—offset
 against Federal income taxes 6012, 6013**
United States Treasury Tax Notes 6012, 6013
**Unrealized appreciation booked by investment
 companies—tax provision 6041**
Unrealized appreciation of property 6033
Unrealized profit 6007, 6017
Unused excess-profits credits 6040, 6041
Unusual sales of assets 6029

V

**Valuation of inventories (see Inventory
 pricing)**
Voting procedure in adopting opinions 6006

W

Wages and salaries accrued—classification 6011
War contracts (see Government contracts)
War losses 6029
Warranties
 . long-term—classification 6011
 . servicing and repairs—classification 6012
 . under long-term leases 6056, 6057
Working assets 6010
Working capital
 . application of Government securities
 against tax liabilities 6012, 6013
 . current assets and current liabilities 6010-6012
 (see under these headings)
Write-off or write-down
 . bond discount, premium, etc. 6030, 6058, 6059
 . excessive or abnormal costs 6030-6033
 . intangibles 6019, 6020, 6030
 . inventory to lower of cost or market—
 separate disclosure of material loss 6017

APB OPINIONS

... the full text of the Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board ...

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APB Op. No.		Page
1	New Depreciation Guidelines and Rules	6503
2	Accounting for the "Investment Credit"	6507
3	The Statement of Source and Application of Funds . .	6511
4	Accounting for the "Investment Credit" (Amending No. 2)	6517
5	Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements of Lessee	6521
6	Status of Accounting Research Bulletins	6527
7	Accounting for Leases in Financial Statements of Lessors	6533
8	Accounting for the Cost of Pension Plans (see page 6539 for separate table of contents)	6539
9	Reporting the Results of Operations (see page 6557 for separate table of contents)	6557
10	Omnibus Opinion—1966	6573
11	Accounting for Income Taxes	6579
12	Omnibus Opinion—1967	6595

APB Opinion No. 1

NEW DEPRECIATION GUIDELINES AND RULES

NOVEMBER, 1962

1. This Interpretive Opinion is an extension of Chapter 10(b) of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43*, "Income Taxes." It concerns accounting problems which may arise in connection with the new Depreciation Guidelines and Rules issued by the United States Treasury Department Internal Revenue Service as Revenue Procedure 62-21, effective July 12, 1962.

2. The service lives suggested in the Guidelines for broad classes of depreciable assets are, in general, appreciably shorter than the individual lives given in Bulletin "F," which was previously used as a guide in the determination of deductible depreciation for income-tax purposes. The Guidelines purport to bring the lives used for income-tax purposes into line with the actual experience of taxpayers, and thereby reduce the areas of controversy as to the amount of deductible depreciation, but not to provide another type of accelerated depreciation.

3. For the first three years, either the new Guideline lives, or lives longer than the Guideline lives, may be used for income-tax purposes without challenge. Lives shorter than those found in the Guidelines may be used if they have previously been established or are justifiable as reflecting the taxpayer's existing or intended retirement and replacement practices. If the "reserve ratio" tests provided in the Procedure subsequently indicate that the lives used for income-tax purposes are not in accordance with actual retirement and replacement practices, the lives may be lengthened in accordance with the "life adjustment" tables provided in the Procedure. If the adjustment is not sufficient to bring tax and actual lives into line, the adjusted lives will then be replaced by lives determined in accordance with all of the facts and circumstances.

4. A taxpayer should carefully review the estimates of useful life of depreciable property adopted for financial accounting purposes, with the objective of conforming them with Guideline lives to the extent that

the latter fall within a reasonable range of estimated useful lives applicable in his business.

5. With exceptions such as those discussed in paragraphs 6 and 7, net income for the period should not be *increased* as the result of the adoption of Guideline lives for income-tax purposes only. Accordingly, where Guideline lives shorter than the lives used for financial accounting purposes are adopted for income-tax purposes, and there is an excess of tax-return depreciation over book depreciation, provision for deferred income taxes should be made with respect to the part of the excess that is attributable to the adoption of Guideline lives, in the same manner as provided by *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)*, "Declining-balance Depreciation," for liberalized depreciation under the Internal Revenue Code of 1954.¹

6. It may happen that a company has used shorter lives for accounting purposes than for tax purposes in the past, and now finds that these lives are longer than the new Guideline lives. If the lives previously used for accounting purposes are still considered reasonable, they presumably will be continued, but Guideline lives might be adopted for tax purposes. Tax-effect accounting should be introduced in this type of case only when the accumulated depreciation for tax purposes exceeds that on the books. In other words, not recording a prepaid income tax while the tax-return lives were longer than the book lives makes it unnecessary to provide for deferred income taxes until depreciation accumulated for tax purposes exceeds that for accounting purposes.¹

7. It may develop that some regulatory authorities having jurisdiction over regulated businesses will prescribe the manner in which the tax effect of the adoption of Guideline lives for income-tax purposes only is to be dealt with for rate-making purposes. Where this is done, the principles set forth in paragraphs 8 and 9 of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)* are applicable.

¹ It is assumed here that the cost or other book value of the property is the same as its tax basis. If it is not, the part of the difference between tax-return depreciation and book depre-

ciation that results from the difference in basis ordinarily should be disregarded in making provision for deferred income taxes.

The Interpretive Opinion entitled "New Depreciation Guidelines and Rules" was unanimously adopted by the twenty members of the Accounting Principles Board, of whom five, Messrs. Bevis, Cannon, Moyer, Powell, and Spacek, assented with qualification.

Messrs. Bevis and Powell assent to the Interpretive Opinion as a logical extension of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)*, "Declining-balance Depreciation," which was adopted by the required majority of the former committee on accounting procedure. However, they do not wish their assents in this case to imply concurrence with those aspects of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)* from which Messrs. Donald R. Jennings and Weldon Powell dissented at the time. They believe the grounds for those dissents are still valid. They also believe that subsequent events have shown the disclosure requirements of paragraph 9 of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised)* to be questionable.

Mr. Moyer assents to the Interpretive Opinion except for those sections which relate to deferred income taxes. He believes that the new Guideline lives permitted should not provide another type of accelerated depreciation but instead should permit a taxpayer to use the same estimated lives for income-tax purposes as are used for financial accounting purposes.

Mr. Cannon does not agree with paragraph 7 of the Interpretive Opinion because he does not believe a present declaration of the regulatory body on future rate-making policy is effective, nor should it be controlling as to the current reporting of current income in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

Mr. Spacek concurs in the Interpretive Opinion, but dissents with respect to the inclusion of paragraph 7 thereof, since it incorporates by reference paragraph 8 of *Accounting Research Bulletin 44 (Revised)*, with which he does not agree. Paragraph 8 of *ARB 44* states that regulated companies need not provide for the income taxes which,

under the tax laws, are deferred but not eliminated "if it may reasonably be expected that increased future income taxes . . . will be allowed in future rate determinations." Thus, the independent public accountants, in expressing opinions on the financial statements of regulated companies, are placed in the position of having to predict not only the future action of Congress and the state legislatures, but of the regulatory commissions and courts as well. Where provisions for deferred income taxes are omitted as a result of the expectation that the increased future income taxes will be allowed in future rate determinations merely because of present regulatory practices, such practices are not sufficient evidence to support unqualified opinions by independent public accountants, particularly in view of the decision on September 27, 1962, of the second highest court of the land (United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia, No. 16,479, in *Panhandle Eastern Pipe Line Company v. Federal Power Commission*), which stated in part as follows:

"We cannot change the plain purpose of these statutory sections merely because the Commission thinks they have had a 'basically dynamic and fluid effect.' Congress has not provided that, with respect to utilities, ratepayers are entitled to share in the temporary benefits resulting from the use of liberalized depreciation in computing income taxes. Such a provision, which would put utilities and unregulated companies in different categories, may be within the competence of Congress, but neither the Commission nor this court is authorized to legislate in that fashion. Moreover, if it should hereafter provide that utilities must share with their ratepayers the temporary reduction of income taxes produced by liberalized depreciation during the early years of useful life, Congress probably would also provide that ratepayers should proportionately bear the higher income taxes during the later years of the anticipated life of the facilities, when the depreciation deduction for tax purposes is relatively small."

NOTE

Unless otherwise indicated Interpretive Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter. Except where formal adoption by the Council or the membership of the Institute has been asked and secured, the authority of the opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from the Board's recommendations must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Accounting Principles Board (1962-1963)

WELDON POWELL

Chairman

GORDON S. BATTELLE

HERMAN W. BEVIS

WILLIAM M. BLACK

CARMAN G. BLOUGH

JOSEPH CAMPBELL

ARTHUR M. CANNON

W. A. CRICHLEY

WALTER F. FRESE

IRA N. FRISBEE

THOMAS G. HIGGINS

ALVIN R. JENNINGS

JOHN W. McEACHREN

HERBERT E. MILLER

C. A. MOYER

IRA A. SCHUR

LEONARD SPACEK

HASSEL TIPPIT

WILBERT A. WALKER

JOHN H. ZEBLEY, JR.

APB Opinion No. 2

ACCOUNTING FOR THE "INVESTMENT CREDIT"

DECEMBER, 1962

1. The Revenue Act of 1962 provides for an "investment credit" which, in general, is equal to a specified percentage of the cost of certain depreciable assets acquired and placed in service after 1961. It is subject to certain statutory limitations and the amount available in any one year is used to reduce the amount of income tax payable for that year. The full amount of the investment credit is treated for income tax purposes as a reduction in the basis of the property. An investment credit once allowed is subject to recapture under certain circumstances set forth in the statute.

2. Some decision as to the nature of the investment credit, i.e., as to the *substance* of its essential characteristics, if not indispensable, is of great significance in a determination of its accounting treatment. We believe there can be but one useful conclusion as to the nature of the investment credit and that it must be determined by the weight of the pertinent factors.

3. Three concepts as to the substance of the investment credit have been considered by the Board: (a) subsidy by way of a contribution to capital; (b) reduction in taxes otherwise applicable to the income of the year in which the credit arises; and (c) reduction in a cost otherwise chargeable in a greater amount to future accounting periods.

4. There is no significant disagreement with the view that the investment credit is a factor which influences the determination of net income. The basic accounting issue before us therefore is not whether the investment credit increases net income but, rather, the accounting period(s) during which it should be reflected in the operating statement. Resolution of the accounting issue, in large part, rests upon the accounting principles relative to the realization of income. This is true for both regulated and nonregulated companies. (See paragraph 17 of this Opinion.)

5. **Subsidy by way of a contribution to capital.** This concept, in our opinion, is the least rational because it runs counter to the conclusion that the investment credit increases the net income of some accounting period(s).

6. **Tax reduction.** The argument for this concept essentially is that since the investment credit is made available by the Revenue Act of 1962 it is in substance a selective reduction in taxes related to the taxable income of the year in which the credit arises.

7. A refinement of the tax reduction concept advocates that 48% of the investment credit (the maximum extent to which the credit normally can increase net income, assuming that the income tax rate is 52%) should be recorded as a reduction of tax expense of the year in which the credit arises; the balance of 52% should be deferred to subsequent accounting periods, as provided in Chapter 10(b) of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43*, because of the statutory requirement that the basis of the property be reduced for tax purposes by the amount of the investment credit.

8. The General Rule of section 38 of the Revenue Act of 1962 provides that

There shall be allowed, as a credit against the tax imposed by this chapter, the amount determined under sub-part B of this part.

The tax code has traditionally distinguished between exclusions from taxable income (which affect the computation of taxes payable on taxable income of the period) and credits to be applied to reduce taxes otherwise applicable to such taxable income (which do not enter into such computation). In our view the relevant materials support the interpretation that the investment credit is an administrative procedure to permit the taxpayer to withhold the cash equivalent of the credit from taxes otherwise payable and that it is not an element entering into the computation of taxes related to income of the period.

9. **Cost reduction.** We believe that the interpretation of the investment credit as a reduction in or offset against a cost otherwise chargeable in a greater amount to future accounting periods is supported by the weight of the pertinent factors and is based upon existing accounting principles.

10. In reaching this conclusion we have evaluated the pertinent portions of the

legislative history of the investment credit, which we regard as significant but not decisive. We also evaluated the pertinent provisions of the Revenue Act of 1962 which, as earlier stated, require that the investment credit be treated as a reduction in the basis of the property which gives rise to the credit and which contain recapture and other provisions the effect of which is to make realization of the credit dependent to some degree on future events.

11. The investment credit under certain circumstances is transferable to the lessee of qualified property. We regard it as significant that in such cases the rules and regulations of the Treasury require the lessee to reduce his taxable deduction for rent over a four, six, or eight year period, depending upon the useful life category of the property.

CONCLUSIONS

13. We conclude that the allowable¹ investment credit should be reflected in net income over the productive life of acquired property and not in the year in which it is placed in service.

14. A number of alternative choices for recording the credit on the balance sheet has been considered. While we believe the reflection of the allowable credit as a reduction in the net amount at which the acquired property is stated (either directly or by inclusion in an offsetting account) may be preferable in many cases, we recognize as equally appropriate the treatment of the credit as deferred income, provided it is amortized over the productive life of the acquired property.

15. We believe it preferable that the statement of income in the year in which the allowable investment credit arises should be affected only by the results which flow from the accounting for the credit set forth in paragraph 13. Nevertheless, reflection of income tax provisions, in the income statement, in the amount payable (that is, after deduction of the allowable investment credit) is appropriate provided that a corresponding charge is made to an appropriate cost or expense (for example, to the provision for depreciation) and the treatment is adequately disclosed in the financial statements of the first year of its adoption.

16. An investment credit should be reflected in the financial statements only to the extent that it has been used as an

12. In concluding that the cost reduction concept is based upon existing accounting principles we attach substantial weight to two points in particular. First, in our opinion, earnings arise from the use of facilities, not from their acquisition. Second, the ultimate realization of the credit is contingent to some degree on future developments. Where the incidence of realization of income is uncertain, as in the present circumstances, we believe the record does not support the treatment of the investment credit as income at the earliest possible point of time. In our opinion the alternative choice of spreading the income in some rational manner over a series of future accounting periods is more logical and supportable.

offset against income tax liability. Under the statute, unused investment credits may be carried back or forward to other years. The accounting for these carrybacks and carryforwards should be consistent with the provisions of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43*, Chapter 10(b), "Income Taxes," paragraphs 16 and 17. The amount of a carryback of unused investment credit may be set up as an asset (a claim for refund of income taxes) and be added to the allowable investment credit in accounting for the effect of the credit in the year in which the property is placed in service. A carryforward of unused investment credit should ordinarily be reflected only in the year in which the amount becomes "allowable," in which case the unused amount would not appear as an asset. Material amounts of unused investment credits should be disclosed.

17. Authorities having jurisdiction over regulated business may require that the investment credit be accounted for in some manner not consistent with the conclusions expressed in this Opinion. We have previously stated our position on the issues involved in such a case (*The Journal of Accountancy*, December 1962, page 67—reprinted as an Addendum to this Opinion). The position there taken is intended to permit the so-called "flow through" treatment only in those circumstances where the standards described in that statement are met.

¹ The first \$25,000 of income tax payable plus 25% of the remainder. See paragraph 16 for treatment of unused investment credits.

The Opinion entitled “Accounting for the ‘Investment Credit’” was adopted by the assenting votes of fourteen members of the Board, of whom one, Mr. McEachren, assented with qualification. Messrs. Bevis, Black, Cannon, Powell, Tippit, and Walker dissented.

Mr. McEachren agrees with the conclusion that the investment credit should be reflected in net income over the productive life of acquired property but disagrees with the inclusion of paragraphs 9, 10, and 12 to the extent that they argue that the investment credit is a reduction of cost. Whether or not it is a reduction of cost is a question with many ramifications and subject to different interpretations under differing circumstances and in any event is not relevant to the matter here involved. He believes that the fundamental basis for the conclusion in paragraph 13 is that “earnings arise from the use of facilities; not from their acquisition.”

Messrs. Bevis, Powell, and Tippit believe that the pertinent factors preponderantly support the view that the investment credit is in substance a reduction in income taxes. They consider that the generally accepted accounting principles applicable (including the pronouncements of the former Committee on Accounting Procedure, especially those relating to the accounting for income taxes and to the reporting of income, which are still in effect) preponderantly support the treatment of the investment credit as a

reduction of the provision for current income taxes in the year in which the credit arises. They believe specifically, that the generation of taxable income for the year in and by itself, rather than the future productive use of the related property, effects the realization of the credit. They point out that opinions received by the Board from practitioners and businessmen make it clear that the “48-52” method discussed in paragraph 7 of the Opinion has at least as wide acceptance among these groups as the method sponsored by the majority of the Board. They believe that, in the circumstances, the “48-52” method must also be considered to have substantial authoritative support and, therefore, to be generally acceptable.

Messrs. Black and Cannon dissent from the conclusion that there is only one acceptable accounting treatment of the investment credit. While not objecting to reflecting the investment credit over the productive life of the acquired property, they believe that it would be preferable to defer only that part of the credit (52%) equivalent to the increased taxes in future years arising from the reduction in the tax base of the property acquired.

Mr. Walker concurs with the method set forth in the Opinion as the preferred basis for treatment of the investment credit, but it is his opinion that, with adequate disclosure, it should be considered an acceptable alternative to reduce the taxes of the year in which the credit arises by an appropriate portion of such credit.

NOTE

Unless otherwise indicated Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter. Except where formal adoption by the Council or the membership of the Institute has been asked and secured, the authority of the opinions rests

upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from the Board's recommendations must be assumed by those who adopt other practices. Recommendations of the Board are not intended to be retroactive, nor applicable to immaterial items.

ADDENDUM

Accounting Principles for Regulated Industries

The following statement, referred to in paragraph 17 of the Opinion and approved by the Board, originally appeared in *The Journal of Accountancy*, December 1962, p. 67:

1. The basic postulates and the broad principles of accounting comprehended in the term “generally accepted accounting

principles” pertain to business enterprises in general. These include public utilities, common carriers, insurance companies, financial institutions, and the like that are subject to regulation by government, usually through commissions or other similar agencies.

2. However, differences may arise in the application of generally accepted accounting principles as between regulated and non-regulated businesses, because of the effect

in regulated businesses of the rate-making process, a phenomenon not present in non-regulated businesses. Such differences usually concern mainly the time at which various items enter into the determination of net income in accordance with the principle of matching costs and revenues. For example, if a cost incurred by a regulated business during a given period is treated for rate-making purposes by the regulatory authority having jurisdiction as applicable to future revenues, it may be deferred in the balance sheet at the end of the current period and written off in the future period or periods in which the related revenue accrues, even though the cost is of a kind which in a nonregulated business would be written off currently. However, this is appropriate only when it is clear that the cost will be recoverable out of future revenues, and it is not appropriate when there is doubt, because of economic conditions or for other reasons, that the cost will be so recoverable.

3. Accounting requirements not directly related to the rate-making process commonly are imposed on regulated businesses by orders of regulatory authorities, and occasionally by court decisions or statutes. The fact that such accounting requirements are imposed by the government does not necessarily mean that they conform with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, if a cost, of a kind which in a

nonregulated business would be charged to income, is charged directly to surplus pursuant to the applicable accounting requirements of the regulatory authority, such cost nevertheless should be included in operating expenses or charged to income, as appropriate in financial statements intended for use by the public.

4. The financial statements of regulated businesses other than those prepared for filing with the government for regulatory purposes preferably should be based on generally accepted accounting principles (with appropriate recognition of rate-making considerations as indicated in paragraph 2) rather than on systems of accounts or other accounting requirements of the government.

5. *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* lists four standards of reporting, the first of which says that "The report shall state whether the financial statements are presented in accordance with generally accepted principles of accounting." In reporting on the financial statements of regulated businesses, the independent auditor should observe this standard and should deal with material variances from generally accepted accounting principles (with appropriate recognition of rate-making considerations as indicated in paragraph 2), if the financial statements reflect any such variances, in the same manner as in his reports on non-regulated businesses.

Accounting Principles Board (1962-1963)

WELDON POWELL,
Chairman
GORDON S. BATTELLE
HERMAN W. BEVIS
WILLIAM M. BLACK
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
JOSEPH CAMPBELL

ARTHUR M. CANNON
W. A. CRICHLEY
WALTER F. FRESE
IRA N. FRISBEE
THOMAS G. HIGGINS
ALVIN R. JENNINGS
JOHN W. MCEACHREN

HERBERT E. MILLER
C. A. MOYER
IRA A. SCHUR
LEONARD SPACEK
HASSEL TIPPIT
WILBERT A. WALKER
JOHN H. ZEBLEY, JR.

APB Opinion No. 3

THE STATEMENT OF SOURCE AND APPLICATION OF FUNDS

OCTOBER, 1963

INTRODUCTION

1. Increased attention has been given in recent years in the United States to what has generally come to be known as "Flow of Funds Analysis." For several years the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System has published quarterly and annual statistics in the *Federal Reserve Bulletin* showing the flow of funds in the economy. The Flow-of-Funds National Accounts of the Federal Reserve Board have joined the National Income Accounts of the Department of Commerce as important tools of national fiscal and monetary policy. Management, analysts, and investors have also become increasingly aware of the value of this aspect of financial reporting for the individual corporation.

2. Accountants have long prepared statements of source and application of funds for management, which are in fact reports on the flow of funds in individual companies. These statements have often been presented in annual reports. The concept of "funds" used in these statements has varied somewhat in practice, and variations in the concept have resulted in variations in the nature of the statements. For example, "funds" has sometimes been interpreted to mean cash or its equivalent; in such cases the resulting statement of source and application of funds is a statement of cash receipts and disbursements. The most common concept of "funds" has, however, been that of working capital, i.e., current assets less current liabilities. If the definition is applied literally, the resulting statement includes only those transactions which affect the current assets or the current liabilities. A broader interpretation identifies "funds" as all financial resources arising from transactions with parties external to the business enterprise.¹

3. The Accounting Principles Board has considered the matter of reporting the flow of funds of a business enterprise. Certain aspects of this matter are referred to in this

Opinion, including (1) the importance of information about the flow of funds, (2) the essential features of the flow of a company's funds from a reporting standpoint, and (3) the distinction between information regarding flow of funds and information regarding net income.

4. Information about the sources from which a company obtains funds and the uses to which such funds are put may be useful for a variety of purposes affecting both operating and investment decisions. Some of this information is evident from the financial statements. The statement of source and application of funds is helpful because it presents other information which ordinarily cannot be obtained from the financial statements and because it presents articulated information about the flow of funds. A statement of source and application of funds cannot supplant the income statement, but it can provide a useful and significant summary of certain transactions which, taken by themselves, have meaning, namely those affecting the flow of funds.

5. The chart on page 6513, prepared by Arthur Dahlberg, President of the U. S. Economics Corporation, shows the sources and uses of business funds in the United States. A fundamental feature of the source and application of funds shown by the chart is that all funds come either externally from borrowing or issuing equity securities or internally from revenues. Another characteristic is that the funds made available by revenues are classifiable in two distinct ways. Funds equal to the net income after deducting dividends paid to shareholders are added to the resources of the business and are available for any purpose. Funds equal to the sum of depreciation, depletion, and similar charges are also added to the resources of the business by revenues because such items, although properly deducted as operating expenses in the computation of net income, require no current

¹ Examples of different uses of the term "funds" are found in "Cash Flow" Analysis and the Funds Statement," by Perry Mason, *Accounting Research Study No. 2*, published by the American Institute of CPAs in Nov. 1961, pp. 51-56. This study contains numerous ex-

amples of other aspects of these statements. (Accounting research studies are not statements of this Board or of the Institute but are published for the purpose of stimulating discussion on accounting issues.)

outlay of funds. They represent a partial recovery, through revenues, of funds previously spent for fixed assets and are, therefore, analytically related to current expenditure for renewals and replacements of such assets.

6. In recent years a new concept (or more correctly, an old concept with a new name) has become increasingly important in the analysis of the flow of funds. The term "cash flow" has been used to refer to a variety of concepts, but its most common meaning in financial literature, and to a lesser extent in accounting literature, is the same as "funds derived from operations" in a statement of source and application of funds. It is often defined as "net income plus depreciation," or "net income before deducting depreciation, depletion, amortization, etc." Synonyms which are sometimes used include "cash earnings," "cash income," and "cash throw-off."

7. Many of the comments made in connection with "cash flow" analysis leave the reader with the erroneous impression that "cash flow" or "cash earnings" is superior

to net income as a measure of a company's real earning power. Calculations of the Price/Cash Flow ratio are sometimes made and presented as a substitute for or supplement to the Price/Earnings ratio in evaluating a company's stock. The amount of "cash flow" or the "cash flow per share" has often been presented in the president's letter, the financial review, or the statistical section of the annual report of a corporation apart from or in the absence of a complete statement of source and application of funds in the report. In other words, there has been a growing tendency on the part of some people to single out one of the items on the statement of source and application of funds, thereby implying that this figure is more important than other information regarding the flow of funds and often carrying the implication that "net income plus depreciation" is the best measure of the company's profitability. There is a strong implication running through the comments in the literature, including those in the annual reports of some corporations, that the total "cash flow" can be considered available for the payment of dividends.²

OPINION

8. The Board believes that a statement of source and application of funds should be presented as supplementary information in financial reports. The inclusion of such information is not mandatory, and it is optional as to whether it should be covered in the report of the independent accountant.

9. The concept of "funds" underlying the preparation of a statement of source and application of funds should be consistent with the purpose of the statement. In the case of statements prepared for presentation in annual reports, a concept broader than that of working capital should be used which can be characterized or defined as "all financial resources," so that the statement will include the financial aspects of all significant transactions, e.g., "non-fund" transaction such as the acquisition of property through the issue of securities.

10. Types of transactions reflected in the statement of source and application of funds may vary substantially in relative importance from one period to another. As a result, consistency of arrangement of items from period to period and uniformity of arrangement as between reporting enterprises are of less significance than in the case of the

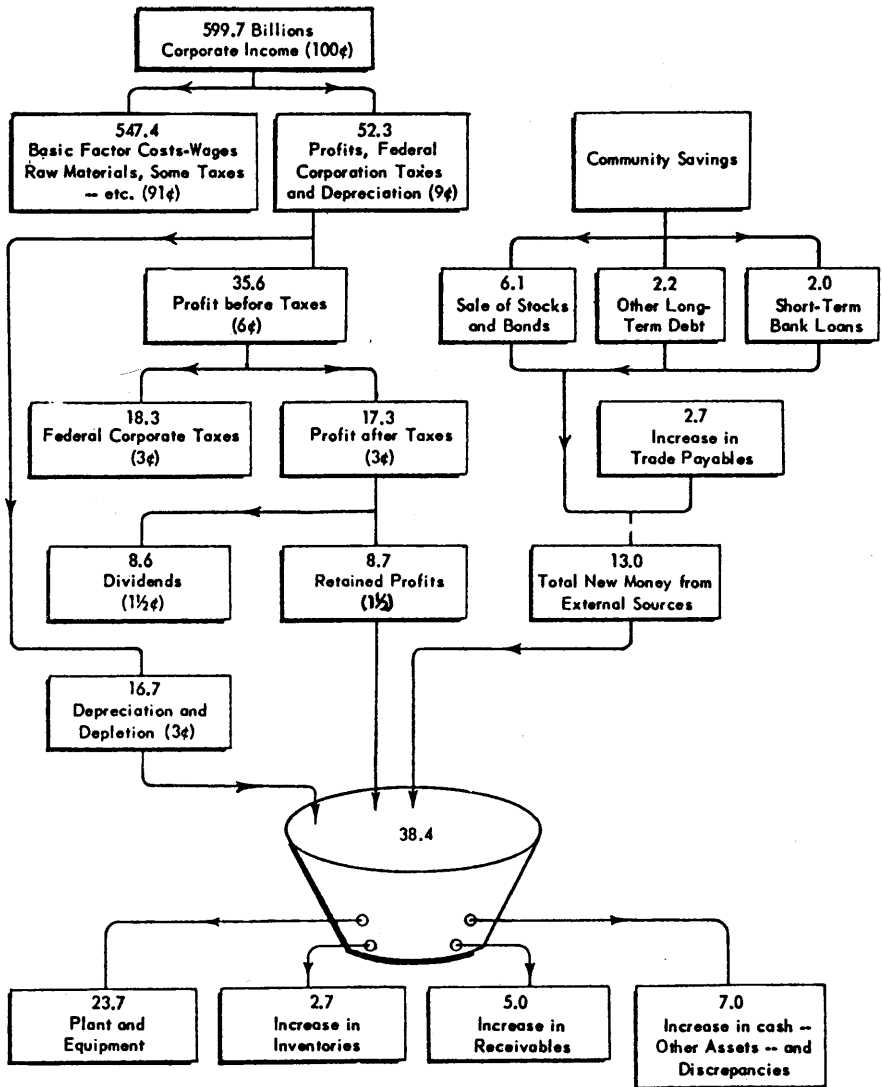
balance sheet or income statement. In a statement of source and application of funds it is desirable to disclose and to emphasize the more important financial events of the period covered by the statement. Related items should be shown together when the result contributes to the clarity of the statement, and less important items should be combined. Significant changes in individual current assets and current liabilities should be shown as separate items whenever they are not otherwise adequately disclosed in the financial statements; changes in the other current items may then be combined and shown as a single amount.

11. The title of a statement of this type should be as descriptive as possible and need not be the same in all cases. "Statement of Resources Provided and Applied" and "Statement of Source and Application of Funds" are examples of appropriate titles. Of the various forms of the statement, the preferred one follows the common practice of beginning with the funds derived from operations (net income plus or minus "non-fund" adjustments), the calculation being shown either at the beginning of the statement or in a footnote.

² For illustrations of these practices, see the sections, "Use of Cash Flow Concept in Financial Literature," pp. 4-15, and "Presentation of

Cash Flow Data in Annual Reports," pp. 16-29, in *Accounting Research Study No. 2*.

Source and Uses of Corporate Funds for Non-Financial Business Firms
Average Year 1950—1959
(Billions of Dollars)



Source: Federal Reserve Board, Flow of Funds in the United States

From Robinson's *Understanding Profits*.

Copyright 1961, D. Van Nostrand Company Inc., Princeton, N. J.

12. Both increases and decreases in capital stock (other than stock dividends or splits), in noncurrent liabilities, and in noncurrent assets should be shown where the amounts are material. The proceeds from an issue of securities should appear as a separate source of funds. Where significant in amount, the proceeds from the sale of property should be disclosed and shown separately from property acquisitions.

13. The presentation of comparative and consolidated statements of source and application of funds should conform to the policies adopted for the basic financial statements. A statement of source and application of funds which is cumulative for a period of years is sometimes prepared in addition to the statement for the current year, and is often helpful in furnishing a broad review of the financial activities over a period of time.

14. Whether or not a cash distribution to shareholders is a return of capital or a distribution of earnings can be determined only by comparing the distribution with the amount of retained earnings available. No generalization or conclusion can be drawn as to the significance of the "cash flow" without reference to the entire flow of funds as reflected in the complete statement of source and application of funds. Adding back depreciation provisions to show the total funds generated from operations can

be misleading unless the reader of financial statements keeps in mind that the renewal and replacement of productive facilities require substantial "cash outflow," which may well exceed the depreciation provisions. The "funds derived from operations" (cash flow) is one, but only one, of the important items in the statement, and its significance can be determined only by relating it to the other items.

15. The amount of funds derived from operations cannot be considered as a substitute for or an improvement upon properly determined net income as a measure of results of operations and the consequent effect on financial position. Misleading implications can result from isolated statistics in annual reports of "cash flow" which are not placed in proper perspective to net income figures and to a complete analysis of source and application of funds. "Cash flow" and related terms should not be used in annual reports in such a way that the significance of net income is impaired, and "cash earnings" or other terms with a similar connotation should be avoided. The Board regards computations of "cash flow per share" as misleading since they ignore the impact of cash expenditures for renewal and replacement of facilities and tend to downgrade the significant economic statistic of "earnings per share."

The Opinion entitled "The Statement of Source and Application of Funds" was unanimously adopted by the twenty members of the Accounting Principles Board, of whom three, Messrs. Armstrong, Blough, and Spacek, assented with qualification.

Messrs. Armstrong and Blough approve the issuance of this Opinion because they believe its forceful warning against the improper preparation of "flow of funds analyses" and against their misuses is timely. However, they do not agree with the recommendation contained in paragraph 8 or the expressions contained in paragraphs 1 and 4 stating or implying that such analyses may be helpful in making investment decisions. They believe that such analyses do not deal with significant accounting matters and that relatively few investors who receive annual corporate reports are capable of using such statistical data in a useful manner. Instead, they believe their inclusion in annual reports tends to confuse most investors and affords a source of information which naive or unscrupulous persons

may use to mislead the "ordinary" investor in the very ways warned against elsewhere in this Opinion.

Mr. Spacek concurs in issuance of this Opinion because he considers it to be a step in the right direction; but he does not believe that it deals adequately with the subject. In his view, since the Board believes that a funds statement should be presented in financial reports and yet does not require such presentation (par. 8), it fails in its primary responsibility of determining standards that meet the needs of investors and others who use financial statements. He states that making recommendations on the preparation of annual reports other than in the financial statements is not a Board function. He believes that the funds statement is essential for reporting to the public, and that it should be required as a part of the regular financial statements, along with the balance sheet and statements of income and surplus. He gives the illustration that no prudent corporate management, financial analyst or lending institution would evaluate the financial aspects of a

business without benefit of all such statements, as a minimum; and, therefore, prudent investors who rely upon published fi-

nancial statements should not be deprived of similar information.

NOTE

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter. Except where formal adoption by the Council or the membership of the Institute has been asked and secured, the authority of the opinions rests upon their general acceptability.

While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from the Board's recommendations must be assumed by those who adopt other practices. Recommendations of the Board are not intended to be retroactive, nor applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1963-1964)

ALVIN R. JENNINGS

Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

HERMAN W. BEVIS

CARMAN G. BLOUGH

ARTHUR M. CANNON

W. A. CRICHLEY

WALTER F. FRESE

IRA N. FRISBEE

THOMAS G. HIGGINS

LEROY LAYTON

JOHN W. McEACHREN

MAURICE MOONITZ

C. A. MOYER

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN PEOPLES

JOHN W. QUEENAN

IRA A. SCHUR

LEONARD SPACEK

HASSEL TIPPIT

WILBERT A. WALKER

APB Opinion No. 4 (Amending No. 2)

ACCOUNTING FOR THE "INVESTMENT CREDIT"

MARCH, 1964

1. In December 1962 this Board issued Opinion No. 2 "Accounting for the 'Investment Credit.'" In this Opinion we said:

Some decision as to the nature of the investment credit, i.e., as to the *substance* of its essential characteristics, if not indispensable, is of great significance in a determination of its accounting treatment. We believe there can be but one useful conclusion as to the nature of the investment credit and that it must be determined by the weight of the pertinent factors. (paragraph 2)

2. The opinion listed the possible interpretations which the Board had considered:

Three concepts as to the substance of the investment credit have been considered by the Board: (a) subsidy by way of a contribution to capital; (b) reduction in taxes otherwise applicable to the income of the year in which the credit arises; and (c) reduction in a cost otherwise chargeable in a greater amount to future accounting periods. (paragraph 3)

3. After noting the arguments in favor of each, the Board said:

We believe that the interpretation of the investment credit as a reduction in or offset against a cost otherwise chargeable in a greater amount to future accounting periods is supported by the weight of the pertinent factors and is based upon existing accounting principles. (paragraph 9)

4. The Board concluded (paragraph 13) that the investment credit "should be reflected in net income over the productive life of acquired property and not in the year in which it is placed in service."

5. In January 1963 the Securities and Exchange Commission issued *Accounting Series Release No. 96* in which it reported that in recognition of the substantial diversity of opinion among responsible persons in the matter of accounting for the investment credit the Commission would accept statements in which the credit was accounted for either as this Board concluded in Opinion No. 2 or as a reduction in taxes otherwise applicable to the year in which the credit arises. The Commission has recently reconsidered and reaffirmed that position.

6. The Board's review of experience since the issuance of Opinion No. 2 shows that the investment credit has been treated by a significant number of companies as an increase in net income of the year in which the credit arose.

7. The Revenue Act of 1964 eliminates the requirement imposed by the Revenue Act of 1962 that the investment credit be treated for income tax purposes as a reduction in the basis of the property to which the credit relates.

CONCLUSIONS

8. It is the conclusion of this Board that the Revenue Act of 1964 does not change the essential nature of the investment credit and, hence, of itself affords no basis for revising our Opinion as to the method of accounting for the investment credit.

9. However, the authority of Opinions of this Board rests upon their general acceptability. The Board, in the light of events and developments occurring since the issuance of Opinion No. 2, has determined that its conclusions as there expressed have not attained the degree of acceptability which it believes is necessary to make the Opinion effective.

10. In the circumstances the Board believes that, while the method of accounting for the investment credit recommended in paragraph 13 of Opinion No. 2 should be considered to be preferable, the alternative method of treating the credit as a reduction of Federal income taxes of the year in which the credit arises is also acceptable.

11. The Board emphasizes that whichever method of accounting for the investment credit is adopted, it is essential that full disclosure be made of the method followed and amounts involved, when material.

The Opinion entitled "Accounting for the 'Investment Credit'" was adopted by the assenting votes of fifteen members of the Board, of whom eight, Messrs. Bevis, Crichley, Frese, Higgins, Jennings, Queenan, Tippet and Trueblood assented with qualification. Messrs. Armstrong, Blough, Moonitz, Moyer and Spacek dissented.

Messrs. Crichley and Trueblood believe that, under the Revenue Act of 1964, there is considerable theoretical support for regarding the investment credit as a selective reduction in taxes. Accordingly, they do not necessarily regard amortization of the investment credit over the life of acquired properties as the "preferable method." They believe that the alternative method is preferable, but agree that recognition of both methods is necessary and desirable under existing conditions.

Mr. Frese assents to the conclusions in this Opinion, and to its publication, because he believes developments and circumstances summarized in paragraphs 5, 6, and 9 leave the Board no other practical choice. He desires, however, to express his strong preference for the conclusion of the Board in Opinion No. 2 because he believes it conforms with the basic concept, which has long been generally accepted, that income should be recognized as it is earned through the use of assets and not as an immediate result of their acquisition.

Messrs. Higgins and Jennings assent to Opinion No. 4 and its publication only because they believe the action of the SEC, reported in paragraph 5, and the consequences recited in paragraph 6, leave no other practicable choice. They believe that the Revenue Act of 1964 does not alter the soundness of the conclusion stated in Opinion No. 2 that the investment credit should be reflected in net income over the productive life of acquired property and not in the year in which such property is placed in service. They believe further that the present action recognizing the alternative treatment as acceptable is illogical (for the reasons given in the first sentence of Mr. Moonitz's dissent) and is tantamount to taking no position. They observe that paragraph 17 of Opinion No. 2 is still effective and, accordingly, that the alternative method of treating the credit as a reduction of Federal income tax of the year in which the credit arises is improper and should be unacceptable in those instances where Section 203(e) of the Reve-

nue Act of 1964 effectively requires the credit to be reflected in net income over the productive life of the property.

Mr. Queenan, joined by Messrs. Bevis and Tippet, assents to the Opinion because he continues to believe that the investment credit constitutes a reduction in income tax expense in the year in which the credit arises. In view of the substantial support of the cost-reduction concept, he does not object to inclusion of the credit in net income over the life of the acquired property, but believes that the order of preference expressed in paragraph 10 should be reversed.

Mr. Armstrong dissents from Opinion No. 4. He agrees that the Revenue Act of 1964 does not change the essential nature of the investment credit and agrees with the conclusions expressed in Opinion No. 2. He disagrees with paragraph 10 of Opinion No. 4 wherein an alternative method of treating the credit is recognized as being acceptable, thereby adding one more to the list of principles for which there are a variety of acceptable methods yielding substantially different results in comparable situations.

Mr. Blough dissents from this opinion because he believes the conclusion reached in Opinion No. 2 "that the allowable investment credit should be reflected in net income over the productive life of acquired property and not in the year in which it is placed in service" was and is sound. The fact that there is substantial support for treating the investment credit as an increase in net income of the year in which the credit arose is not a sound reason, in his opinion, for this Board to retreat from a position which it still considers to be "preferable." He does not believe the Board can carry out its major responsibility "to determine appropriate practice and to narrow the areas of difference and inconsistency in practice" if it withdraws its influence from the support of its considered opinion whenever that opinion is not immediately accepted by all influential persons.

Mr. Moonitz dissents to paragraph 10 of Opinion No. 4 because while it is conceivable that the tax reduction method may be right, or that cost reduction may be right, or that both are wrong and some other unspecified possibility right, the investment credit cannot be two different things at one and the same time. As between the two methods set forth in paragraph 10, he believes that accounting principles compel the treatment of the investment credit as

a selective reduction in tax available to those who meet the conditions laid down in the statute. The method preferred by the majority of the Board permits identical items bought from the same supplier at identical prices to be recorded at different “costs” depending upon the tax status of the purchaser and not upon the conditions prevailing in the transaction between buyer and seller. Alternatively the method preferred by the majority of the Board permits the balance sheet to include a “deferred credit to income” that cannot be classified as part of the interest of owners, creditors, government, employees, or any other recognizable group. He concludes that the effect of Opinion No. 4 can only be the direct opposite of the Board’s ultimate objective of narrowing the areas of difference in practice.

Mr. Moyer believes that Opinion No. 4 should not have been issued, as it carries the strong implication that Opinions of the Board always should follow existing practices. He believes that progress cannot be made under such a policy.

Mr. Spacek dissents from the conclusion in paragraph 10. He believes this Opinion illustrates the accounting profession’s complete failure in its responsibility to establish accounting principles that will provide reliable financial statements that are comparable among companies and industries, for

use of the public in making personal investment decisions. He states there is no justification for sanctioning two contradictory practices to accommodate SEC and other regulatory bodies and some CPAs who have approved reporting the investment credit as, in effect, profit from acquisition rather than from use of property. This flouts Congress’ clear intent in granting the investment credit, “to reduce the net cost of acquiring depreciable property.” Alternative procedures under this Opinion can increase by up to 25 per cent the earnings otherwise reported. In this Opinion and in SEC’s stated position, Mr. Spacek finds no word of concern for the investor, to whose protection both CPAs and SEC supposedly are dedicated. He believes this Opinion approves accounting of the type that precipitated the 1929 financial crisis, and that history is being repeated by actions of the very authorities created to prevent such catastrophes. He feels this breakdown in safeguards created to protect investors has resulted from fragmentation of responsibility for establishing accounting principles, and the only remedy is to create a Federally established Court of Accounting Principles with a prescribed basis for its decisions; this court would be independent of the profession and regulatory commissions, and its decisions would be binding on all, thus rescuing investors from their present abandonment.

NOTE

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter. Except where formal adoption by the Council or the membership of the Institute has been asked and secured, the authority of the opinions rests upon their general accepta-

bility. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from the Board’s recommendations must be assumed by those who adopt other practices. Recommendations of the Board are not intended to be retro-active, nor applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1963-1964)

ALVIN R. JENNINGS
Chairman
MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG
HERMAN W. BEVIS
CARMAN G. BLOUGH
W. A. CRICHLEY
WALTER F. FRESE

IRA N. FRISBEE
THOMAS G. HIGGINS
LEROY LAYTON
MAURICE MOONITZ
C. A. MOYER
LOUIS H. PENNEY
JOHN PEOPLES

JOHN W. QUEENAN
IRA A. SCHUR
LEONARD SPACEK
HASSEL TIPPIT
ROBERT M. TRUEBLOOD
WILBERT A. WALKER
ROBERT E. WITSCHY

APB Opinion No. 5

REPORTING OF LEASES IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESSEE

SEPTEMBER, 1964

INTRODUCTION

1. This Opinion sets forth the Board's views as to proper procedures or methods for implementing generally accepted accounting principles governing accounting for assets and liabilities and income and expense with respect to leases and sale and leasebacks. It supersedes Chapter 14 of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43*, "Disclosure of Long-Term Leases in Financial Statements of Lessees." This Opinion makes no distinction between leases of real property and leases of personal property. Because of the highly specialized problems involved, this Opinion does not apply to agreements concerning natural resources such as oil, gas, timber and mineral rights.

2. The two principal recommendations of Chapter 14 of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* were:

- (1) . . . where the rentals or other obligations under long-term leases are material in the circumstances, the committee is of the opinion that:

- (a) disclosure should be made in financial statements or in notes thereto of:

- (1) the amounts of annual rentals to be paid under such leases with some indication of the periods for which they are payable and

- (2) any other important obligation assumed or guarantee made in connection therewith;

- (b) the above information should be given not only in the year in which the transaction originates but also as long thereafter as the amounts involved are material; and

- (c) in addition, in the year in which the transaction originates, there should be disclosure of the

principal details of any important sale-and-lease transaction.

- (2) . . . the committee is of the opinion that the facts relating to all such leases should be carefully considered and that, where it is clearly evident that the transaction involved is in substance a purchase, the "leased" property should be included among the assets of the lessee with suitable accounting for the corresponding liabilities and for the related charges in the income statement.

3. In the period since the issuance of the Bulletin, the practice of obtaining by lease the right to use property has continued on an important scale. Although relatively more information about leases has been disclosed in financial statements of lessees in recent years, no consistent pattern has emerged, and the extent of disclosure of pertinent information has often been inadequate. In addition, there have been relatively few instances of capitalization of leased property and recognition of the related obligation, which suggests that the criteria for determining when a lease is in substance a purchase require clarification.

4. The situation described in the preceding paragraph caused the accounting research division of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants to undertake a research study on reporting of leases in financial statements.¹ This study recommended, in part:

. . . To the extent then that leases give rise to property rights, those rights and related liabilities should be measured and incorporated in the balance sheet.

The major question then is what leases, or parts of leases, give rise to property rights. . . (p. 4)

¹ *Accounting Research Study No. 4*, "Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements," by John H. Myers, published for its accounting research division by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants in May, 1962. (Ac-

counting research studies are not statements of this Board or of the Institute but are published for the purpose of stimulating discussion on important accounting issues.)

To the extent, then, that the rental payments represent a means of financing the acquisition of property rights which the lessee has in his possession and under his control, the transaction constitutes the acquisition of an asset with a related obligation to pay for it. To the extent, however, that the rental payments are for services such as maintenance, insurance, property taxes, heat, light, and elevator service, no asset has been acquired, and none should be recorded. . . .

The measurement of the asset value and the related liability involves two steps: (1) the determination of the part of the rentals which constitutes payment for property rights, and (2) the discounting of those rentals at an appropriate rate of interest. . . .

On the balance sheet the property rights acquired under lease should be grouped with the other property accounts, but probably separately classified in order to disclose the existence of the lease arrangement. The liability should be divided into its current and long-term portions and shown in the appropriate classification. . . . (p. 5)

In effect, the proposed balance-sheet treatment removes the charge for "rent" in the [income statement] accounts as an occupancy cost and instead treats

it simply as a payment of an obligation and interest thereon. In its place is put "amortization of property right acquired under lease" (an occupancy cost) and "interest" (a financial expense). In the case of manufacturing concerns there probably would be a related effect on the valuation of work in process and of finished goods. (p. 6)

5. The Accounting Principles Board has considered the recommendations and the supporting argument presented in *Accounting Research Study No. 4*. The Board agrees that the nature of some lease agreements is such that an asset and a related liability should be shown in the balance sheet, and that it is important to distinguish this type of lease from other leases. The Board believes, however, that the distinction depends on the issue of whether or not the lease is in substance a purchase of the property rather than on the issue of whether or not a property right exists. The Board believes that the disclosure requirements regarding leases contained in *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43*, Chapter 14, should be extended, and the criteria for identification of lease agreements which are in effect installment purchases of property should be clarified. The Board also believes that accounting for gains and losses on sale-and-leaseback transactions should be specifically dealt with in this Opinion.

DISCUSSION

6. The central question is whether assets and liabilities are created by leases which convey the right to use property if no equity is accumulated in the property by the lessee. Chapter 14 of *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* and *Accounting Research Study No. 4* agree that leases which are clearly in substance purchases result in assets and liabilities which should be recorded, and that to the extent rental payments are for services, such as property taxes, utilities, maintenance, and so forth, they should be charged to current operations. They disagree with regard to leases which convey merely the right to use property in consideration of specified rental payments over a definite future period.

7. It seems clear that leases covering merely the right to use property in exchange for future rental payments do not create an equity in the property and are thus nothing more than executory contracts requiring continuing performance on the part of both the lessor and the lessee for the full period covered by the leases. The question of

whether assets and liabilities should be recorded in connection with leases of this type is, therefore, part of the larger issue of whether the rights and obligations that exist under executory contracts in general (e.g., purchase commitments and employment contracts) give rise to assets and liabilities which should be recorded.

8. The rights and obligations related to unperformed portions of executory contracts are not recognized as assets and liabilities in financial statements under generally accepted accounting principles as presently understood. Generally accepted accounting principles require the disclosure of the rights and obligations under executory contracts in separate schedules or notes to the financial statements if the omission of this information would tend to make the financial statements misleading. The rights and obligations under leases which convey merely the right to use property, without an equity in the property accruing to the lessee, fall into the category of pertinent information which

should be disclosed in schedules or notes rather than by recording assets and liabilities in the financial statements.

9. On the other hand, some lease agreements are essentially equivalent to installment purchases of property. In such cases, the substance of the arrangement, rather than its legal form, should determine the accounting treatment. The property and the related obligation should be included in the balance sheet as an asset and a liability, respectively, at the discounted amount of the future lease rental payments, exclusive of payments to cover taxes and operating expenses other than depreciation. Further, in such cases, it is appropriate to depreciate the capitalized amount for property over its estimated useful life rather than over the initial period of the lease.

10. The property and the related obligation should be included as an asset and a liability in the balance sheet if the terms of the lease result in the creation of a material equity in the property. It is unlikely that such an equity can be created under a lease which either party may cancel unilaterally for reasons other than the occurrence of some remote contingency. The presence, in a noncancelable lease or in a lease cancelable only upon the occurrence of some remote contingency, of either of the two following conditions will usually establish that a lease should be considered to be in substance a purchase:

- a. The initial term is materially less than the useful life of the property, and the lessee has the option to renew the lease for the remaining useful life of the property at substantially less than the fair rental value; or
- b. The lessee has the right, during or at the expiration of the lease, to acquire the property at a price which at the inception of the lease appears to be substantially less than the probable fair value of the property at the time or times of permitted acquisition by the lessee.

In these cases, the fact that the rental payments usually run well ahead of any reasonable measure of the expiration of the service value of the property, coupled with the options which permit either a bargain purchase by the lessee or the renewal of the lease during the anticipated useful life at bargain rentals, constitutes convincing evidence that an equity in the property is being built up as rental payments are made and that the transaction is essentially equivalent to a purchase.

11. The determination that lease payments result in the creation of an equity in the property obviously requires a careful evaluation of the facts and probabilities surrounding a given case. Unless it is clear that no material equity in the property will result from the lease, the existence, in connection with a noncancelable lease or a lease cancelable only upon the occurrence of some remote contingency, of one or more circumstances such as those shown below tend to indicate that the lease arrangement is in substance a purchase and should be accounted for as such.

- a. The property was acquired by the lessor to meet the special needs of the lessee and will probably be usable only for that purpose and only by the lessee.
- b. The term of the lease corresponds substantially to the estimated useful life of the property, and the lessee is obligated to pay costs such as taxes, insurance, and maintenance, which are usually considered incidental to ownership.
- c. The lessee has guaranteed the obligations of the lessor with respect to the property leased.
- d. The lessee has treated the lease as a purchase for tax purposes.

12. In cases in which the lessee and the lessor are related, leases should often be treated as purchases even though they do not meet the criteria set forth in paragraphs 10 and 11, i.e., even though no direct equity is being built up by the lessee. In these cases, a lease should be recorded as a purchase if a primary purpose of ownership of the property by the lessor is to lease it to the lessee and (1) the lease payments are pledged to secure the debts of the lessor or (2) the lessee is able, directly or indirectly, to control or influence significantly the actions of the lessor with respect to the lease. The following illustrate situations in which these conditions are frequently present:

- a. The lessor is an unconsolidated subsidiary of the lessee, or the lessee and the lessor are subsidiaries of the same parent and either is unconsolidated.
- b. The lessee and the lessor have common officers, directors, or shareholders to a significant degree.
- c. The lessor has been created, directly or indirectly, by the lessee and is substantially dependent on the lessee for its operations.
- d. The lessee (or its parent) has the right, through options or otherwise, to acquire control of the lessor.

OPINION**Application of Opinion**

13. This Opinion is concerned with accounting for noncancelable leases (or leases cancelable only upon the occurrence of some remote contingency) which are material, either individually or as a group for similar types of property, or in the aggregate. The presumption is that if the rights and obligations under such leases are either material in relation to the lessee's net assets or reasonably expected to affect materially the results of operations of future periods, the leases are covered by the provisions of this Opinion.

Capitalization

14. Except in cases of leases which come under paragraphs 9, 10, 11, and 12 of this Opinion, the right to use property and a related obligation to pay specific rents over a definite future period are not considered by the Board to be assets and liabilities under present accounting concepts (see paragraphs 6, 7 and 8). Leases of this type involve future rights and obligations, however, and pertinent information should be disclosed as described in paragraphs 16, 17, and 18. In the opinion of the Board, disclosure rather than capitalization is the correct accounting treatment of these leases.

15. Leases which are clearly in substance installment purchases of property (see paragraphs 9, 10, 11, and 12) should be recorded as purchases. The property and the obligation should be stated in the balance sheet at an appropriate discounted amount of future payments under the lease agreement. A note or schedule may be required to disclose significant provisions of the transaction. The method of amortizing the amount of the asset to income should be appropriate to the nature and use of the asset and should be chosen without reference to the period over which the related obligation is discharged.

Disclosure

16. The Board believes that financial statements should disclose sufficient information regarding material, noncancelable leases which are not recorded as assets and liabilities (see paragraphs 13 and 14) to enable the reader to assess the effect of lease commitments upon the financial position and results of operations, both present and prospective, of the lessee. Consequently, the financial statements or the accompanying notes should disclose the minimum annual rentals under

such leases and the period over which the outlays will be made.

17. In many cases, additional disclosure will be required. The Board believes that rentals for the current year on leases covered by this Opinion should be disclosed if they differ significantly from the minimum rentals under the leases. Type or types of property leased, obligations assumed or guarantees made, and significant provisions of lease agreements (such as restrictions on dividends, debt, or further leasing or unusual options) are examples of other types of information which should also usually be disclosed.

18. The specific details to be disclosed and the method of disclosure will vary from one situation to another depending upon the circumstances. In many cases, a simple statement will suffice. In more complicated situations, more detailed disclosure will be appropriate. For example, it may be useful to provide a schedule of rentals by years or by three- or five-year periods if annual rentals will fluctuate significantly; or it may be desirable to provide a brief description of the basis for calculating the rental if the amount of rent is dependent upon some factor other than the lapse of time; or it may be necessary to indicate the effect of lease renewals in order to avoid misleading implications.

Sale and Leaseback

19. The principal details of any material sale-and-leaseback arrangement should be disclosed in the year in which the transaction originates.

20. The conclusions in paragraphs 14, 15, 16, 17, and 18 apply to the agreement covering the leaseback as through no concurrent sale were involved.

21. The Board is of the opinion that the sale and the leaseback usually cannot be accounted for as independent transactions. Neither the sale price nor the annual rental can be objectively evaluated independently of the other. Consequently, material gains or losses resulting from the sale of properties which are the subject of sale-and-leaseback transactions, together with the related tax effect, should be amortized over the life of the lease as an adjustment of the rental cost (or, if the leased property is capitalized, as an adjustment of depreciation).

22. Exceptions to the rule in paragraph 21 are expected to be rare. If, however, the fair value of the property at the time of the

sale and leaseback is less than the undepreciated cost, the loss should be reflected in income at the time of the sale to the extent that a write-down to recognize fair value could properly have been recorded in the absence of a sale. In other instances in which the use of the leased property changes with the sale and leaseback and in which the sale price falls within the limits which would reasonably be set by independent transactions (for example, companies engaged in both constructing and operating office buildings or other commercial investment properties may sell a property after construction and lease it back for operation), the exceptional circumstances surrounding a

particular sale-and-leaseback transaction may clearly justify recognition of all or part of the gain or loss at the time of the sale.

Prior Lease Agreements

23. Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. However, the Board encourages the revision of past accounts in individual cases where the effect on current financial statements is material. In any event, the Board believes the conclusions as to disclosure stated in paragraphs 16, 17, and 18 should apply to lease agreements made prior to the issuance of this Opinion.

The Opinion entitled "Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements of Lessee" was adopted by the assenting votes of twenty members of the Board, of whom two, Messrs. Moonitz and Walker, assented with qualification. Mr. Spacek dissented.

Mr. Moonitz assents to the publication of this Opinion because he believes that it will increase the disclosure of pertinent information regarding leases in published financial statements. He does not believe that this Opinion resolves the underlying issue of the nature of assets and of liabilities. He dissents to paragraph 21, which evidences the confusion concerning assets and liabilities. Paragraph 21 recommends that gains or losses from sale-and-leaseback transactions be amortized over the life of the lease. The adoption of this recommendation in practice will result in the introduction into the balance sheet of "deferred credits to income" for gains and "deferred charges to income" for losses. In a sale-and-leaseback transaction, neither of these deferred items qualifies as a liability or as an asset. Their effect is to permit a smoothing of reported net income over a number of years. This result stems from the attempt to treat the transaction as though no sale has been made, insofar as the effect on net income is concerned, while treating the property as sold in the balance sheet. If the property has in fact been sold, it should be so reported in consistent fashion in all the financial statements. If it has not, the balance sheet should not be made to report that it has.

Mr. Walker assents to the conclusions of this Opinion. He believes, however, that adequate disclosure with respect to leases which are considered to be essentially equivalent to installment purchases can be made

as well by notes to the financial statements as by inclusion in the figures. Such disclosure is more appropriate because of the legal status and avoids inflating the balance sheet with questionable assets and liabilities.

Mr. Spacek dissents from the principal conclusion that a lease liability should be shown on the balance sheet only when the lease, because of an element of prepaid rent (referred to in this Opinion as "equity") arising from the early lease payments, is interpreted to be an agreement to purchase. In his view, a liability (discounted to present value) should be recorded for all material amounts payable under noncancelable leases, which in fact are "take or pay" contracts, representing a present liability payable in the future. The payment of this obligation has a call on other corporate assets, ahead of corporate equity applicable to investors; and, thus, a liability should be shown on the face of the balance sheet, rather than being relegated to inadequate footnote disclosure. He considers this "equity" to be prepaid rent which should be deferred to the periods to which it applies. It is incorrect to assume that only when rental charges are thus determined to be excessive in early periods does a recordable obligation for future payments result, since this leads to the unsupportable conclusion that the payment of prepaid rent creates a liability and the non-existence of prepaid rent eliminates the liability. He further believes this Opinion (a) does not explain why its major conclusions disagree with those in *Research Study No. 4*, and (b) establishes criteria for recording lease obligations on an unrealistic and impracticable basis which compounds the ineffective provisions of ARB 43 that have not met the needs of investors and other users of financial statements.

NOTE

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter. Except where formal adoption by the Council or the membership of the Institute has been asked and secured, the authority of the opinions rests upon their general acceptability.

While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from the Board's recommendations must be assumed by those who adopt other practices. Recommendations of the Board are not intended to be retroactive, nor applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board

ALVIN R. JENNINGS

Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

HERMAN W. BEVIS

CARMAN G. BLOUGH

W. A. CRICHLEY

WALTER F. FRESE

IRA N. FRISBEE

THOMAS G. HIGGINS

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

MAURICE MOONITZ

C. A. MOYER

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN PEOPLES

JOHN W. QUEENAN

IRA A. SCHUR

LEONARD SPACEK

HASSEL TIPPIT

ROBERT M. TRUEBLOOD

WILBERT A. WALKER

ROBERT E. WITSCHY

APB Opinion No. 6

STATUS OF ACCOUNTING RESEARCH BULLETINS

OCTOBER, 1965

1. On October 2, 1964, Council of the Institute adopted recommendations¹ requiring that departures from accounting principles accepted in Board Opinions and Accounting Research Bulletins be disclosed in footnotes to financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of any such departure on the financial statements is material. This requirement is applicable to financial statements for fiscal periods that begin after December 31, 1965.

2. Concurrently, in a related action,¹ Council directed the Accounting Principles Board to review all Accounting Research Bulletins prior to December 31, 1965, and determine whether any of them should be revised or withdrawn.

3. In accordance with this directive, the Board has reviewed all outstanding Accounting Research Bulletins. These consist of Numbers 43 (including Preface, Introduction and Appendices) through 51,² except:

- a. Chapter 7C of ARB 43, which was superseded in 1957 by ARB 48;
- b. Chapter 14 of ARB 43, which was superseded in 1964 by Board Opinion 5; and
- c. ARB 44, which was superseded in July 1958 by ARB 44 (Revised).

For convenience, individual chapters and sub-chapters of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43 are, at times, referred to as "Bulletins" in this Opinion.

4. A number of matters currently under study or planned for study by the Board are directly related to matters discussed in the Bulletins. It is the present intention of the Board to make some of these subjects of Opinions as soon as practicable. Accordingly, the language, form and substance of some of the Bulletins may be changed at a later date.

5. Nevertheless, the Board believes that the considerations which gave rise to the conclusions set forth in some of the bulletins

may no longer apply with the same force as when the Bulletins were issued, and that, pending further consideration by the Board, it should revise certain of the Bulletins in order to obviate conflicts between present accepted practice and provisions of outstanding Bulletins which would otherwise require unwarranted disclosure under the action of Council.³

6. The Board's review at this time, accordingly, was confined primarily to substantive matters in the Bulletins, and the revisions set forth in this Opinion are made in the light of currently accepted practices followed in preparing financial statements and reporting upon them. In addition, it has approved revisions designed to clarify parts of some of the Bulletins and to express its conclusions on certain matters not covered specifically in the Bulletins.

7. In making its review, the Board has interpreted the disclosure requirement approved by Council to apply, with equal force, to departures from the provisions of Accounting Research Bulletins and Board Opinions that relate not only to accounting principles followed in the preparation of the financial statements but also to the form and content of financial statements and to the disclosure of information. For purposes of carrying out Council's requirement, the Board construes the term "accounting principles" to include not only principles and practices, but also the methods of applying them.⁴

8. Some Accounting Research Bulletins and Board Opinions contain expressions of preference as to accounting principles, including form and content of financial statements and the disclosure of information, although other principles are stated to be acceptable. Under these circumstances, when one of the principles accepted in the Bulletin or Opinion is applied in financial statements, disclosure of a departure from the *preferred* principle is not required. On

¹ Special Bulletin, *Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board*, October 1964. (Reprinted in Appendix A of this Opinion.)

² ARB Nos. 1-42 were cancelled and replaced by ARB 43, and by Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1, both issued in 1953.

³ Special Bulletin, *Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board*, October 1964. (Reprinted in Appendix A of this Opinion.)

⁴ Statement on Auditing Procedure No. 33, *Auditing Standards and Procedures*, paragraph 2, page 40.

the other hand, the language of some Accounting Research Bulletins and Board Opinions indicates that one or more specified principles are acceptable, and, directly or by implication, that others are not. In such cases, departures from the *specified* principles must be disclosed.

9. The Preface and Appendices of ARB 43 explain what revisions the Committee on Accounting Procedure made to previously issued Bulletins and why certain revisions were made; therefore, the Board considers this material to be primarily of historical

value. With respect to the Introduction, paragraph 8 has been expanded as to disclosure requirements by the action of Council on October 2, 1964.⁵

10. The following paragraphs (12 through 23) of this Opinion set forth the Board's conclusions as to the extent to which currently outstanding Bulletins should be revised at this time. Except for these revisions, these and all other currently existing Bulletins continue in full force and effect without change.

BULLETINS REVISED

11. The following Bulletins are revised, in part, by this Opinion.

ARB 43, Chapter 1B—Treasury Stock

12. The Board considers that the following accounting practices, in addition to the accounting practices indicated in Chapter 1B, are acceptable, and that they appear to be more in accord with current developments in practice:

- a. When a corporation's stock is retired, or purchased for constructive retirement (with or without an intention to retire the stock formally in accordance with applicable laws):
 - i. *an excess of purchase price over par or stated value* may be allocated between capital surplus and retained earnings. The portion of the excess allocated to capital surplus should be limited to the sum of (a) all capital surplus arising from previous retirements and net "gains" on sales of treasury stock of the same issue and (b) the prorata portion of capital surplus paid in, voluntary transfers of retained earnings, capitalization of stock dividends, etc., on the same issue. For this purpose, any remaining capital surplus applicable to issues fully retired (formal or constructive) is deemed to be applicable prorata to shares of common stock. Alternatively, the excess may be charged entirely to retained earnings in recognition of the fact that a corporation can always capitalize or allocate retained earnings for such purposes.
 - ii. *an excess of par or stated value over purchase price* should be credited to capital surplus.

- b. When a corporation's stock is acquired for purposes other than retirement (formal or constructive), or when ultimate disposition has not yet been decided, the cost of acquired stock may be shown separately as a deduction from the total of capital stock, capital surplus, and retained earnings, or may be accorded the accounting treatment appropriate for retired stock, or in some circumstances may be shown as an asset in accordance with paragraph 4 of Chapter 1A of ARB 43. "Gains" on sales of treasury stock not previously accounted for as constructively retired should be credited to capital surplus; "losses" may be charged to capital surplus to the extent that previous net "gains" from sales or retirements of the same class of stock are included therein, otherwise to retained earnings.
- c. Treasury stock delivered to effect a "pooling of interests" should be accounted for as though it were newly issued, and the cost thereof should receive the accounting treatment appropriate for retired stock.

13. Laws of some states govern the circumstances under which a corporation may acquire its own stock and prescribe the accounting treatment therefor. Where such requirements are at variance with paragraph 12, the accounting should conform to the applicable law. When state laws relating to acquisition of stock restrict the availability of retained earnings for payment of dividends or have other effects of a significant nature, these facts should be disclosed.

⁵ Special Bulletin, *Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board*,

October 1964. (Reprinted in Appendix A of this Opinion.)

ARB 43, Chapter 3A—Current Assets and Current Liabilities

14. The following paragraph is added to this chapter:

10. Unearned discounts (other than cash or quantity discounts and the like), finance charges and interest included in the face amount of receivables should be shown as a deduction from the related receivables.

ARB 43, Chapter 5—Intangible Assets

15. The last sentence of paragraph 7 of Chapter 5 is deleted.

ARB 43, Chapter 7B—Stock Dividends and Stock Split-Ups

16. The Board is of the opinion that paragraph 6 should not be construed as prohibiting the equity method of accounting for substantial intercorporate investments. This method is described in paragraph 19 of ARB 51.

ARB 43, Chapter 9B—Depreciation on Appreciation

17. Paragraphs 1 and 2 are deleted and the following paragraph is substituted for them:

1. The Board is of the opinion that property, plant and equipment should not be written up by an entity to reflect appraisal, market or current values which are above cost to the entity. This statement is not intended to change accounting practices followed in connection with quasi-reorganizations⁶ or reorganizations. This statement may not apply to foreign operations under unusual conditions such as serious inflation or currency devaluation. However, when the accounts of a company with foreign operations are translated into United States currency for consolidation, such write ups normally are eliminated. Whenever appreciation has been recorded on the books, income should be charged with depreciation computed on the written up amounts.

Mr. Davidson agrees with the statement that at the present time "property, plant and equipment should not be written up" to reflect current costs,

but only because he feels that current measurement techniques are inadequate for such restatement. When adequate measurement methods are developed, he believes that both the reporting of operations in the income statement and the valuation of plant in the balance sheet would be improved through the use of current rather than acquisition costs. In the meanwhile, strong efforts should be made to develop the techniques for measuring current costs.

ARB 43, Chapter 12—Foreign Operations and Foreign Exchange

18. Paragraphs 12 and 18 state that long-term receivables and long-term liabilities should be translated at historical exchange rates. The Board is of the opinion that translation of long-term receivables and long-term liabilities at current exchange rates is appropriate in many circumstances.

ARB 43, Chapter 15—Unamortized Discount, Issue Cost, and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded

19. Paragraph 12 is amended to read as follows:

12. The third method, amortization over the life of the new issue, is appropriate under circumstances where the refunding takes place because of currently lower interest rates or anticipation of higher interest rates in the future. In such circumstances, the expected benefits justify spreading the costs over the life of the new issue, and this method is, therefore, acceptable. Paragraph 11 of this chapter is applicable when this method is adopted.

ARB 44 (Revised) — Declining-Balance Depreciation

20. Pending further study, paragraph 9 is revised to read as follows:

9. When a company subject to rate-making processes adopts the declining-balance method of depreciation for income tax purposes but adopts other appropriate methods for financial accounting purposes in the circumstances described in paragraph 8, and does not give accounting recog-

⁶ See Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, Chapter 7A, *Quasi-Reorganization or Corporate Readjustment*.

dition to deferred income taxes, disclosure should be made of this fact.

Messrs. Donald J. Bevis, Catlett, Layton, Moonitz, Penney, Schur, and Weston do not agree with paragraph 20 of this Opinion because it deletes a requirement in paragraph 9 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 44 (Revised) for the disclosure of information they consider to be essential in financial statements. Paragraph 9 has required full disclosure of the effect "... arising out of the difference between the financial statements and the tax returns when the declining-balance method is adopted for income-tax purposes but other appropriate methods are used for financial accounting purposes" in the case of companies which (pursuant to paragraph 8) are not required to give accounting recognition to such differences. The intent of paragraph 20 of this Opinion is to continue the requirement for disclosure of the accounting practice followed but to omit the previous requirement for disclosure of the effect of the practice. Thus, in their opinion, the Accounting Principles Board is inappropriately sponsoring the viewpoint that investors and other users of financial statements should be told of the practice but need not be furnished the information to judge its significance.

21. The letter of April 15, 1959, addressed to the members of the Institute by the Committee on Accounting Procedure, interpreting ARB 44 (Revised), is continued in force.

ARB 48—Business Combinations

22. The Board believes that Accounting Research Bulletin No. 48 should be continued as an expression of the general philosophy for differentiating business combinations that are purchases from those that are poolings of interests, but emphasizes that the criteria set forth in paragraphs 5 and 6 are illustrative guides and not necessarily literal requirements.

Deferred Income Taxes

23. Provisions for deferred income taxes may be computed either (a) at the tax rate for the period in which the provision is made (the so-called "deferred credit" approach) or (b) at the tax rate which it is estimated will apply in the future (the so-called "liability" approach).⁷

- (a) Under the deferred credit method, the accumulated balance is not adjusted for changes in tax rates subsequent to the year of provision. Accordingly, the deferred amount is allocated to (drawn down in) the future periods based on the recorded tax benefit, which may be at a rate different from the then current rate.
- (b) Under the liability method, the accumulated balance is adjusted for changes in tax rates subsequent to the year of provision.⁸ Accordingly, the deferred amount after adjustment is allocated to (drawn down in) the future periods based on the then current tax rates.

All provisions of Accounting Research Bulletins and Board Opinions in conflict with this paragraph are modified accordingly, including Chapter 9C and Chapter 10B of ARB 43 and ARB 44 (Revised).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS OPINION

24. This Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods that begin after December 31,

1965. However, the Board encourages earlier application of the provisions of this Opinion.

The Opinion entitled "Status of Accounting Research Bulletins" was adopted unanimously by the twenty-one members of the Board, of whom one, Mr. Davidson, assented with

qualification as to paragraph 17 and seven, Messrs Donald J. Bevis, Catlett, Layton, Moonitz, Penney, Schur, and Weston assented with qualification as to paragraph 20.

⁷ For a discussion of this subject see Accounting Research Study No. 7, *Inventory of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles for Business Enterprises*, p. 114.

⁸ See Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, Chapter 8—Paragraph 11.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

- b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support".*

- c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1965-1966)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG
DONALD J. BEVIS
HERMAN W. BEVIS
GEORGE R. CATLETT
W. A. CRICHLEY

SIDNEY DAVIDSON
PHILIP L. DEFLESE
WALTER F. FRESE
LEROY LAYTON
ORAL L. LUPER
MAURICE MOONITZ
ROBERT J. MURPHEY
LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN PEOPLES
JOHN W. QUEENAN
IRA A. SCHUR
HASSEL TIPPIT
WILBERT A. WALKER
FRANK T. WESTON
ROBERT E. WITSCHY

APPENDIX A

October, 1964

Special Bulletin**Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board**

TO MEMBERS OF THE AMERICAN INSTITUTE
OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

The Council of the Institute, at its meeting October 2, 1964, unanimously adopted recommendations that members should see to it that departures from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board (as well as effective Accounting Research Bulletins issued by the former Committee on Accounting Procedure) are disclosed, either in footnotes to financial statements or in the audit reports of members in their capacity as independent auditors.

This action applies to financial statements for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1965.

The recommendations adopted by Council are as follows:

1. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

2. Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."

3. "Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.

4. No distinction should be made between the Bulletins issued by the former Committee on Accounting Procedure on matters of accounting principles and the Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board. Accordingly, references in this report to Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board also apply to the Accounting Research Bulletins.^{1,2}

¹ This is in accord with the following resolution of the Accounting Principles Board at its first meeting on September 11, 1959:

"The Accounting Principles Board has the authority, as did the predecessor committee, to review and revise any of these Bulletins (published by the predecessor committee) and it

plans to take such action from time to time.

"Pending such action and in order to prevent any misunderstanding meanwhile as to the status of the existing accounting research and terminology bulletins, the Accounting Principles

(Continued on next page.)

5. If an accounting principle that differs materially in its effect from one accepted in an Opinion of the Accounting Principles Board is applied in financial statements, the reporting member must decide whether the principle has substantial authoritative support and is applicable in the circumstances.

a. If he concludes that it does not, he would either qualify his opinion, disclaim an opinion, or give an adverse opinion as appropriate. Requirements for handling these situations in the reports of members are set forth in generally accepted auditing standards and in the Code of Professional Ethics and need no further implementation.

b. If he concludes that it does have substantial authoritative support:

(1) he would give an unqualified opinion and

(2) disclose the fact of departure from the Opinion in a separate paragraph in his report or see that it is disclosed in a footnote to the financial statements and, where practicable, its effects on the financial statements.* Illustrative language for this purpose is as follows:

The company's treatment of (describe) is at variance with Opinion No. of the Accounting Principles Board (Accounting Research Bulletin No. of the Committee on Accounting Procedure) of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. This Opinion (Bulletin) states that (describe the principle in question). If the Accounting Principles Board Opinion (Accounting Research Bulletin) had been followed, income for the year would have been increased (decreased) by \$....., and the amount of retained earnings at (date) increased (decreased) by \$..... In our opinion, the company's treatment has substantial authoritative support and is an acceptable practice.

* * *

If disclosure is made in a footnote, the last sentence might be changed

to read: In the opinion of the independent auditors,, the company's treatment has substantial authoritative support and is an acceptable practice.

6. Departures from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board which have a material effect should be disclosed in reports for fiscal periods that begin:

a. After December 31, 1965, in the case of existing Bulletins and Opinions;

b. After the issue date of future Opinions unless a later effective date is specified in the Opinion.

7. The Accounting Principles Board should review prior to December 31, 1965, all Bulletins of the Committee on Accounting Procedure and determine whether any of them should be revised or withdrawn.

8. The Accounting Principles Board should include in each Opinion a notation that members should disclose a material departure therefrom.

9. The failure to disclose a material departure from an Accounting Principles Board Opinion is deemed to be substandard reporting.† The Practice Review Committee should be instructed to give its attention to this area and to specifically report to Council the extent of deviations from these recommendations.

10. The Committee on Professional Ethics and the Institute's legal counsel have advised that the present By-Laws and Code of Professional Ethics would not cover an infraction of the above recommendations. Whether the Code of Professional Ethics should be amended is a question which should be studied further.‡

* * *

As indicated in the above text, Council's action is not intended to have the force and effect of a rule of ethics, but rather that of a standard of reporting practice, deviations from which should have the attention of the Practice Review Committee.

Yours truly,

THOMAS D. FLYNN, *President*

Board now makes public announcement that these bulletins should be considered as continuing in force with the same degree of authority as before."

* The Terminology Bulletins are not within the purview of the Council's resolution nor of this report because they are not statements on accounting principles.

† In those cases in which it is not practicable to determine the approximate effect on the financial statements, this fact should be expressly stated.

‡ In discussion at the Council meeting it was explained that the phrase "substandard reporting" was used in the sense of reporting practices not in conformity with recommendations of the Council.

§ By order of the Council a special committee is now reviewing the entire matter of the status of Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board, and the development of accounting principles and practices for the purpose of recommending to Council a general statement of philosophy, purpose and aims in this area.

APB Opinion No. 7

ACCOUNTING FOR LEASES IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESSORS

MAY, 1966

INTRODUCTION

1. This Opinion sets forth the Board's views as to accounting for the revenue and expense related to, and the investment in, property leased to others. Because of the highly specialized problems involved, this Opinion does not apply to lease agreements concerning natural resources such as oil, gas, timber and mineral rights.

2. The principal accounting problems of lessors concern the allocation of revenue and expense to the accounting periods covered by a lease. Although the lease typically establishes a schedule of rent to be received

by the lessor, the treatment of this rent as revenue in the period of receipt does not necessarily result in a fair measurement of the lessor's periodic income during the term of the lease. The allocation to accounting periods of acquisition and operating costs of the leased property and of costs of negotiating and closing the lease needs to be systematic, rational, and consistent with the method of recognizing revenue. The description and classification in the balance sheet of the investment in leasing activities is also of importance.

DISCUSSION

Leasing activities

3. Lessors may engage in leasing activities to accomplish one or more objectives, such as: investing funds; facilitating the sale or use of the lessor's own manufactured product; retaining control of locations when it is desirable that the property be operated by others; and making available to others property operated by the lessor for profit. Some lessors engage in leasing primarily or solely as a method of investing funds; some financing institutions specialize in leasing. On the other hand, some lessors engage in leasing as incidental to entirely different and relatively more significant business operations. Leasing activities of many lessors have both financing and operating characteristics to some degree, and some lessors have leasing activities of both types.¹

Accounting methods

4. There are two predominant methods in general use for allocating rental revenue and expenses over the accounting periods covered by a lease. These may be termed the "financing" and the "operating" methods.

5. *Financing method*—Under the financing method, the excess of aggregate rentals over the cost (reduced by estimated residual value at the termination of the lease) of the leased property is generally designed to compensate the lessor for the use of the funds invested. Since this excess is in the nature of interest, it is recognized as revenue during the term of the lease in decreasing amounts related to the declining balance of the unrecovered investment or, in other words, as an approximately level rate of return on funds not yet recovered. When rentals are level, this results in a decreasing percentage of each succeeding rental being accounted for as revenue and an increasing percentage as recovery of investment. This is comparable to the method followed by most lending institutions in accounting for level repayment plans.

6. *Operating method*—Under the operating method, aggregate rentals are reported as revenue over the life of the lease. The amount of revenue to be recognized in each accounting period will ordinarily be equivalent to the amount of rent receivable according to the provisions of the lease unless

¹ A comprehensive discussion of leasing will be found in Accounting Research Study No. 4, *Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements* by John H. Myers, published by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants in 1962.

(Accounting research studies are not statements of this Board or of the Institute, but are published for the purpose of stimulating discussion on important accounting issues.)

distortion of periodic revenue would result, e.g., when the rentals depart radically from a straight-line basis without relation to the economic usefulness of the leased property. The income statement reflects, as expenses, depreciation of the leased property, maintenance and other related costs, as well as the cost of any other services rendered under the provisions of the lease. The amount of these expenses to be recognized in each accounting period should be determined by methods which are appropriate in the circumstances and which are conventionally used for such expenses when incurred in activities other than leasing.

7. *Basis for selection*—The objective of fairly stating the lessor's net income during each of the periods covered by the leasing activities is the most important consideration in differentiating between the use of the financing or operating methods (see Paragraphs 13-15 for a description of balance sheet presentations consistent with the method used in determining income). Pertinent factors in making the choice, among others, are the following: the nature of the lessor's business activities; the specific objectives of its leasing activities, including the relationship to other business activities of the lessor, if any; the term of the lease in relation to the estimated useful life of the property; the existence of renewal or purchase options and the likelihood that the lessee will exercise them; provisions of the lease which indicate the extent to which the usual risks of ownership (e.g., obsolescence, unprofitable operation, unsatisfactory performance, idle capacity, dubious residual value) or rewards of ownership (e.g., profitable operation, gain from appreciation in value at end of lease) rest with the lessor or the lessee.

8. The financing method is generally appropriate for measuring periodic net income from leasing activities of entities engaged in, perhaps among other things, lending money at interest—e.g., lease-finance companies, banks, insurance companies or pension funds. Lease agreements of institutions of this kind typically are designed to pass all or

most of the usual ownership risks or rewards to the lessee, and to assure the lessor of, and generally limit him to, a full recovery of his investment plus a reasonable return on the use of the funds invested, subject only to the credit risks generally associated with secured loans. Usually, the financing method is similar to the method of accounting for revenue already in use for other lending activities of the institutions. The financing method is also appropriate for a leasing activity of an entity which is not identified as a financial institution, such as a manufacturer, if the lease agreements have the characteristics described earlier in this paragraph.

9. On the other hand, there are companies (e.g., the owner-operator of an office building, the lessor of automotive equipment on short-term leases—daily, weekly or monthly) which retain the usual risks or rewards of ownership in connection with their leasing activity. They may also assume responsibilities for maintaining the leased property or furnishing certain related services which will give rise to costs to be incurred in the future. Rental revenues are designed to cover the costs of these services, depreciation and obsolescence, and to provide an adequate profit for assuming the risks involved. In these cases the operating method is appropriate for measuring periodic net income from leasing activities. The operating method is also appropriate if the leasing activity is an integral part of manufacturing, marketing or other operations of a business which generate revenues and costs which must be considered along with revenues and costs from the leasing activities in arriving at appropriate methods for measuring the overall periodic net income (examples are leases of retail outlets with lease provisions deliberately made favorable to induce lessee to handle lessor's product and leases which generate significant servicing revenues and costs). The operating method likewise is appropriate for leasing activities for an otherwise strictly financing institution if such activities are characterized as set forth in this paragraph.

OPINION

10. The Board believes that the financing method of accounting, described in Paragraph 5, should be used for lease financing activities of the type described in Paragraph 8. The Board believes that the operating method, described in Paragraph 6, should be used for leasing activities of the type described in Paragraph 9. If a single company

engages in separate leasing activities of the types described in both Paragraphs 8 and 9, the appropriate accounting method should be used for each type of leasing activity. Where a single lease has both financing and operating characteristics to some degree, the determination of the appropriate accounting method should be made on the

basis of which of the two methods described in Paragraphs 5 and 6 will fairly reflect net income. In rare cases, a single lease may require the use of both methods to reflect fairly lessor's net income; a condition precedent to this would be the ability initially to assign aggregate rentals to each of the financing and operating elements.

Initial direct costs

11. When initial direct costs of negotiating and closing leases are reasonably expected to be recovered from revenues, these costs should preferably be deferred and allocated to future periods in which the related revenues are reported. In this context, "initial direct" costs are those costs which are directly associated with consummating the lease (e.g., commissions, legal fees, costs of investigating the lessee's financial status and of preparing and processing documents). The method of allocation to future periods should be consistent with that used to recognize revenue under the financing or operating methods. However, substantially the same net income would be reported under the financing method by expensing initial costs as incurred and recognizing as revenue in the same period, in addition to the normal revenue, a portion of the unearned revenue equal to the initial costs; this method is also acceptable. When initial direct costs of a lessor are reasonably constant in relation to revenues, no practical objection can be raised to a practice of consistently expensing these costs as incurred and recognizing revenue without compensating for initial costs.

Leasing by manufacturers

12. When manufacturers use leases to assist in marketing products or services, the Board believes that the guidelines described in Paragraphs 7, 8 and 9 indicate whether the financing or operating method is appropriate. Manufacturing revenues (amounts which would have been obtained in a regular sale or the discounted amount of future rentals whichever is lower), costs and profit should be determined at the time of entering into the lease and reported in the income statement of the lessor on the same basis as outright sales of similar manufactured property, provided all of these conditions are met: (a) credit risks are reasonably predictable, (b) the lessor does not retain sizable risks of ownership of the nature described in Paragraph 7 and (c) there are

no important uncertainties surrounding the amount of costs yet to be incurred or revenues yet to be earned under the lease. If any of these conditions is not met, manufacturing profit should be recognized, using the operating method, only as realized in the form of rental revenue over the term of the lease. If manufacturing revenue is determined at the time of entering into the lease, the conditions described above having been met, the financing method should be used and the amount of the manufacturing revenue becomes the "cost of the leased property" as that term is used in Paragraph 5. When it is feasible to determine normal selling prices, then revenues, costs and trading profits of dealers and other middlemen should be recognized in the same manner and under the same conditions described above for manufacturers.

Reporting in balance sheet

13. Amounts invested in leasing activities which are significant in relation to other resources or activities should be stated separately in a manner which best describes the nature of the investment. The investment in leasing activities is neither a conventional loan or receivable, nor in the same category as facilities employed in typical manufacturing or commercial operations. The classification and description of the investment should be appropriate in the circumstances and should depend upon whether the financing or operating method of accounting is used.

14. When the financing method is used, the aggregate rentals called for in the lease should be classified with or near receivables and a description used along the lines of "receivables under contracts for equipment rentals" or "contracts receivable for equipment rentals." When a company is predominantly engaged in leasing activities for which the financing method is appropriate, information should be disclosed regarding future maturities of the rentals receivable. Unearned finance charges or interest (as defined in Paragraph 5) included in the aggregate rentals should be shown as a deduction therefrom.² Estimated residual value should be classified separately with or near property, plant and equipment unless the residual value represents an amount expected to be collected from the lessee (e.g., when a favorable purchase option exists), in which case it should be classified with or near notes and accounts

² See Paragraph 14 of Opinion No. 6 of the Accounting Principles Board.

receivable. Thus, the investment is represented by the net rentals receivable plus the residual value. Receivables under financing leases are subject to the same considerations as to current or noncurrent classification, where such segregation is appropriate in the balance sheet, as are assets resulting from other activities.³

15. When the operating method is used, the investment should be classified with or near property, plant and equipment and a description used along the lines of "investment in leased property," "property held for or under lease," or "property (equipment, buildings, machines, etc.) leased to others"; accumulated allowances for depreciation and obsolescence should be shown as a deduction from the investment.

Disclosure

16. In addition to an appropriate description in the balance sheet of the investment in property held for or under lease (see Paragraphs 13-15), the principal accounting methods used in accounting for leasing activities should be disclosed. Further, where leasing is a substantial portion of a nonfinancing institution's operations, the Board believes that financial statements should disclose sufficient information to enable readers to assess the significance of leasing activities to the company. Leases and leased property are also subject to the conventional disclosure requirements affecting financial statements as, for example, disclosure of pledges of leased property and leases as security for loans.

Income taxes

17. When lease revenues or expenses are recognized for tax purposes in a period other than the one in which they are recognized for financial reporting, appropriate

consideration should be given to allocation of income taxes among accounting periods.

Relationship to APB Opinion No. 5

18. The Board takes notice of a question that has been raised as to whether certain conclusions herein are inconsistent with conclusions in Opinion No. 5, "Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements of Lessee"—specifically, the question is whether leases accounted for on the financing method by lessors should be capitalized by lessees. As indicated in Paragraphs 2 and 7, the Board considers the principal accounting problem of lessors to be the allocation of revenue and expense to accounting periods covered by the lease in a manner that meets the objective of fairly stating the lessor's net income; the Board believes that this objective can be met by application of the financing method when the circumstances are as described in the Opinion. As to the lessee, however, capitalization of leases, other than those which are in substance installment purchases of property, may not be necessary in order to state net income fairly since the amount of the lease rentals may represent a proper charge to income. There continues to be a question as to whether assets and the related obligations should be reflected in the balance sheet for leases other than those that are in substance installment purchases. The Board will continue to give consideration to this question.

Prior lease agreements

19. Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. However, the Board believes that the conclusions as to disclosure in Paragraphs 13-16 should apply to lease agreements made prior as well as subsequent to the issuance of this Opinion.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS OPINION

20. Except as noted in Paragraph 19, this Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1966.

However, the Board encourages earlier application of the provisions of this Opinion where appropriate.

The Opinion entitled "Accounting for Leases in Financial Statements of Lessors" was adopted unanimously

by the twenty-one members of the Board.

³ See Chapter 3A of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

- b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."*

- c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1965-1966)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

DONALD J. BEVIS

HERMAN W. BEVIS

GEORGE R. CATLETT

W. A. CRICHLEY

SIDNEY DAVIDSON

PHILIP L. DEFLIESE

WALTER F. FRESE

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

MAURICE MOONITZ

ROBERT J. MURPHEY

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN PEOPLES

JOHN W. QUEENAN

IRA A. SCHUR

HASSEL TIPPIT

WILBERT A. WALKER

FRANK T. WESTON

ROBERT E. WITSCHY

APB Opinion No. 8

ACCOUNTING FOR THE COST OF PENSION PLANS

NOVEMBER, 1966

Contents

	Paragraph Numbers
Introduction	1-7
Pension Plans Covered by this Opinion	8
Basic Accounting Method	9-18
Actuarial Cost Methods	19-24
Actuarial Gains and Losses	25-33
Employees Included in Cost Calculations	34-36
Companies With More Than One Plan	37
Defined-contribution Plans	38-39
Insured Plans	40-41
Effect of Funding	42-44
Income Taxes	45
Disclosure	46
Changes in Accounting Method	47
Transition to Recommended Practices	48-49
Effective Date	50
Actuarial Valuations, Assumptions and Cost Methods	Appendix A
Glossary	Appendix B

INTRODUCTION

1. Pension plans have developed in an environment characterized by a complex array of social concepts and pressures, legal considerations, actuarial techniques, income tax laws and regulations, business philosophies, and accounting concepts and practices. Each plan reflects the interaction of the environment with the interests of the persons concerned with its design, interpretation and operation. From these factors have resulted widely divergent practices in accounting for the cost of pension plans.

2. An increased significance of pension cost in relation to the financial position and results of operations of many businesses has been brought about by the substantial growth of private pension plans, both in numbers of employees covered and in amounts of retirement benefits. The assets accumu-

lated and the future benefits to employees under these plans have reached such magnitude that changes in actuarial assumptions concerning pension fund earnings, employee mortality and turnover, retirement age, etc., and the treatment of differences between such assumptions and actual experience, can have important effects on the pension cost recognized for accounting purposes from year to year.

3. In Accounting Research Bulletin No. 47, *Accounting for Costs of Pension Plans*, the committee on accounting procedure stated its preferences that "costs based on current and future services should be systematically accrued during the expected period of active service of the covered employees" and that "costs based on past services should be charged off over some reasonable period,

provided the allocation is made on a systematic and rational basis and does not cause distortion of the operating results in any one year." In recognition of the divergent views then existing, however, the committee also said "as a minimum, the accounts and financial statements should reflect accruals which equal the present worth, actuarially calculated, of pension commitments to employees to the extent that pension rights have vested in the employees, reduced, in the case of the balance sheet, by any accumulated trusted funds or annuity contracts purchased." The committee did not explain what was meant by the term "vested" and did not make any recommendations concerning appropriate actuarial cost methods or recognition of actuarial gains and losses.

4. Despite the issuance of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 47, accounting for the cost of pension plans has varied widely among companies and has sometimes resulted in wide year-to-year fluctuations in the provisions for pension cost of a single company. Generally, companies have provided pension cost equivalent to the amounts paid to a pension fund or used to purchase annuities. In many cases such payments have included amortization of past service cost (and prior service cost arising on amendment of a plan) over periods ranging from about ten to forty years; in other cases the payments have not included amortization but have included an amount equivalent to interest (see definition of *interest* in the Glossary, Appendix B) on unfunded prior service cost. In some cases payments from year to year have varied with fluctuations in company earnings or with the availability of funds. In other cases payments have been affected by the Federal income tax rates in effect at a particular time. The recognition of actuarial gains and losses in the year of their determination, or intermittently, has also caused year-to-year variations in such payments.

PENSION PLANS COVERED BY THIS OPINION

8. For the purposes of this Opinion, a pension plan is an arrangement whereby a company undertakes to provide its retired employees with benefits that can be determined or estimated in advance from the provisions of a document or documents or from the company's practices. Ordinarily, such benefits are monthly pension payments but, in many instances, they include death and disability payments. However, death and disability payments under a separate

5. Because of the increasing importance of pensions and the variations in accounting for them, the Accounting Principles Board authorized Accounting Research Study No. 8, *Accounting for the Cost of Pension Plans* (referred to hereinafter as the "Research Study"). The Research Study was published in May 1965 by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and has been widely distributed. The Board has carefully examined the recommendations of the Research Study and considered many comments and articles about it. The Board's conclusions agree in most respects with, but differ in some from, those in the Research Study.

6. The Board has concluded that this Opinion is needed to clarify the accounting principles and to narrow the practices applicable to accounting for the cost of pension plans. This Opinion supersedes Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, Chapter 13, Section A, *Compensation: Pension Plans—Annuity Costs Based on Past Service* and Accounting Research Bulletin No. 47, *Accounting for Costs of Pension Plans*.

7. The computation of pension cost for accounting purposes requires the use of actuarial techniques and judgment. Generally pension cost should be determined from a study by an actuary, giving effect to the conclusions set forth in this Opinion. It should be noted that the actuarial cost methods and their application for accounting purposes may differ from those used for funding purposes. A discussion of actuarial valuations, assumptions and cost methods is included in Appendix A. The terminology used in this Opinion to describe pension cost and actuarial cost methods is consistent with that generally used by actuaries and others concerned with pension plans. A Glossary of such terminology is included in Appendix B.

arrangement are not considered in this Opinion. The Opinion applies both to written plans and to plans whose existence may be implied from a well-defined, although perhaps unwritten, company policy. A company's practice of paying retirement benefits to selected employees in amounts determined on a case-by-case basis at or after retirement does not constitute a pension plan under this Opinion. The Opinion applies to pension cost incurred outside the United States

under plans that are reasonably similar to those contemplated by this Opinion, when included in financial statements intended to conform with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States. The Opinion applies to unfunded plans as well as to insured plans and trust fund plans. It applies to defined-contribution plans as well

as to defined-benefit plans. It applies also to deferred compensation contracts with individual employees if such contracts, taken together, are equivalent to a pension plan. It does not apply to deferred profit-sharing plans except to the extent that such a plan is, or is part of, an arrangement that is in substance a pension plan.

BASIC ACCOUNTING METHOD

Discussion

9. This Opinion is concerned with the determination of the amount of pension cost for accounting purposes. In considering the discussions and conclusions in this Opinion, it is important to keep in mind that the annual pension cost to be charged to expense ("the provision for pension cost") is not necessarily the same as the amount to be funded for the year. The determination of the amount to be funded is a financial matter not within the purview of this Opinion.

10. The pension obligations assumed by some companies are different from those assumed by other companies. In some plans the company assumes direct responsibility for the payment of benefits described in the plan. In these cases, if the pension fund is inadequate to pay the benefits to which employees are entitled, the company is liable for the deficiency. In contrast, the terms of most funded plans limit the company's legal obligation for the payment of benefits to the amounts in the pension fund. In these cases, if the pension fund is inadequate to pay the benefits to which employees are otherwise entitled, such benefits are reduced in a manner stated in the plan and the company has no further legal obligation.

11. There is broad agreement that pension cost, including related administrative expense, should be accounted for on the accrual basis. There is not general agreement, however, about the nature of pension cost. Some view pensions solely as a form of supplemental benefit to employees in service at a particular time. Others see a broader purpose in pensions; they consider pensions to be in large part (a) a means of promoting efficiency by providing for the systematic retirement of older employees or (b) the fulfillment of a social obligation expected of business enterprises, the cost of which, as a practical matter, constitutes a business expense that must be incurred. Those who hold this second viewpoint associate pension cost, to a large extent, with the plan itself rather than with specific employees. In addition, the long-range nature of pensions

causes significant uncertainties about the total amount of pension benefits ultimately to be paid and the amount of cost to be recognized. These differences in viewpoint concerning the nature of pension cost, the uncertainties regarding the amount of the estimates, and the use of many actuarial approaches, compound the difficulty in reaching agreement on the total amount of pension cost over a long period of years and on the time to recognize any particular portion applicable to an employee or group of employees. It is only natural, therefore, that different views exist concerning the preferable way to recognize pension cost. The major views are described in the following four paragraphs.

12. One view is that periodic pension cost should be provided on an actuarial basis that takes into account all estimated prospective benefit payments under a plan with respect to the existing employee group, whether such payments relate to employee service rendered before or after the plan's adoption or amendment, and that no portion of the provision for such payments should be indefinitely deferred or treated as though, in fact, it did not exist. Those holding this view believe that the recurring omission of a portion of the provision, because of the time lag between making the provision and the subsequent benefit payments under a plan, is a failure to give accrual accounting recognition to the cost applicable to the benefits accrued over the service lives of all employees. Among those holding this view there is general agreement that cost relating to service following the adoption or amendment of a plan should be recognized ratably over the remaining service lives of employees. There is some difference of opinion, however, concerning the period of time to use in allocating that portion of the cost which the computations under some actuarial methods assign to employee service rendered before a plan's adoption or amendment. As to this cost, (a) those viewing pensions as relating solely to the existing employee group believe that it should be accounted for over the remaining service

lives of those in the employ of the company at the time of the plan's adoption or amendment, whereas (b) some of those holding the broader view of pensions, referred to in Paragraph 11, believe that this cost is associated to a large extent with the plan itself and hence that the period of providing for it need not be limited to the remaining service lives of a particular group of employees but may be extended somewhat beyond that period. However, this difference of opinion relates only to the period of time over which such cost should be provided.

13. An opposing view stresses that pension cost is related to the pension benefits to be paid to the continuing employee group as a whole. Those holding this view emphasize that, in the application of accrual accounting, charges against income must be based on actual transactions and events—past, present or reasonably anticipated. They stress the long-range nature of pensions, referred to in Paragraph 11, and emphasize the uncertainties concerning the total cost of future benefits. They point out that, in the great majority of cases, provision for normal cost plus an amount equivalent to interest on unfunded prior service cost will be adequate to meet, on a continuing basis, all benefit payments under a plan. Those holding this view believe that following the view expressed in Paragraph 12 can result, over a period of years, in charging income with, and recording a balance-sheet accrual for, amounts that will not be paid as benefits. They see no reason therefore to urge employers to provide more than normal cost plus an amount equivalent to interest on unfunded prior service cost in these circumstances, because additional amounts never expected to be paid by a going concern are not corporate costs, and thus are not appropriate charges against income. They acknowledge, however, that corporations can and do make payments to pension funds for past and prior service cost, with the result that reductions will be effected in future charges for the equivalent of interest on unfunded amounts, but they consider this to be solely a matter of financial management rather than a practice dictated by accounting considerations.

14. In many pension plans, cost recorded on the basis described in Paragraph 13 will accumulate an amount (whether funded or not) at least equal to the actuarially computed value of vested benefits (see definition of *vested benefits* in the Glossary, Appendix B). However, this result might not be achieved in some cases (for example, if the average

age of the employee group is high in relation to that of expected future employee groups, or if benefits vest at a relatively early age). Some hold the view that when periodic provisions are based on normal cost plus an amount equivalent to interest such periodic provisions should be increased if they will not, within a reasonable period of time, accumulate an amount (whether funded or not) at least equal to the actuarially computed value of vested benefits. Others would require the increases in provisions only if the company has a legal obligation for the payment of such benefits.

15. Another view is that, if the company has no responsibility for paying benefits beyond the amounts in the pension fund, pension cost is discretionary and should be provided for a particular accounting period only when the company has made or has indicated its intent to make a contribution to the pension fund for the period. Others believe that pension cost is discretionary even if the company has a direct responsibility for the payment of benefits described in the plan.

Opinion

16. The Board recognizes that a company may limit its legal obligation by specifying that pensions shall be payable only to the extent of the assets in the pension fund. Experience shows, however, that with rare exceptions pension plans continue indefinitely and that termination and other limitations of the liability of the company are not invoked while the company continues in business. Consequently, the Board believes that, in the absence of convincing evidence that the company will reduce or discontinue the benefits called for in a pension plan, the cost of the plan should be accounted for on the assumption that the company will continue to provide such benefits. This assumption implies a long-term undertaking, the cost of which should be recognized annually whether or not funded. Therefore, accounting for pension cost should not be discretionary.

17. All members of the Board believe that the entire cost of benefit payments ultimately to be made should be charged against income subsequent to the adoption or amendment of a plan and that no portion of such cost should be charged directly against retained earnings. Differences of opinion exist concerning the measure of the cost of such ultimate payments. The Board believes that the approach stated in Paragraph 12 is preferable for measuring the cost of benefit pay-

ments ultimately to be made. However, some members of the Board believe that the approach stated in Paragraph 13, in some cases with the modifications described in Paragraph 14, is more appropriate for such measurement. The Board has concluded, in the light of such differences in views and of the fact that accounting for pension cost is in a transitional stage, that the range of practices would be significantly narrowed if pension cost were accounted for at the present time within limits based on Paragraphs 12, 13 and 14. Accordingly, the Board believes that the annual provision for pension cost should be based on an accounting method that uses an acceptable actuarial cost method (as defined in Paragraphs 23 and 24) and results in a provision between the minimum and maximum stated below. The accounting method and the actuarial cost method should be consistently applied from year to year.

a. *Minimum.* The annual provision for pension cost should not be less than the total of (1) normal cost, (2) an amount equivalent to interest on any unfunded prior service cost and (3) if indicated in the following sentence, a provision for vested benefits. A provision for vested benefits should be made if there is an excess of the actuarially computed value of vested benefits (see definition of *vested benefits* in the Glossary, Appendix B)¹ over the total of (1) the pension fund and (2) any balance-sheet pension accruals, less (3) any balance-sheet pension prepayments or deferred charges, at the end of the year, and such excess is not at least 5 per cent less than the comparable excess at the beginning of the year. The provision for vested benefits should be the lesser of (A) the amount, if any, by which 5 per cent of such excess at the

beginning of the year is more than the amount of the reduction, if any, in such excess during the year or (B) the amount necessary to make the aggregate annual provision for pension cost equal to the total of (1) normal cost, (2) an amount equivalent to amortization, on a 40-year basis, of the past service cost (unless fully amortized), (3) amounts equivalent to amortization, on a 40-year basis, of the amounts of any increases or decreases in prior service cost arising on amendments of the plan (unless fully amortized) and (4) interest equivalents under Paragraph 42 or 43 on the difference between provisions and amounts funded.²

b. *Maximum.* The annual provision for pension cost should not be greater than the total of (1) normal cost, (2) 10 per cent of the past service cost (until fully amortized), (3) 10 per cent of the amounts of any increases or decreases in prior service cost arising on amendments of the plan (until fully amortized) and (4) interest equivalents under Paragraph 42 or 43 on the difference between provisions and amounts funded. The 10 per cent limitation is considered necessary to prevent unreasonably large charges against income during a short period of years.

18. The difference between the amount which has been charged against income and the amount which has been paid should be shown in the balance sheet as accrued or prepaid pension cost. If the company has a legal obligation for pension cost in excess of amounts paid or accrued, the excess should be shown in the balance sheet as both a liability and a deferred charge. Except to the extent indicated in the preceding sentences of this paragraph, unfunded prior service cost is not a liability which should be shown in the balance sheet.

ACTUARIAL COST METHODS

Discussion

19. A number of actuarial cost methods have been developed to determine pension cost. These methods are designed primarily as funding techniques, but many of them are also useful in determining pension cost for accounting purposes. Pension cost can vary significantly, depending on the actuarial cost method selected; furthermore, there are many variations in the application of the methods, in the necessary actuarial

assumptions concerning employee turnover, mortality, compensation levels, pension fund earnings, etc., and in the treatment of actuarial gains and losses.

20. The principal actuarial cost methods currently in use are described in Appendix A. These methods include an accrued benefit cost method and several projected benefit cost methods.

a. Under the accrued benefit cost method (unit credit method), the amount assigned

¹ The actuarially computed value of vested benefits would ordinarily be based on the actuarial valuation used for the year even though such valuation would usually be as of a date other than the balance sheet date.

² For purposes of this sentence, amortization should be computed as a level annual amount, including the equivalent of interest.

to the current year usually represents the present value of the increase in present employees' retirement benefits resulting from that year's service. For an individual employee, this method results in an increasing cost from year to year because both the present value of the annual increment in benefits and the probability of reaching retirement increase as the period to retirement shortens; also, in some plans, the retirement benefits are related to salary levels, which usually increase during the years. However, the aggregate cost for a total work force of constant size tends to increase only if the average age or average compensation of the entire work force increases.

b. Under the projected benefit cost methods (entry age normal, individual level premium, aggregate and attained age normal methods), the amount assigned to the current year usually represents the level amount (or an amount based on a computed level percentage of compensation) that will provide for the estimated projected retirement benefits over the service lives of either the individual employees or the employee group, depending on the method selected. Cost computed under the projected benefit cost methods tends to be stable or to decline year by year, depending on the method selected. Cost computed under the entry age normal method is usually more stable than cost computed under any other method.

21. Some actuarial cost methods (individual level premium and aggregate methods) assign to subsequent years the cost arising at the adoption or amendment of a plan. Other methods (unit credit, entry age normal and attained age normal methods) assign a portion of the cost to years prior to the adoption or amendment of a plan, and assign the remainder to subsequent years. The portion of cost assigned to each subsequent year is called *normal cost*. At the adoption of a plan, the portion of cost assigned to prior years is called *past service cost*. At any later valuation date, the portion of cost assigned to prior years (which includes any remaining past service cost) is called *prior service cost*. The amount assigned as past or prior service cost and the amount assigned as normal cost vary depending on the actuarial cost method. The actuarial assignment of cost between past or prior service cost and normal cost is not indicative of the periods in which such cost should be recognized for accounting purposes.

22. In some cases, past service cost (and prior service cost arising on amendment of

a plan) is funded in total; in others it is funded in part; in still others it is not funded at all. In practice, the funding of such cost is influenced by the Federal income tax laws and related regulations, which generally limit the annual deduction for such cost to 10 per cent of the initial amount. There is no tax requirement that such cost be funded, but there are requirements that effectively prohibit the unfunded cost from exceeding the total of past service cost and prior service cost arising on amendment of the plan. The practical effect of the tax requirements is that on a cumulative basis normal cost plus an amount equivalent to the interest on any unfunded prior service cost must be funded. Funding of additional amounts is therefore discretionary for income tax purposes. However, neither funding nor the income tax laws and related regulations are controlling for accounting purposes.

Opinion

23. To be acceptable for determining cost for accounting purposes, an actuarial cost method should be rational and systematic and should be consistently applied so that it results in a reasonable measure of pension cost from year to year. Therefore, in applying an actuarial cost method that separately assigns a portion of cost as past or prior service cost, any amortization of such portion should be based on a rational and systematic plan and generally should result in reasonably stable annual amounts. The equivalent of interest on the unfunded portion may be stated separately or it may be included in the amortization; however, the total amount charged against income in any one year should not exceed the maximum amount described in Paragraph 17.

24. Each of the actuarial cost methods described in Appendix A, except terminal funding, is considered acceptable when the actuarial assumptions are reasonable and when the method is applied in conformity with the other conclusions of this Opinion. The terminal funding method is not acceptable because it does not recognize pension cost prior to retirement of employees. For the same reason, the pay-as-you-go method (which is not an actuarial cost method) is not acceptable. The acceptability of methods not discussed herein should be determined from the guidelines in this and the preceding paragraph.

ACTUARIAL GAINS AND LOSSES**Discussion**

25. Actuarial assumptions necessarily are based on estimates of future events. Actual events seldom coincide with events estimated; also, as conditions change, the assumptions concerning the future may become invalid. Adjustments may be needed annually therefore to reflect actual experience, and from time to time to revise the actuarial assumptions to be used in the future. These adjustments constitute actuarial gains and losses. They may be regularly recurring (for example, minor deviations between experience and actuarial assumptions) or they may be unusual or recurring at irregular intervals (for example, substantial investment gains or losses, changes in the actuarial assumptions, plant closings, etc.).

26. In dealing with actuarial gains and losses, the primary question concerns the timing of their recognition in providing for pension cost. In practice, three methods are in use; immediate-recognition, spreading and averaging. Under the immediate-recognition method (not ordinarily used at present for net losses), net gains are applied to reduce pension cost in the year of occurrence or the following year. Under the spreading method, net gains or losses are applied to current and future cost, either through the normal cost or through the past service cost (or prior service cost on amendment). Under the averaging method, an average of annual net gains and losses, developed from those that occurred in the past with consideration of those expected to occur in the future, is applied to the normal cost.

27. The use of the immediate-recognition method sometimes results in substantial reductions in, or the complete elimination of, pension cost for one or more years. For Federal income tax purposes, when the unit credit actuarial cost method is used, and in certain other instances, actuarial gains reduce the maximum pension-cost deduction for the year of occurrence or the following year.

28. Unrealized appreciation and depreciation in the value of investments in a pension fund are forms of actuarial gains and losses. Despite short-term market fluctuations, the overall rise in the value of equity investments in recent years has resulted in the investments of pension funds generally showing net appreciation. Although appreciation is not generally recognized at present in providing for pension cost, it is sometimes

recognized through the interest assumption or by introducing an assumed annual rate of appreciation as a separate actuarial assumption. In other cases, appreciation is combined with other actuarial gains and losses and applied on the immediate-recognition, spreading or averaging method.

29. The amount of any unrealized appreciation to be recognized should also be considered. Some actuarial valuations recognize the full market value. Others recognize only a portion (such as 75 per cent) of the market value or use a moving average (such as a five-year average) to minimize the effects of short-term market fluctuations. Another method used to minimize such fluctuations is to recognize appreciation annually based on an expected long-range growth rate (such as 3 per cent) applied to the cost (adjusted for appreciation previously so recognized) of common stocks; when this method is used, the total of cost and recognized appreciation usually is not permitted to exceed a specified percentage (such as 75 per cent) of the market value. Unrealized depreciation is recognized in full or on a basis similar to that used for unrealized appreciation.

Opinion

30. The Board believes that actuarial gains and losses, including realized investment gains and losses, should be given effect in the provision for pension cost in a consistent manner that reflects the long-range nature of pension cost. Accordingly, except as otherwise indicated in Paragraphs 31 and 33, actuarial gains and losses should be spread over the current year and future years or recognized on the basis of an average as described in Paragraph 26. If this is not accomplished through the routine application of the method (for example, the unit credit method—see Paragraph 27), the spreading or averaging should be accomplished by separate adjustments of the normal cost resulting from the routine application of the method. Where spreading is accomplished by separate adjustments, the Board considers a period of from 10 to 20 years to be reasonable. Alternatively, an effect similar to spreading or averaging may be obtained by applying net actuarial gains as a reduction of prior service cost in a manner that reduces the annual amount equivalent to interest on, or the annual amount of amortization of, such prior service cost, and does not reduce the period of amortization.

31. Actuarial gains and losses should be recognized immediately if they arise from a single occurrence not directly related to the operation of the pension plan and not in the ordinary course of the employer's business. An example of such occurrences is a plant closing, in which case the actuarial gain or loss should be treated as an adjustment of the net gain or loss from that occurrence and not as an adjustment of pension cost for the year. Another example of such occurrences is a merger or acquisition accounted for as a purchase, in which case the actuarial gain or loss should be treated as an adjustment of the purchase price. However, if the transaction is accounted for as a pooling of interests, the actuarial gain or loss should generally be treated as described in Paragraph 30.

32. The Board believes unrealized appreciation and depreciation should be recognized in the determination of the provision

for pension cost on a rational and systematic basis that avoids giving undue weight to short-term market fluctuations (as by using a method similar to those referred to in Paragraph 29). Such recognition should be given either in the actuarial assumptions or as described in Paragraph 30 for other actuarial gains and losses. Ordinarily appreciation and depreciation need not be recognized for debt securities expected to be held to maturity and redeemed at face value.

33. Under variable annuity and similar plans the retirement benefits vary with changes in the value of a specified portfolio of equity investments. In these cases, investment gains or losses, whether realized or unrealized, should be recognized in computing pension cost only to the extent that they will not be applied in determining retirement benefits.

EMPLOYEES INCLUDED IN COST CALCULATIONS

Discussion

34. Under some plans employees become eligible for coverage when they are employed; other plans have requirements of age or length of service or both. Some plans state only the conditions an employee must meet to receive benefits but do not otherwise deal with coverage. Ordinarily actuarial valuations exclude employees likely to leave the company within a short time after employment. This simplifies the actuarial calculations. Accordingly, actuarial calculations ordinarily exclude employees on the basis of eligibility requirements and, in some cases, exclude covered employees during the early years of service.

35. If provisions are not made for employees from the date of employment, pension cost may be understated. On the

other hand, the effect of including all employees would be partially offset by an increase in the turnover assumption; therefore, the inclusion of employees during early years of service may expand the volume of the calculations without significantly changing the provisions for pension cost.

Opinion

36. The Board believes that all employees who may reasonably be expected to receive benefits under a pension plan should be included in the cost calculations, giving appropriate recognition to anticipated turnover. As a practical matter, however, when the effect of exclusion is not material it is appropriate to omit certain employees from the calculations.

COMPANIES WITH MORE THAN ONE PLAN

Opinion

37. A company that has more than one pension plan need not use the same actuarial cost method for each one; however, the accounting for each plan should conform to this Opinion. If a company has two or more plans covering substantial

portions of the same employee classes and if the assets in any of the plans ultimately can be used in paying present or future benefits of another plan or plans, such plans may be treated as one plan for purposes of determining pension cost.

DEFINED-CONTRIBUTION PLANS**Opinion**

38. Some defined-contribution plans state that contributions will be made in accordance with a specified formula and that benefit payments will be based on the amounts accumulated from such contributions. For such a plan the contribution applicable to a particular year should be the pension cost for that year.

39. Some defined-contribution plans have defined benefits. In these circumstances, the plan requires careful analysis. When the substance of the plan is to provide the defined benefits, the annual pension cost should be determined in accordance with the conclusions of this Opinion applicable to defined-benefit plans.

INSURED PLANS**Opinion**

40. Insured plans are forms of funding arrangements and their use should not affect the accounting principles applicable to the determination of pension cost. Cost under individual policy plans is ordinarily determined by the individual level premium method, and cost under group deferred annuity contracts is ordinarily determined by the unit credit method. Cost under deposit administration contracts, which operate similarly to trust-fund plans, may be determined on any of several methods. Some elements of pension cost, such as the application of actuarial gains (dividends, termination credits, etc.), may at times cause differences between the amounts being paid to the insurance company and the cost being recognized for accounting purposes. The Board believes that pension cost under insured plans should be determined in conformity with the conclusions of this Opinion.

41. Individual annuity or life insurance policies and group deferred annuity contracts are often used for plans covering

small employee groups. Employers using one of these forms of funding exclusively do not ordinarily have ready access to actuarial advice in determining pension cost. Three factors to be considered in deciding whether the amount of net premiums paid is the appropriate charge to expense are dividends, termination credits and pension cost for employees not yet covered under the plan. Usually, the procedures adopted by insurance companies in arriving at the amount of dividends meet the requirements of Paragraph 30; consequently, in the absence of wide year-to-year fluctuations such dividends should be recognized in the year credited. Termination credits should be spread or averaged in accordance with Paragraph 30. Unless the period from date of employment to date of coverage under the plan is so long as to have a material effect on pension cost, no provision need be made for employees expected to become covered under the plan. If such a provision is made, it need not necessarily be based on the application of an actuarial cost method.

EFFECT OF FUNDING**Opinion**

42. This Opinion is written primarily in terms of pension plans that are funded. The accounting described applies also to plans that are unfunded. In unfunded plans, pension cost should be determined under an acceptable actuarial cost method in the same manner as for funded plans; however, because there is no fund to earn the assumed rate of interest, the pension-cost provision for the current year should be increased by an amount equivalent to the interest that would have been earned in the current year if the prior-year provisions had been funded.

43. For funded plans, the amount of the pension cost determined under this Opinion may vary from the amount funded. When this occurs, the pension-cost provision for

the year should be increased by an amount equivalent to interest on the prior-year provisions not funded or be decreased by an amount equivalent to interest on prior-year funding in excess of provisions.

44. A pension plan may become overfunded (that is, have fund assets in excess of all prior service cost assigned under the actuarial method in use for accounting purposes) as a result of contributions or as a result of actuarial gains. In determining provisions for pension cost, the effects of such overfunding are appropriately recognized in the current and future years through the operation of Paragraph 30 or 43. As to a plan that is overfunded on the effective date of this Opinion see Paragraph 48.

INCOME TAXES**Opinion**

45. When pension cost is recognized for tax purposes in a period other than the one in which recognized for financial report-

ing, appropriate consideration should be given to allocation of income taxes among accounting periods.

DISCLOSURE**Opinion**

46. The Board believes that pension plans are of sufficient importance to an understanding of financial position and results of operations that the following disclosures should be made in financial statements or their notes:

1. A statement that such plans exist, identifying or describing the employee groups covered.
2. A statement of the company's accounting and funding policies.
3. The provision for pension cost for the period.
4. The excess, if any, of the actuarially computed value of vested benefits over the total of the pension fund and any balance-sheet pension accruals, less any pension prepayments or deferred charges.
5. Nature and effect of significant matters affecting comparability for all periods presented, such as changes in accounting methods (actuarial cost method, amortization of past and prior

service cost, treatment of actuarial gains and losses, etc.), changes in circumstances (actuarial assumptions, etc.), or adoption or amendment of a plan.

An example of what the Board considers to be appropriate disclosure is as follows:

The company and its subsidiaries have several pension plans covering substantially all of their employees, including certain employees in foreign countries. The total pension expense for the year was \$....., which includes, as to certain of the plans, amortization of prior service cost over periods ranging from 25 to 40 years. The company's policy is to fund pension cost accrued. The actuarially computed value of vested benefits for all plans as of December 31, 19...., exceeded the total of the pension fund and balance-sheet accruals less pension prepayments and deferred charges by approximately \$..... A change during the year in the actuarial cost method used in computing pension cost had the effect of reducing net income for the year by approximately \$.....

CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING METHOD**Opinion**

47. On occasion a company may change its method of accounting for pension cost from one acceptable method under this Opinion to another. Such a change might be a change in the actuarial cost method, in the amortization of past and prior service cost, in the treatment of actuarial gains and losses, or in other factors. When such a change is made subsequent to the effective date of this Opinion, a question arises about the accounting for the difference between the cost actually provided under the

old method and the cost that would have been provided under the new method. The Board believes that pension cost provided under an acceptable method of accounting in prior periods should not be changed subsequently. Therefore, the effect on prior-year cost of a change in accounting method should be applied prospectively to the cost of the current year and future years, in a manner consistent with the conclusions of this Opinion, and not retroactively as an adjustment of retained earnings or otherwise. The change and its effect should be disclosed as indicated in Paragraph 46.

TRANSITION TO RECOMMENDED PRACTICES**Opinion**

48. For purposes of this Opinion, any unamortized prior service cost (computed under the actuarial cost method to be used

for accounting purposes in the future) on the effective date of this Opinion may be treated as though it arose from an amendment of the plan on that date rather than

on the actual dates of adoption or amendment of the plan. If the pension plan is overfunded (see Paragraph 44) on the effective date of this Opinion, the amount by which it is overfunded (computed under the actuarial cost method to be used for accounting purposes in the future) should be treated as an actuarial gain realized on that date and should be accounted for as described in Paragraph 30.

49. The effect of any changes in accounting methods made as a result of the issuance of this Opinion should be applied prospectively to the cost of the current year and future years in a manner consistent with the conclusions of this Opinion, and not retroactively by an adjustment of retained earnings or otherwise. The change and its effect should be disclosed as indicated in Paragraph 46.

EFFECTIVE DATE

50. This Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31,

1966. However, where feasible the Board urges earlier compliance with this Opinion.

The Opinion entitled "Accounting for the Cost of Pension Plans" was

adopted unanimously by the twenty members of the Board.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

- b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."*

- c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1966-1967)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
Chairman
MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG
DONALD J. BEVIS
JOHN C. BIEGLER
GEORGE R. CATLETT
W. A. CRICHLEY

JOSEPH P. CUMMINGS
SIDNEY DAVIDSON
PHILIP L. DEFLIESE
WALTER F. FRESE
NEWMAN T. HALVORSON
LEROY LAYTON
ORAL L. LUPER

JOHN K. MCCLARE
ROBERT J. MURPHEY
LOUIS H. PENNEY
JOHN W. QUEENAN
WILBERT A. WALKER
FRANK T. WESTON
ROBERT E. WITSCHY

APPENDIX A—ACTUARIAL VALUATIONS, ASSUMPTIONS AND COST METHODS

Actuarial Valuations

An actuarial valuation of a pension plan is the process used by actuaries for determin-

ing the amounts an employer is to contribute (pay, fund) under a pension plan (except where an insured arrangement calls

Note: For further discussion see Appendix C of Accounting Research Study No. 8, *Accounting for the Cost of Pension Plans* by Ernest L.

Hicks, CPA, published by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants in 1965.

for payment of specified premiums). A valuation is made as of a specific date, which need not coincide with the end of the period for which a payment based on the valuation will be made. Indeed, it is uncommon for such a coincidence of dates to exist. Among other factors, a time lag is necessary in order to compile the data and to permit the actuary to make the necessary calculations. Although annual valuations are, perhaps, the rule, some employers have valuations made at less frequent intervals, in some cases as infrequently as every five years. The calculations are made for a closed group—ordinarily, employees presently covered by the plan, former employees having vested rights and retired employees currently receiving benefits.

An initial step in making a valuation is to determine the present value on the valuation date of benefits to be paid over varying periods of time in the future to employees after retirement (plus any other benefits under the plan). An actuarial cost method (see description in a later section of this Appendix) is then applied to this present value to determine the contributions to be made by the employer.

The resulting determinations are estimates, since in making a valuation a number of significant uncertainties concerning future events must be resolved by making several actuarial assumptions.

Actuarial Assumptions

The uncertainties in estimating the cost of a pension plan relate to (1) interest (return on funds invested), (2) expenses of administration and (3) the amounts and timing of benefits to be paid with respect to presently retired employees, former employees whose benefits have vested and present employees.

Interest (Return on Funds Invested)

The rate of interest used in an actuarial valuation is an expression of the average rate of earnings that can be expected on the funds invested or to be invested to provide for the future benefits. Since in most instances the investments include equity securities as well as debt securities, the earnings include dividends as well as interest; gains and losses on investments are also a factor. For simplicity, however, the rate is ordinarily called the interest rate.

Expenses of Administration

In many instances the expenses of administering a pension plan—for example, fees of attorneys, actuaries and trustees, and the

cost of keeping pension records—are borne directly by the employer. In other cases, such expenses, or some of them, are paid by a trust or insurance company from funds contributed by the employer. In the latter cases, expenses to be incurred in the future must be estimated in computing the employer's pension cost.

Benefits

Several assumptions must be made as to the amounts and timing of the future benefits whose present value is used in expressing the cost of a pension plan. The principal assumptions are as follows:

a. *Future compensation levels.* Benefits under some pension plans depend in part on future compensation levels. Under plans of this type, an estimate is ordinarily made of normal increases expected from the progression of employees through the various earnings-rate categories, based on the employer's experience. General earnings-level increases, such as those which may result from inflation, are usually excluded from this actuarial assumption.

b. *Cost-of-living.* To protect the purchasing power of retirement benefits, some plans provide that the benefits otherwise determined will be adjusted from time to time to reflect variations in a specific index, such as the Consumer Price Index of the United States Bureau of Labor Statistics. In estimating the cost of such a plan, expected future changes in the cost-of-living index may be included in the actuarial assumptions.

c. *Mortality.* The length of time an employee covered by a pension plan will live is an important factor in estimating the cost of the benefit payments he will receive. If an employee dies before he becomes eligible for pension benefits, he receives no payments, although in some plans his beneficiaries receive lump-sum or periodic benefits. The total amount of pension benefits for employees who reach retirement is determined in large part by how long they live thereafter. Estimates regarding mortality are based on mortality tables.

d. *Retirement age.* Most plans provide a normal retirement age, but many plans permit employees to work thereafter under certain conditions. Some plans provide for retirement in advance of the normal age in case of disability, and most plans permit early retirement at the employee's option under certain conditions. When there are such provisions, an estimate is made of their

effect on the amount and timing of the benefits which will ultimately be paid.

e. *Turnover.* In many plans, some employees who leave employment with the employer before completing vesting requirements forfeit their rights to receive benefits. In estimating the amount of future benefits, an allowance for the effect of turnover may be made.

f. *Vesting.* Many plans provide that after a stated number of years of service an employee becomes entitled to receive benefits (commencing at his normal retirement age and usually varying in amount with his number of years of service) even though he leaves the company for a reason other than retirement. This is taken into consideration in estimating the effect of turnover.

g. *Social security benefits.* For plans providing for a reduction of pensions by all or part of social security benefits, it is necessary in estimating future pension benefits to estimate the effect of future social security benefits. Ordinarily, this estimate is based on the assumption that such benefits will remain at the level in effect at the time the valuation is being made.

Actuarial Gains and Losses

The likelihood that actual events will coincide with each of the assumptions used is so remote as to constitute an impossibility. As a result, the actuarial assumptions used may be changed from time to time as experience and judgment dictate. In addition, whether or not the assumptions as to events in the future are changed, it is often necessary to recognize in the calculations the effect of differences between actual prior experience and the assumptions used in the past.

Actuarial Cost Methods

Actuarial cost methods have been developed by actuaries as funding techniques to be used in actuarial valuations. As indicated in Paragraph 19 of the accompanying Opinion, many of the actuarial cost methods are also useful for accounting purposes. The following discussion of the principal methods describes them as funding techniques (to simplify the discussion, references to prior service cost arising on amendment of a plan have been omitted; such cost would ordinarily be treated in a manner consistent with that described for past service cost). Their application for accounting purposes is described in the accompanying Opinion.

Accrued Benefit Cost Method—Unit Credit Method

Under the unit credit method, future service benefits (pension benefits based on serv-

ice after the inception of a plan) are funded as they accrue—that is, as each employee works out the service period involved. Thus, the normal cost under this method for a particular year is the present value of the units of future benefit credited to employees for service in that year (hence unit credit). For example, if a plan provides benefits of \$5 per month for each year of credited service, the normal cost for a particular employee for a particular year is the present value (adjusted for mortality and usually for turnover) of an annuity of \$5 per month beginning at the employee's anticipated retirement date and continuing throughout his life.

The past service cost under the unit credit method is the present value at the plan's inception date of the units of future benefit credited to employees for service prior to the inception date.

The annual contribution under the unit credit method ordinarily comprises (1) the normal cost and (2) an amount for past service cost. The latter may comprise only an amount equivalent to interest on the unfunded balance or may also include an amount intended to reduce the unfunded balance.

As to an individual employee, the annual normal cost for an equal unit of benefit each year increases because the period to the employee's retirement continually shortens and the probability of reaching retirement increases; also, in some plans, the retirement benefits are related to salary levels, which usually increase during the years. As to the employees collectively, however, the step-up effect is masked, since older employees generating the highest annual cost are continually replaced by new employees generating the lowest. For a mature employee group, the normal cost would tend to be the same each year.

The unit credit method is almost always used when the funding instrument is a group annuity contract and may also be used in trusted plans and deposit administration contracts where the benefit is a stated amount per year of service. This method is not frequently used where the benefit is a fixed amount (for example, \$100 per month) or where the current year's benefit is based on earnings of a future period.

Projected Benefit Cost Methods

As explained above, the accrued benefit cost method (unit credit method) recognizes the cost of benefits only when they have accrued (in the limited sense that the employee service on which benefits are

based has been rendered). By contrast, the projected benefit cost methods look forward. That is, they assign the entire cost of an employee's *projected* benefits to past, present and future periods. This is done in a manner not directly related to the periods during which the service on which the benefits are based has been or will be rendered. The principal projected benefit cost methods are discussed below.

a. *Entry age normal method.* Under the entry age normal method, the normal costs are computed on the assumption (1) that every employee entered the plan (thus, entry age) at the time of employment or at the earliest time he would have been eligible if the plan had been in existence and (2) that contributions have been made on this basis from the entry age to the date of the actuarial valuation. The contributions are the level annual amounts which, if accumulated at the rate of interest used in the actuarial valuation, would result in a fund equal to the present value of the pensions at retirement for the employees who survive to that time.

Normal cost under this method is the level amount to be contributed for each year. When a plan is established after the company has been in existence for some time, past service cost under this method at the plan's inception date is theoretically the amount of the fund that would have been accumulated had annual contributions equal to the normal cost been made in prior years.

In theory, the entry age normal method is applied on an individual basis. It may be applied, however, on an aggregate basis, in which case separate amounts are not determined for individual employees. Further variations in practice often encountered are (1) the use of an average entry age, (2) the use, particularly when benefits are based on employees' earnings, of a level percentage of payroll in determining annual payments and (3) the computation of past service cost as the difference between the present value of employees' projected benefits and the present value of the employer's projected normal cost contributions. In some plans, the normal cost contribution rate may be based on a stated amount per employee. In other plans the normal cost contribution itself may be stated as a flat amount.

In valuations for years other than the initial year the past service cost may be frozen (that is, the unfunded amount of such cost is changed only to recognize payments and the effect of interest). Accordingly, actuarial gains and losses are spread into the

future, entering into the normal cost for future years. If past service cost is not frozen, the unfunded amount includes the effects of actuarial gains and losses realized prior to the date of the valuation being made.

The annual contribution under the entry age normal method ordinarily comprises (1) the normal cost and (2) an amount for past service cost. The latter may comprise only an amount equivalent to interest on the unfunded balance or may also include an amount intended to reduce the unfunded balance.

The entry age normal method is often used with trusted plans and deposit administration contracts.

b. *Individual level premium method.* The individual level premium method assigns the cost of each employee's pension in level annual amounts, or as a level percentage of the employee's compensation, over the period from the inception date of a plan (or the date of his entry into the plan, if later) to his retirement date. Thus, past service cost is not determined separately but is included in normal cost.

The most common use of the individual level premium method is with funding by individual insurance or annuity policies. It may be used, however, with trusted plans and deposit administration contracts.

In plans using individual annuity policies, the employer is protected against actuarial losses, since premiums paid are not ordinarily subject to retroactive increases. The insurance company may, however, pass part of any actuarial gains along to the employer by means of dividends. Employee turnover may be another source of actuarial gains under such insured plans, since all or part of the cash surrender values of policies previously purchased for employees leaving the employer for reasons other than retirement may revert to the company (or to the trust). Dividends and cash surrender values are ordinarily used to reduce the premiums payable for the next period.

The individual level premium method generates annual costs which are initially very high and which ultimately drop to the level of the normal cost determined under the entry age normal method. The high initial costs arise because the past service cost (although not separately identified) for employees near retirement when the plan is adopted is in effect amortized over a very short period.

c. *Aggregate method.* The aggregate method applies on a collective basis the principle followed for individuals in the individual level premium method. That is, the entire unfunded cost of future pension benefits (including benefits to be paid to employees who have retired as of the date of the valuation) is spread over the average future service lives of employees who are active as of the date of the valuation. In most cases this is done by the use of a percentage of payroll.

The aggregate method does not deal separately with past service cost (but includes such cost in normal cost). Actuarial gains and losses enter into the determination of the contribution rate and, consequently, are spread over future periods.

Annual contributions under the aggregate method decrease, but the rate of decrease is less extreme than under the individual level premium method. The aggregate cost method amortizes past service cost (not separately identified) over the average future service lives of employees, thus avoiding the very short individual amortization periods of the individual level premium method.

The aggregate method may be modified by introducing past service cost. If the past service cost is determined by the entry age normal method, the modified aggregate method is the same as the entry age normal method applied on the aggregate basis. If the past service cost is determined by the unit credit method, the modified aggregate method is called the attained age normal method (discussed below).

The aggregate method is used principally with trustee plans and deposit administration contracts.

d. *Attained age normal method.* The attained age normal method is a variant of the aggregate method or individual level premium method in which past service cost, determined under the unit credit method, is recognized separately. The cost of each employee's benefits assigned to years after the inception of the plan is spread over the employee's future service life. Normal cost contributions under the attained age normal method, usually determined as a percentage of payroll, tend to decline but less markedly than under the aggregate method or the individual level premium method.

As with the unit credit and entry age normal methods, the annual contribution for past service cost may comprise only an amount equivalent to interest on the unfunded balance or may also include an amount intended to reduce the unfunded balance.

The attained age normal method is used with trustee plans and deposit administration contracts.

Terminal funding

Under terminal funding, funding for future benefit payments is made only at the end of an employee's period of active service. At that time the employer either purchases a single-premium annuity which will provide the retirement benefit or makes an actuarially equivalent contribution to a trust. (Note—This method is not acceptable for determining the provision for pension cost under the accompanying Opinion.)

APPENDIX B—GLOSSARY

Accrue (Accrual). When *accrue (accrual)* is used in accounting discussions in the accompanying Opinion, it has the customary accounting meaning. When used in relation to actuarial terms or procedures, however, the intended meaning differs somewhat. When actuaries say that pension benefits, actuarial costs or actuarial liabilities have *accrued*, they ordinarily mean that the amounts are associated, either specifically or by a process of allocation, with years of employee service before the date of a particular valuation of a pension plan. Actuaries do not ordinarily intend their use of the word *accrue* to have the more conclusive accounting significance.

Accrued Benefit Cost Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Actuarial Assumptions. Factors which actuaries use in tentatively resolving uncertainties concerning future events affecting pension cost; for example, mortality rate, employee turnover, compensation levels, investment earnings, etc. See Appendix A.

Actuarial Cost Method. A particular technique used by actuaries for establishing the amount and incidence of the annual actuarial cost of pension plan benefits, or benefits and expenses, and the related actuarial liability. Sometimes called *funding method*. See Appendix A.

Actuarial Gains (Losses). The effects on actuarially calculated pension cost of (a) deviations between actual prior experience and the actuarial assumptions used or (b)

changes in actuarial assumptions as to future events.

Actuarial Liability. The excess of the present value, as of the date of a pension plan valuation, of prospective pension benefits and administrative expenses over the sum of (1) the amount in the pension fund and (2) the present value of future contributions for normal cost determined by any of several actuarial cost methods. (Sometimes referred to as *unfunded actuarial liability*.)

Actuarial Valuation. The process by which an actuary estimates the present value of benefits to be paid under a pension plan and calculates the amounts of employer contributions or accounting charges for pension cost. See Appendix A.

Actuarially Computed Value. See *present value*.

Actuarially Computed Value of Vested Benefits. See *vested benefits*.

Actuary. There are no statutory qualifications required for actuaries. Membership in the American Academy of Actuaries, a comprehensive organization of the profession in the United States, is generally considered to be acceptable evidence of professional qualification.

Aggregate Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Assumptions. See *actuarial assumptions*.

Attained Age Normal Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Benefits (Pension Benefits) (Retirement Benefits). The pensions and any other payments to which employees or their beneficiaries may be entitled under a pension plan.

Contribute (Contribution). When used in connection with a pension plan, *contribute* ordinarily is synonymous with pay.

Deferred Compensation Plan. An arrangement whereby specified portions of the employee's compensation are payable in the form of retirement benefits.

Deferred Profit-Sharing Plan. An arrangement whereby an employer provides for future retirement benefits for employees from specified portions of the earnings of the business; the benefits for each employee are usually the amounts which can be provided by accumulated amounts specifically allocated to him.

Defined-Benefit Plan. A pension plan stating the benefits to be received by employees after retirement, or the method of determining such benefits. The employer's contribu-

tions under such a plan are determined actuarially on the basis of the benefits expected to become payable.

Defined-Contribution Plan. A pension plan which (a) states the benefits to be received by employees after retirement or the method of determining such benefits (as in the case of a defined-benefit plan) and (b) accompanies a separate agreement that provides a formula for calculating the employer's contributions (for example, a fixed amount for each ton produced or for each hour worked, or a fixed percentage of compensation). Initially, the benefits stated in the plan are those which the contributions expected to be made by the employer can provide. If later the contributions are found to be inadequate or excessive for the purpose of funding the stated benefits on the basis originally contemplated, either the contributions or the benefits, or both, may be subsequently adjusted. In one type of defined-contribution plan (money-purchase plan) the employer's contributions are determined for, and allocated with respect to, specific individuals; usually as a percentage of compensation; the benefits for each employee are the amounts which can be provided by the sums contributed for him.

Deposit Administration Contract. A funding instrument provided by an insurance company under which amounts contributed by an employer are not identified with specific employees until they retire. When an employee retires, the insurance company issues an annuity which will provide the benefits stipulated in the pension plan and transfers the single premium for the annuity from the employer's accumulated contributions.

Entry Age Normal Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Fund. Used as a verb, *fund* means to pay over to a funding agency. Used as a noun, *fund* refers to assets accumulated in the hands of a funding agency for the purpose of meeting retirement benefits when they become due.

Funded. The portion of pension cost that has been paid to a funding agency is said to have been *funded*.

Funding Agency. An organization or individual, such as a specific corporate or individual trustee or an insurance company, which provides facilities for the accumulation of assets to be used for the payment of benefits under a pension plan; an organization, such as a specific life insurance com-

pany, which provides facilities for the purchase of such benefits.

Funding Method. See *actuarial cost method*.

Individual Level Premium Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Interest. The return earned or to be earned on funds invested or to be invested to provide for future pension benefits. In calling the return *interest*, it is recognized that in addition to interest on debt securities the earnings of a pension fund may include dividends on equity securities, rentals on real estate, and realized and unrealized gains or (as offsets) losses on fund investments. See Appendix A.

Mortality Rate. Death rate—the proportion of the number of deaths in a specified group to the number living at the beginning of the period in which the deaths occur. Actuaries use mortality tables, which show death rates for each age, in estimating the amount of future retirement benefits which will become payable. See Appendix A.

Normal Cost. The annual cost assigned, under the actuarial cost method in use, to years subsequent to the inception of a pension plan or to a particular valuation date. See *past service cost*, *prior service cost*.

Past Service Cost. Pension cost assigned, under the actuarial cost method in use, to years prior to the inception of a pension plan. See *normal cost*, *prior service cost*.

Pay-As-You-Go. A method of recognizing pension cost only when benefits are paid to retired employees. (Note—This is not an acceptable method for accounting purposes under the accompanying Opinion.)

Pension Fund. See *fund*.

Present Value (Actuarially Computed Value). The current worth of an amount or series of amounts payable or receivable in the future. *Present value* is determined by discounting the future amount or amounts at a predetermined rate of interest. In pension plan valuations, actuaries often combine arithmetic factors representing probability (e.g., mortality, withdrawal, future compensation levels) with arithmetic factors representing discount (interest). Consequently, to actuaries, determining the present value of future pension benefits may mean applying factors of both types.

Prior Service Cost. Pension cost assigned, under the actuarial cost method in use, to years prior to the date of a particular actuarial valuation. *Prior service cost* includes any remaining past service cost. See *normal cost*, *past service cost*.

Projected Benefit Cost Method. A type of *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Provision (Provide). An accounting term meaning a charge against income for an estimated expense, such as pension cost.

Service. Employment taken into consideration under a pension plan. Years of employment before the inception of a plan constitute an employee's past service; years thereafter are classified in relation to the particular actuarial valuation being made or discussed. Years of employment (including past service) prior to the date of a particular valuation constitute prior service; years of employment following the date of the valuation constitute future service.

Terminal Funding. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A. (Note—This is not an acceptable *actuarial cost method* for accounting purposes under the accompanying Opinion.)

Trust Fund Plan. A pension plan for which the funding instrument is a trust agreement.

Turnover. Termination of employment for a reason other than death or retirement. See *withdrawal*, Appendix A.

Unit Credit Method. An *actuarial cost method*. See Appendix A.

Valuation. See *actuarial valuation*, Appendix A.

Vested Benefits. Benefits that are not contingent on the employee's continuing in the service of the employer. In some plans the payment of the benefits will begin only when the employee reaches the normal retirement date; in other plans the payment of the benefits will begin when the employee retires (which may be before or after the normal retirement date). The *actuarially computed value of vested benefits*, as used in this Opinion, represents the present value, at the date of determination, of the sum of (a) the benefits expected to become payable to former employees who have retired, or who have terminated service with vested rights, at the date of determination; and (b) the benefits, based on service rendered prior to the date of determination, expected to become payable at future dates to present employees, taking into account the probable time that employees will retire, at the vesting percentages applicable at the date of determination. The determination of vested benefits is not affected by other conditions, such as inadequacy of the pension fund, which may prevent the employee from receiving the vested benefits.

Withdrawal. The removal of an employee from coverage under a pension plan for a reason other than death or retirement. See *turnover*.

Opinion No. 9

REPORTING THE RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

DECEMBER, 1966

Contents	Paragraph Numbers
Introduction	1-5
Applicability	6
I. Net Income and the Treatment of Extraordinary Items and Prior Period Adjustments—	
Discussion	7-16
Opinion—	
Summary	17-19
Income statement presentation	20
Criteria for extraordinary items related to cur- rent period	21-22
Criteria for prior period adjustments	23-25
Disclosure of prior period adjustments and re- statements of reported net income	26
Historical summaries of financial data	27
Capital transactions	28
Illustrative statements	29
II. Computation and Reporting of Earnings Per Share—	
Introduction	30
Opinion—	
General	31-32
Computations for single periods—	
General	33
Treatment of senior shares outstanding ..	34-35
Changes in common or senior shares dur- ing the period	36-39
Changes in common or senior shares after close of period	40-42
Contingent changes and dilution	43-44
Computations for two or more periods	45-48
Other	49
Dividends per share	50
Illustrative statements	51
Effective Date	52
Illustrative Statements (see page 6568 for listing) ...	Exhibits A-E

INTRODUCTION

1. The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, through its boards and committees, reviews from time to time the form and content of financial statements to determine how their usefulness may be improved. This Opinion is the result of a review of present practice in the reporting

of the results of operations of business entities.

2. This Opinion supersedes (a) Chapter 2B, *Combined Statement of Income and Earned Surplus* of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43; (b) Chapter 8, *Income and Earned Surplus* of Accounting Research Bulletin No.

43; and (c) Accounting Research Bulletin No. 49, *Earnings per Share*. It also modifies Chapter 5, *Intangible Assets* (paragraphs 5, 6, 8 and 9); Chapter 10A, *Real and Personal Property Taxes* (paragraph 19); Chapter 10B, *Income Taxes* (paragraphs 15 and 17); Chapter 11B, *Government Contracts—Renegotiation* (paragraph 9); Chapter 12, *Foreign Operations and Foreign Exchange* (paragraph 21); and Chapter 15, *Unamortized Discount, Issue Cost, and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded* (paragraphs 7 and 17) of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43 to the extent the paragraphs indicated specify a particular treatment within income or retained earnings.

3. This Opinion (a) concludes that net income should reflect all items of profit and loss recognized during the period except for prior period adjustments, with extraordinary items to be shown separately as an element of net income of the period, (b) specifies the criteria to be used in determining which items, if any, recognized during the current period are to be considered extraordinary items, (c) specifies the criteria to be used in determining which items, if any, recognized during the current period are to be considered prior period adjustments and excluded from net income for the current period and (d) specifies the statement format and terminology to be used and the disclosures to be made when extraordinary items or prior period adjustments are present.

4. This Opinion also specifies the method of treating extraordinary items and prior period adjustments in comparative statements for two or more periods, specifies

the disclosures required when previously issued statements of income are restated and recommends methods of presentation of historical, statistical-type financial summaries which include extraordinary items or are affected by prior period adjustments. In Part II, this Opinion specifies how earnings per share and dividends per share should be computed and reported.

5. For convenience, the term *net income* is used herein to refer to either net income or net loss. Similarly, *net income per share* or *earnings per share* is used to refer to either net income (or earnings) per share or net loss per share.

Applicability

6. This Opinion applies to general purpose statements which purport to present results of operations in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Investment companies, insurance companies and certain nonprofit organizations have developed income statements with formats different from those of the typical commercial entity described herein, designed to highlight the peculiar nature and sources of their income or operating results. The portion of this Opinion which requires that net income be presented as one amount does not apply to such entities. A committee of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants is in the process of recommending a format for the income statement of commercial banks. Until such recommendation has been given and until the Board has taken a position thereon, this Opinion is not applicable to commercial banks.

I—Net Income and the Treatment of Extraordinary Items and Prior Period Adjustments

DISCUSSION

General

7. Business entities have developed a reporting pattern under which periodic financial statements are prepared from their accounting records to reflect the financial position of the entity at a particular date and the financial results of its activities for a specified period or periods. The statement of income and the statement of retained earnings (separately or combined) are designed to reflect, in a broad sense, the "results of operations."

8. A problem in reporting the results of operations of a business entity for one or more periods is the treatment of extra-

ordinary items and prior period adjustments. This Opinion discusses the nature of events and transactions which might be considered "extraordinary," establishes related criteria which the Board feels are reasonable and practicable, and specifies the method and extent of disclosure of such items in the financial statements. The Opinion also discusses the various types of adjustment which might be considered to be proper adjustments of the recorded results of operations of prior periods and establishes criteria which the Board feels are reasonable and practicable for the relatively few items which should be so recognized.

Historical Background

General

9. There is considerable diversity of views as to whether extraordinary items and prior period adjustments should enter into the determination of net income of the period in which they are recognized. When Accounting Research Bulletin No. 32 was issued in December 1947, as well as when it was reissued in June 1953 as Chapter 8 of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, two conflicting viewpoints had attracted considerable support. The paragraphs which follow summarize the discussion of these two viewpoints contained in Chapter 8.

Current Operating Performance

10. Under one viewpoint, designated *current operating performance*, the principal emphasis is upon the ordinary, normal, recurring operations of the entity during the current period. If extraordinary or prior period transactions have occurred, their inclusion might impair the significance of net income to such an extent that misleading inferences might be drawn from the amount so designated.

11. Advocates of this position believe that users of financial statements attach a particular business significance to the statement of income and the "net income" reported therein. They point out that, while some users are able to analyze a statement of income and to eliminate from it those prior period adjustments and extraordinary items which may tend to impair its usefulness for their purposes, many users are not trained to do this. They believe that management (subject to the attestation of the independent auditors) is in a better position to do this, and to eliminate the effect of such items from the amount designated as net income.

12. Advocates of this position also point out that many companies, in order to give more useful information concerning their earnings performance, restate the earnings or losses of affected periods to reflect the proper allocation of prior period adjustments. They believe therefore that items of this type may best be handled as direct adjustments of retained earnings or as "special items" excluded from net income of the current period. They feel that extraordinary items of *all* types may often best be disclosed as direct adjustments of retained earnings, since this eliminates any distortive effect on reported earnings.

All Inclusive

13. Under the other viewpoint, designated *all inclusive*, net income is presumed to in-

clude all transactions affecting the net increase or decrease in proprietorship equity during the current period, except dividend distributions and transactions of a capital nature.

14. Proponents of this position believe that the aggregate of such periodic net incomes, over the life of an enterprise, constitutes total net income, and that this is the only fair and complete method of reporting the results of operations of the entity. They believe that extraordinary items and prior period adjustments are part of the earnings history of an entity and that omission of such items from periodic statements of income increases the possibility that these items will be overlooked in a review of operating results for a period of years. They also stress the dangers of possible manipulation of annual earnings figures if such items may be omitted from the determination of net income. They believe that a statement of income including all such items is easy to understand and less subject to variations resulting from different judgments. They feel that, when judgment is allowed to determine whether to include or exclude particular items or adjustments, significant differences develop in the treatment of borderline cases and that there is a danger that the use of "extraordinary" as a criterion may be a means of equalizing income. Advocates of this theory believe that full disclosure in the income statement of the nature of any extraordinary items or prior period adjustments during each period will enable the user of a statement of income to make his own assessment of the importance of the items and their effects on operating results.

Decisions of Committee on Accounting Procedure—Subsequent Developments

15. The committee on accounting procedure (predecessor of the Accounting Principles Board) did not embrace either of these viewpoints in its entirety in issuing its first Accounting Research Bulletin on this subject in December 1947. Instead, the committee stated "... it is the opinion of the committee that there should be a general presumption that all items of profit and loss recognized during the period are to be used in determining the figure reported as net income. The only possible exception to this presumption in any case would be with respect to items which in the aggregate are materially significant in relation to the company's net income and are clearly not identifiable with or do not result from the usual or typical business operations of the period. Thus, only extraordinary items such as the

following may be excluded from the determination of net income for the year, and they should be excluded when their inclusion would impair the significance of net income so that misleading inferences might be drawn therefrom: . . ."¹ The list of items which followed consisted of material charges or credits, other than ordinary adjustments of a recurring nature, (a) specifically related to operations of prior years, (b) resulting from unusual sales of assets not acquired for resale and not of the type in which the company usually deals, (c) resulting from losses of a type not usually insured against, (d) resulting from the write-off of a material amount of intangibles or a material amount of unamortized bond discount or premium and expense. The language quoted above was continued substantially un-

changed in the 1953 *Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins*, becoming Chapter 8 of ARB No. 43.

16. Since the issuance of these guidelines for the determination of net income, developments in the business and investment environment have increased the emphasis on, and interest in, the financial reporting format of business entities and the nature of the amount shown as net income therein. As a result of the widespread and increasing dissemination of financial data, often in highly condensed form, to investors and potential investors, suggestions have been made that the criteria for the determination of the amount to be reported as net income, insofar as it is affected by extraordinary items and prior period adjustments, should be re-examined.

OPINION

Summary

17. The Board has considered various methods of reporting the effects of extraordinary events and transactions and of prior period adjustments which are recorded in the accounts during a particular accounting period. The Board has concluded that net income should reflect all items of profit and loss recognized during the period with the sole exception of the prior period adjustments described below. *Extraordinary items* should, however, be segregated from the results of ordinary operations and shown separately in the income statement, with disclosure of the nature and amounts thereof. The criteria for determination of extraordinary items are described in paragraph 21 below.

18. With respect to *prior period adjustments*, the Board has concluded that those rare items which relate directly to the operations of a specific prior period or periods, which are material and which qualify under the criteria described in paragraphs 23 and 25 below should, in single period statements, be reflected as adjustments of the opening balance of retained earnings. When comparative statements are presented, corresponding adjustments should be made of the amounts of net income (and the components thereof) and retained earnings balances (as well as of other affected balances) for all of the periods reported therein, to reflect the retroactive application of the prior period adjustments. (See paragraph 26 for required disclosures of prior period adjustments.)

19. The Board has concluded that the above approach to the reporting of the results of operations of business entities will result in the most meaningful and useful type of financial presentation. The principal advantages are: (a) inclusion of all operating items related to the current period, with segregation and disclosure of the extraordinary items, (b) a reporting of current income from operations free from distortions resulting from material items directly related to prior periods and (c) proper retroactive reflection in comparative financial statements of material adjustments relating directly to prior periods. In reaching its conclusion, the Board recognizes that this approach may involve (a) occasional revision of previously-reported net income for prior periods to reflect subsequently recorded material items directly related thereto, (b) difficulty in segregating extraordinary items and items related to prior periods and (c) the possibility that disclosures regarding adjustments of opening balances in retained earnings or of net income of prior periods will be overlooked by the reader.

Income Statement Presentation

20. Under this approach, the income statement should disclose the following elements:

Income before extraordinary items
Extraordinary items
(less applicable income tax)
Net income

¹ Accounting Research Bulletin No. 32, *Income and Earned Surplus*.

If the extraordinary items are few in number, descriptive captions may replace the caption *extraordinary items* and related notes. In such cases, the first and last captions shown above should nonetheless appear. Similarly, even though material extraordinary items may net to an immaterial amount, they should be positioned and disclosed as indicated above, and the first and last captions shown above should appear. If there are no extraordinary items, the caption *net income* should replace the three captions shown above. The amount of income tax applicable to the segregated items should be disclosed, either on the face of the income statement or in a note thereto. (The amount of prior period adjustments and the amount of income tax applicable thereto should also be disclosed, as outlined in paragraph 26.) Illustrative examples of the treatment of such items in financial statements appear herein as Exhibits A through D.

Criteria for Extraordinary Items Related to the Current Period

21. The segregation in the income statement of the effects of events and transactions which have occurred during the current period, which are of an extraordinary nature and whose effects are material requires the exercise of judgment. (In determining materiality, items of a similar nature should be considered in the aggregate. Dissimilar items should be considered individually; however, if they are few in number, they should be considered in the aggregate.) Such events and transactions are identified primarily by the nature of the underlying occurrence. They will be of a character significantly different from the typical or customary business activities of the entity. Accordingly, they will be events and transactions of material effect which would not be expected to recur frequently and which would not be considered as recurring factors in any evaluation of the ordinary operating processes of the business. Examples of extraordinary items, assuming that each case qualifies under the criteria outlined above, include material gains or losses (or provisions for losses) from (a) the sale or abandonment of a plant or a significant segment of the business,² (b) the sale of an investment not acquired for resale, (c) the write-off of goodwill due to unusual events or developments within the period, (d) the condemnation or expropriation of properties and (e) a major devaluation of a foreign currency. As indicated above, such mate-

rial items, less applicable income tax effect, should be segregated, but reflected in the determination of net income.

22. Certain gains or losses (or provisions for losses), regardless of size, do not constitute extraordinary items (or prior period adjustments) because they are of a character typical of the customary business activities of the entity. Examples include (a) write-downs of receivables, inventories and research and development costs, (b) adjustments of accrued contract prices and (c) gains or losses from fluctuations of foreign exchange. The effects of items of this nature should be reflected in the determination of income before extraordinary items. If such effects are material, disclosure is recommended.

Criteria for Prior Period Adjustments

23. Adjustments related to prior periods—and thus excluded in the determination of net income for the current period—are limited to those material adjustments which (a) can be specifically identified with and directly related to the business activities of particular prior periods, and (b) are not attributable to economic events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements for the prior period, and (c) depend primarily on determinations by persons other than management and (d) were not susceptible of reasonable estimation prior to such determination. Such adjustments are rare in modern financial accounting. They relate to events or transactions which occurred in a prior period, the accounting effects of which could not be determined with reasonable assurance at that time, usually because of some major uncertainty then existing. Evidence of such an uncertainty would be disclosure thereof in the financial statements of the applicable period, or of an intervening period in those cases in which the uncertainty became apparent during a subsequent period. Further, it would be expected that, in most cases, the opinion of the reporting independent auditor on such prior period would have contained a qualification because of the uncertainty. Examples are material, nonrecurring adjustments or settlements of income taxes, of renegotiation proceedings or of utility revenue under rate processes. Settlements of significant amounts resulting from litigation or similar claims may also constitute prior period adjustments.

² Operating results prior to the decision as to sale or abandonment should not be considered an element of the extraordinary gain or loss.

24. Treatment as prior period adjustments should not be applied to the normal, recurring corrections and adjustments which are the natural result of the use of estimates inherent in the accounting process. For example, changes in the estimated remaining lives of fixed assets affect the computed amounts of depreciation, but these changes should be considered prospective in nature and not prior period adjustments. Similarly, relatively immaterial adjustments of provisions for liabilities (including income taxes) made in prior periods should be considered recurring items to be reflected in operations of the current period. Some uncertainties, for example those relating to the realization of assets (collectibility of accounts receivable, ultimate recovery of deferred costs or realizability of inventories or other assets), would not qualify for prior period adjustment treatment, since economic events subsequent to the date of the financial statements must of necessity enter into the elimination of any previously-existing uncertainty. Therefore, the effects of such matters are considered to be elements in the determination of net income for the period in which the uncertainty is eliminated. Thus, the Board believes that prior period adjustments will be rare.

25. A change in the application of accounting principles may create a situation in which retroactive application is appropriate. In such situations, these changes should receive the same treatment as that for prior period adjustments. Examples are changes in the basis of preparing consolidated financial statements or in the basis of carrying investments in subsidiaries (e.g., from cost to the equity method).

Disclosure of Prior Period Adjustments and Restatements of Reported Net Income

26. When prior period adjustments are recorded, the resulting effects (both gross and net of applicable income tax) on the net income of prior periods should be disclosed in the annual report for the year in which the adjustments are made.³ When financial statements for a single period only are presented, this disclosure should indicate the effects of such restatement on the balance of retained earnings at the beginning of the period and on the net income of the immediately preceding period. When financial statements for more than one

period are presented, which is ordinarily the preferable procedure,⁴ the disclosure should include the effects for each of the periods included in the statements. Such disclosures should include the amounts of income tax applicable to the prior period adjustments. Disclosure of restatements in annual reports issued subsequent to the first such post-revision disclosure would ordinarily not be required.

Historical Summaries of Financial Data

27. It has become customary for business entities to present historical, statistical-type summaries of financial data for a number of periods—commonly five or ten years. The Board recommends that the format for reporting extraordinary items described in paragraph 20 be used in such summaries. The Board further recommends that, whenever prior period adjustments have been recorded during any of the periods included therein, the reported amounts of net income (and the components thereof), as well as other affected items, be appropriately restated, with disclosure in the first summary published after the adjustments.

Capital Transactions

28. The Board reaffirms the conclusion of the former committee on accounting procedure that the following should be excluded from the determination of net income or the results of operations under all circumstances: (a) adjustments or charges or credits resulting from transactions in the company's own capital stock,⁵ (b) transfers to and from accounts properly designated as appropriated retained earnings (such as general purpose contingency reserves or provisions for replacement costs of fixed assets) and (c) adjustments made pursuant to a quasi-reorganization.

Illustrative Statements

29. Examples of financial statements illustrating applications of the Board's conclusions appear as Exhibits to this Opinion. The illustrative income statements are prepared in "single-step" form. The "multi-step" form is also acceptable. Regardless of the form used, the income statement should disclose revenues (sales), and the elements mentioned in paragraph 20 above should be clearly disclosed in the order there indicated.

³ The Board recommends disclosure, in addition, in interim reports issued during that year subsequent to the date of recording the adjustments.

⁴ See ARB No. 43, Chapter 2A, *Form of Statements—Comparative Financial Statements*.

⁵ See paragraph 12 of APB Opinion No. 6, *Status of Accounting Research Bulletins*.

II—Computation and Reporting of Earnings per Share

Introduction

30. Statistical presentations of periodic “net income per share,” “net loss per share” or “earnings per share” are commonly used in prospectuses, proxy material and annual reports to stockholders, and in the compilation of business earnings data for the press, statistical services and other publi-

cations.⁶ When presented in conjunction with formal financial statements for a number of periods, such information can be useful, together with other data, in evaluating the past operating performance of a business entity and attempting to form an opinion as to its future potential.

OPINION

General

31. The Board believes that earnings per share data are most useful when furnished in conjunction with a statement of income. Accordingly, the Board strongly recommends that earnings per share be disclosed in the statement of income.

32. It is the Board's opinion that the reporting of per share data should disclose amounts for (a) income before extraordinary items, (b) extraordinary items, if any, (less applicable income tax) and (c) net income—the total of (a) and (b). (See paragraph 20—Part I.) The Board believes that not only will this reporting format increase the usefulness of the reports of results of operations of business entities, but that it will also help to eliminate the tendency of many users to place undue emphasis on one amount reported as earnings per share. Illustrative examples of various methods of disclosure of per share data are included in Exhibits A to E herein.

Computations for Single Periods

General

33. When used without qualification, *earnings per share* refers to the amount of earnings applicable to each share of common stock or other residual security outstanding.⁷ When more than one class of common stock is outstanding, or when an outstanding security has participating dividend rights with the common stock, or when an outstanding security clearly derives a major portion of its value from its conversion rights or its common stock characteristics, such securities should be considered “residual securities” and not “senior securities” for purposes of computing earnings per share. Appropriate consideration should be given to any senior dividend rights or interest relating to such securities, and to any participation provi-

sions. (See also paragraph 49.) In order to compute earnings per share properly, consideration should be given to shares outstanding which are senior to the common stock, and to changes in the common and senior shares during the period. Procedures for doing so are outlined below. The term *common*, when used in this and subsequent paragraphs, includes “residual securities” as defined above.

Treatment of Senior Shares Outstanding

34. The term *earnings per share* should not be used with respect to outstanding shares of senior securities (e.g., preferred stock) in view of their limited dividend rights. In such cases it is often informative to show the number of times or the extent to which the dividend requirements of senior securities have been earned (“earnings coverage”), but such information should not be designated as earnings per share.

35. The claims of senior shares on earnings should be deducted from net income (and also from income before extraordinary items, if an amount therefor appears in the statement) before computing per share amounts applicable to residual securities. Therefore, in arriving at earnings applicable to common stock, provision should be made for cumulative preferred dividends for the period, whether or not earned. (In the case of a net loss, the amount of the loss should be increased by any cumulative preferred dividends for the period.) When cumulative preferred dividends are in arrears, the per share and aggregate amounts thereof should be disclosed. When preferred dividends are cumulative only if earned, no adjustment of this type is required, except to the extent of income available therefor. When preferred dividends are in no way cumulative, only the amount of such dividends declared during the period should be

⁶ See Paragraph 5.

⁷ When, as occasionally occurs in business combinations, an agreement exists to issue additional shares at a future date without additional consideration and without other significant conditions precedent (such as the at-

tainment of specified levels of earnings), such shares are normally reflected in the balance sheet. These shares should be considered as outstanding for purposes of computing per share earnings data.

deducted. In all cases, the effect that has been given to dividend rights of senior securities in arriving at the earnings per share of residual securities should be disclosed.

Changes in Common or Senior Shares During the Period

36. The computation of earnings per share should be based on the weighted average number of shares outstanding during the period. Minor increases and decreases in the number of common shares outstanding during the period may be disregarded; under these conditions, the computation may be based on the number of common shares outstanding at the end of the period. For purposes of determining the number of shares outstanding, reacquired shares (including treasury stock) should be excluded. Major increases or decreases should be taken into consideration as discussed below.

37. When common shares are issued to acquire a business in a transaction which is accounted for as a purchase, the computation should be based on a weighted average of the shares outstanding during the period. When a business combination is accounted for as a pooling of interests, the computation should be based on the aggregate of the weighted average outstanding shares of the constituent businesses (adjusted to equivalent shares of the surviving business) determined in accordance with the provisions herein. This difference in treatment reflects the fact that, in a purchase, the results of operations of the acquired business are included in the statement of income only from the date of acquisition; whereas, in a pooling of interests, the results of operations are combined for the entire period. In the case of reorganizations, the computations should be based on an analysis of the particular transaction according to the criteria contained herein.

38. When senior stock or debt is converted into common stock during a period, earnings per share should be based on a weighted average of the number of shares outstanding during the period. Use of a weighted average makes unnecessary any adjustments with respect to interest or other related factors. Dividends on preferred stock applicable to the period prior to conversion should be handled in accordance with paragraph 35 above. Supplementary pro forma computations of earnings per share, showing what the earnings would have been if the conversion had taken place

at the beginning of the period, should be furnished if the effect of conversion is material, as outlined in paragraph 41 below.

39. When the number of shares outstanding increases as a result of a stock dividend or stock split,⁸ or decreases as a result of a reverse split, without significant proceeds or disbursements, the computation should give retroactive recognition to an appropriate equivalent change in capital structure for the entire period. When a decrease in the number of shares outstanding results from acquisition of treasury stock or from a transaction other than a reverse split, the computation should be based on a weighted average of the number of shares outstanding during the period.

Changes in Common or Senior Shares After Close of Period

40. When changes in common stock due to stock splits or reverse splits take place after the close of the period but before completion and issuance of the financial report, the per share computations should be based on the new number of shares, on a pro forma basis, since the reader's primary interest is presumed to be related to the current capitalization. Similar considerations apply to stock dividends, although a relatively small stock dividend may be disregarded. When per share computations reflect changes in the number of shares after the close of the period, this fact should be disclosed. It is usually not satisfactory to show two amounts of earnings per share under these circumstances.

41. When senior stock or debt is converted into common stock after the close of the period but before completion and issuance of the financial report, supplementary pro forma computations of earnings per share, showing what the earnings would have been if the conversion had taken place at the beginning of the latest period, should be furnished if the effect is material. In making these computations, dividends paid on the senior securities converted should not be deducted from the historical net income for the period; interest and related expenses on the debt converted, less applicable income tax, should be added to the historical net income of the period. The bases of these supplementary computations should be disclosed.

42. Occasionally a sale of common stock for cash is scheduled to occur after the close of the period but before completion and issuance of the financial report. When a

⁸ See ARB No. 43, Chapter 7B, *Capital Accounts—Stock Dividends and Stock Split-ups*.

portion or all of the proceeds of the sale are to be used to retire preferred stock or debt, supplementary pro forma computations of earnings per share should be furnished to show what the earnings would have been for the latest period if the retirement had taken place at the beginning of that period, if the effect is material. The average number of shares outstanding to be used in the computation should include those whose proceeds are to be used to retire the preferred stock or debt. The basis of these supplementary computations should be disclosed.

Contingent Changes and Dilution^a

43. Under certain circumstances, earnings per share may be subject to dilution in the future if existing contingencies permitting issuance of common shares eventuate. Such circumstances include contingent changes resulting from the existence of (a) outstanding senior stock or debt which is convertible into common shares, (b) outstanding stock options, warrants or similar agreements and (c) agreements for the issuance of common shares for little or no consideration upon the satisfaction of certain conditions (e.g., the attainment of specified levels of earnings following a business combination). If such potential dilution is material, supplementary pro forma computations of earnings per share should be furnished, showing what the earnings would be if the conversions or contingent issuances took place. The Board strongly recommends that such per share data be disclosed in the statement of income. The methods of computation should follow those outlined in the preceding paragraphs. When increased earnings levels are a condition of issuance, as in (c) above, such earnings should be given appropriate recognition in the computation of potential dilution. (See also paragraph 49.)

44. The fact that the relationship between current market and conversion prices makes conversion or other contingent issuance unlikely in the foreseeable future is not sufficient basis for omission of the disclosure of the pro forma earnings per share data described in paragraph 43. Disclosure of the current conditions would, nonetheless, normally be desirable.

Computations for Two or More Periods (Including Historical, Statistical-Type Summaries in Annual Reports to Stockholders)

45. The criteria governing the computations of earnings per share for two or more

periods, while generally conforming with those outlined above for single periods, vary somewhat depending on the nature and purpose of the presentation in which they appear. Variations in the capitalization structure of the entity during the periods may have substantial effects on earnings per share, and comparisons of such data without adequate explanations may tend to be misleading. Furthermore, unless such earnings statistics are presented in conjunction with financial statements and with other historical information, the usefulness of per share data in evaluating the past operating performance of a business entity and attempting to form an opinion as to its future potential is limited.

46. Annual reports to stockholders are generally considered to be primarily historical in nature. Thus, although a trend has developed in recent years to include statistical-type summaries of financial data for a number of years, the main emphasis in the financial statements themselves has been on the results of the broad business activities of the entity during the current year as compared with those of the immediately preceding year. Accordingly, the computations of earnings per share in annual reports to stockholders, whether related to the formal financial statements in comparative form for two years or to the historical summaries covering a period of years, should usually be based on the capitalization structure existing during each period. The computation for each year should therefore follow the criteria outlined in paragraphs 33 through 44 above. The principal exception to this practice of avoiding retroactive recomputations for changes in the capitalization structure occurs when a pooling of interests has occurred. Since the earnings of the pooled entities are combined for all periods, the capital structure used to compute earnings per share for all periods should reflect appropriate recognition of the securities issued in the pooling transaction. Other exceptions to this treatment are the result of (a) stock splits or reverse splits, and (b) stock dividends, including those in recurring small percentages which in the aggregate become material during the periods involved. In these situations the methods outlined in paragraphs 39 and 40 above should be followed for all of the periods involved. When changes in the capitalization structure of the types described in paragraphs 41 and 42 above occur after the close of the last period, or when contin-

^a Paragraphs 43 and 44 do not apply to securities which, because of their characteristics,

are accorded the treatments described in paragraph 33 or in note 7 thereto.

gencies exist (see paragraphs 43 and 44), supplementary pro forma computations for the latest period, as a minimum, should be furnished.

47. In those cases in which net income of a prior period has been restated as a result of a prior period adjustment during the current period, any earnings per share data should be based on the restated amount of net income. The effect of the restatement, expressed in per share terms, should be disclosed.

48. The Board recommends that management be guided by the methods outlined in paragraphs 45, 46 and 47 herein for computing and reporting earnings per share in historical, statistical-type summaries contained in annual reports to stockholders.

Other

49. The Board recognizes that it is impracticable, in this Opinion, to discuss all the possible conditions and circumstances under which it may be necessary or desirable to compute earnings per share. However, when situations not expressly covered in this Opinion occur, they should be dealt with in accordance with the guidelines and criteria outlined herein. Such determinations require careful consideration of all the facts, and the exercise of judgment. The resulting earnings per share data should reflect a realistic evaluation of all the attendant circumstances. In all unusual cases, the basis of the computations should be disclosed.

EFFECTIVE DATE

52. This Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1966. However, where feasible the Board recommends earlier compliance with this Opinion. The Board also strongly recom-

Dividends per Share

50. Dividends constitute historical facts and usually are so reported. However, in certain cases, such as those affected by stock dividends or splits or reverse splits, the presentation of dividends per share should be made in terms of the current equivalent of the number of shares outstanding at the time of the dividend, so that dividends per share and earnings per share will be stated on a comparable basis. A disclosure problem exists in presenting data as to dividends per share following a pooling of interests. If the dividend policies of the constituent companies were different, a combination of dividends declared may be misleading, even though the per share data are expressed in shares of the continuing company. In such cases, it is usually preferable to disclose the dividends declared per share by the principal constituent and to disclose, in addition, either the amount per equivalent share or the total amount for each period for the other constituent, with appropriate explanations of the circumstances. When dividends per share are presented on other than an historical basis, the basis of presentation should be disclosed.

Illustrative Statements

51. Examples illustrating the inclusion of per share data in financial statements in accordance with the Board's recommendations are shown in Exhibits A, B, D and E.

mends that, in comparative statements in which one or more periods are subject to this Opinion, the provisions of the Opinion be applied to all periods appearing therein.

The Opinion entitled "Reporting the Results of Operations" was adopted unanimously by the twenty members of the Board, of whom five, Messrs. Biegler, Catlett, Frese, Halvorson and Walker, assented with qualification.

Mr. Biegler assents to the issuance of this Opinion because he believes that the usefulness of the income statement to the investor is enhanced when all items of profit and loss relating to the period are included in the determination of net income and the results of the ordinary, recurring operations of a business are reported separately from extraordinary items. He believes that the caption described in paragraph 20 as "Income before extraordinary items"

can best meet the needs of investors for an index of the results of and trends in ordinary recurring operations when there is excluded therefrom those gains or losses which are extraordinary because of the combination of rarity in the circumstances giving rise thereto and the abnormal size thereof. Accordingly, he dissents from the conclusion stated in paragraph 22 that certain types of gains or losses, *regardless of size*, must be reflected in the determination of "income before extraordinary items." He believes that the quality of being extraordinary can be derived from rarity or extreme infrequency in size, as well as from the nature of a transaction or event.

Mr. Catlett does not agree that the criteria for prior period adjustments as set forth in paragraphs 23 and 24 of this Opinion are established on a proper basis. He considers that the nature of the adjustment and the factors which cause it are controlling, and that any material item which is in fact applicable to, and a correction of, a prior period should be accounted for as an adjustment of that period. He believes that there are cases in which prior period adjustments are appropriate with respect to questions involving realization of assets, such as receivables, inventories and property. He is of the opinion (1) that the Board is establishing arbitrary rules to discourage or prohibit prior period adjustments rather than determining appropriate principles to be followed in reviewing the nature of the items involved, and (2) that the inclusion in the current period's net income of a material item which is really applicable to a prior period results in the financial statements for two periods being in error.

Mr. Walker, joined by Mr. Frese, recognizes that the Opinion attempts to set up the criteria to restrict the number of

items deemed to be prior period adjustments which are to be excluded from net income of the year and thrown back to prior years by restating opening balances of retained earnings. He nevertheless feels that such treatment will result in continuing controversy and will be confusing to users of financial statements. He believes that such treatment should not be mandatory, but rather should be left to the judgment of the managements who have the primary responsibility for proper presentation to stockholders. He therefore recommends that the so-called "all inclusive" statement of income—consistently followed—and with adequate disclosure of material special items (including extraordinary and prior period items) should be permissive.

Mr. Halvorson concurs in the qualified assent expressed by Mr. Walker in respect of the mandatory exclusion of prior period adjustments from the current statement of income, and extends his qualification to the mandatory determination of an arbitrary "income before extraordinary items" within the determination of net income.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

- b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."*

- c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1966-1967)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

DONALD J. BEVIS

JOHN C. BIEGLER

GEORGE R. CATLETT

W. A. CRICHLEY

JOSEPH P. CUMMINGS

SIDNEY DAVIDSON

PHILIP L. DEFLESE

WALTER F. FRESE

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

JOHN K. MCCLARE

ROBERT J. MURPHEY

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN W. QUEENAN

WILBERT A. WALKER

FRANK T. WESTON

ROBERT E. WITSCHY

EXHIBITS**Illustrative Statements**

The following examples illustrate the treatment of extraordinary items and prior period adjustments in financial statements. The format of the statements is illustrative only, and does not necessarily reflect a preference by the Accounting Principles Board for the format or for the intermediate captions shown. See Part I—paragraph 20 as to certain final captions. The statements do not include customary disclosures, such as the amount of depreciation expense for the period, which are not considered pertinent to the subject matter of this Opinion.

The illustrative examples, in comparative form, are as follows:

	<i>Exhibit</i>
Statement of Income and Retained Earnings	A
Statement of Income	B
Statement of Retained Earnings ..	C
Statement of Income—Five Years	D
Disclosures of per share data when senior securities are outstanding or material potential dilution exists	E

EXHIBIT A

STATEMENT OF INCOME AND RETAINED EARNINGS
Years Ended December 31, 1967 and December 31, 1966

	1967	1966
		(Note 2)
Net sales	\$84,580,000	\$75,650,000
Other income	80,000	100,000
	<u>84,660,000</u>	<u>75,750,000</u>
Cost and expenses—		
Cost of goods sold	60,000,000	55,600,000
Selling, general and administrative expenses ..	5,000,000	4,600,000
Interest expense	100,000	100,000
Other deductions	80,000	90,000
Income tax	9,350,000	7,370,000
	<u>74,530,000</u>	<u>67,760,000</u>
Income before extraordinary items	10,130,000	7,990,000
Extraordinary items, net of applicable income tax of \$1,880,000 in 1967 (Note 1)	(2,040,000)	(1,280,000)
Net Income	<u>8,090,000</u>	<u>6,710,000</u>
Retained earnings at beginning of year—		
As previously reported	28,840,000	25,110,000
Adjustments (Note 2)	(3,160,000)	(1,760,000)
As restated	<u>25,680,000</u>	<u>23,350,000</u>
	<u>33,770,000</u>	<u>30,060,000</u>
Cash dividends on common stock—		
\$.75 per share	4,380,000	4,380,000
Retained earnings at end of year	<u>\$29,390,000</u>	<u>\$25,680,000</u>
Per share of common stock—		
Income before extraordinary items	\$1.73	\$1.37
Extraordinary items, net of tax	<u>(.34)</u>	<u>(.22)</u>
Net income	<u>\$1.39</u>	<u>\$1.15</u>

Note 1

During 1967 the Company sold one of its plants at a net loss of \$2,040,000, after applicable income tax reduction of \$1,880,000. During 1966 the Company sold an investment in marketable securities at a loss of \$1,280,000, with no income tax effect.

Note 2

The balance of retained earnings at December 31, 1966 has been restated from amounts previ-

ously reported to reflect a retroactive charge of \$3,160,000 for additional income taxes settled in 1967. Of this amount, \$1,400,000 (\$.24 per share) is applicable to 1966 and has been reflected as an increase in tax expense for that year, the balance (applicable to years prior to 1966) being charged to retained earnings at January 1, 1966.

EXHIBIT B**STATEMENT OF INCOME****Years Ended December 31, 1967 and December 31, 1966**

	1967	1966
		(Note 2)
Net sales	\$84,580,000	\$75,650,000
Other income	80,000	100,000
	<u>84,660,000</u>	<u>75,750,000</u>
Cost and expenses—		
Cost of goods sold	60,000,000	55,600,000
Selling, general and administrative expenses..	5,000,000	4,600,000
Interest expense	100,000	100,000
Other deductions	80,000	90,000
Income tax	9,350,000	7,370,000
	<u>74,530,000</u>	<u>67,760,000</u>
Income before extraordinary items (per share: 1967—\$1.73; 1966—\$1.37)	10,130,000	7,990,000
Extraordinary items, less applicable income tax in 1967 (Note 1) (per share: 1967—\$(.34); 1966—\$(.22)).	(2,040,000)	(1,280,000)
Net income (per share: 1967—\$1.39; 1966—\$1.15)	<u>\$ 8,090,000</u>	<u>\$ 6,710,000</u>

Note 1

During 1967 the Company sold one of its plants at a net loss of \$2,040,000, after applicable income tax reduction of \$1,880,000. During 1966 the Company sold an investment in marketable securities at a loss of \$1,280,000, with no income tax effect.

Note 2

The balance of retained earnings at December 31, 1966 has been restated from amounts previously reported to reflect a retroactive charge of \$3,160,000 for additional income taxes settled in 1967. Of this amount, \$1,400,000 (\$.24 per share) is applicable to 1966 and has been reflected as an increase in tax expense for that year, the balance (applicable to years prior to 1966) being charged to retained earnings at January 1, 1966.

EXHIBIT C**STATEMENT OF RETAINED EARNINGS****Years Ended December 31, 1967 and December 31, 1966**

	1967	1966
Retained earnings at beginning of year—		
As previously reported	\$28,840,000	\$25,110,000
Adjustments (Note 2)	(3,160,000)	(1,760,000)
	<u>25,680,000</u>	<u>23,350,000</u>
Net income	8,090,000	6,710,000
	<u>33,770,000</u>	<u>30,060,000</u>
Cash dividends on common stock—		
\$.75 per share	4,380,000	4,380,000
Retained earnings at end of year	<u>\$29,390,000</u>	<u>\$25,680,000</u>

(See accompanying notes appearing on statement of income, Exhibit B.)

EXHIBIT D

STATEMENT OF INCOME
For the Five Years Ended December 31, 1967

	1963	1964	1965	1966	1967
	(In thousands of dollars)				
Net sales	\$67,100	\$66,700	\$69,300	\$75,650	\$84,580
Other income	80	80	60	100	80
	<u>67,180</u>	<u>66,780</u>	<u>69,360</u>	<u>75,750</u>	<u>84,660</u>
Costs and expenses:					
Cost of goods sold	48,000	47,600	49,740	55,600	60,000
Selling, general and administrative expenses	4,300	4,200	4,500	4,600	5,000
Interest expense	120	100	90	100	100
Other deductions	80	80	60	90	80
Income tax	7,340	7,400	7,490	7,370	9,350
	<u>59,840</u>	<u>59,380</u>	<u>61,880</u>	<u>67,760</u>	<u>74,530</u>
Income before extraordinary items	7,340	7,400	7,480	7,990	10,130
Extraordinary items, net of applicable income tax (Note A)	—	760	—	(1,280)	(2,040)
Net income (Note B)	<u>\$ 7,340</u>	<u>\$ 8,160</u>	<u>\$ 7,480</u>	<u>\$ 6,710</u>	<u>\$ 8,090</u>
Per share of common stock:					
Income before extraordinary items	\$1.26	\$1.27	\$1.28	\$1.37	\$1.73
Extraordinary items, net of income tax	—	.12	—	\$(.22)	\$(.34)
Net income	<u>\$1.26</u>	<u>\$1.39</u>	<u>\$1.28</u>	<u>\$1.15</u>	<u>\$1.39</u>

NOTE A

The extraordinary items consist of the following: 1964—gain as a result of condemnation of idle land, less applicable income tax of \$254,000; 1966—loss on sale of investment in marketable securities, with no income tax effect; 1967—loss on sale of plant, less applicable income tax reduction \$1,880,000.

taxes for such years settled in 1967. These retroactive adjustments reduced net income for such years by \$860,000 (\$.15 per share), \$900,000 (\$.15 per share) and \$1,400,000 (\$.24 per share), respectively, as follows:

	1963	1964	1966
	(In thousands of dollars)		
Previously reported	\$8,200	\$9,060	\$8,110
Adjustments	860	900	1,400
As adjusted	<u>\$7,340</u>	<u>\$8,160</u>	<u>\$6,710</u>

NOTE B

The amounts of net income for 1963, 1964 and 1966 have been restated from amounts previously reported to reflect additional income

EXHIBIT E

DISCLOSURES OF PER SHARE DATA WHEN SENIOR SECURITIES ARE OUTSTANDING OR MATERIAL POTENTIAL DILUTION EXISTS

Senior Securities Outstanding

When senior securities are outstanding, per share data are preferably shown in the format illustrated in Exhibit A, that is, in

a table at the bottom of the income statement and not against the captions of the statement itself. The preferred method is illustrated below:

Per Share Earnings Applicable to Common Stock (Note X)

Earnings before extraordinary items	\$1.23	\$.87
Extraordinary items, net of tax	(.34)	(.22)
Earnings applicable to common stock	<u>\$.89</u>	<u>\$.65</u>

Note X

Per share data are based on the average number of common shares outstanding during each year, after recognition of the dividend requirements (\$2,920,000) on the 5% preferred stock.

**Material Potential Dilution Exists—
Convertible Preferred Stock**

Under these conditions, the basic and supplementary per share data are prefer-

ably shown at the bottom of the income statement, as in Exhibit A, with an additional note, as follows:

Per Share Earnings Applicable to Common Stock (Note X)

Earnings before extraordinary items.....	\$1.23	\$.87
Extraordinary items, net of tax.....	(.34)	(.22)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Earnings applicable to common stock.....	\$.89	\$.65
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Pro Forma Per Share of Common Stock, Reflecting Conversion (Note Y)

Income before extraordinary items.....	\$.99	\$.78
Extraordinary items, net of tax.....	(.20)	(.12)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Net income	\$.79	\$.66
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Note X

Per share data are based on the average number of common shares outstanding during each year, after recognition of the dividend requirements (\$2,920,000) on the 5% preferred stock.

Note Y

The pro forma per share data are based on the assumption that the outstanding 5% preferred shares were converted into common shares at the conversion ratio in effect at December 31, 1967, reflecting the 4,380,000 shares issuable on conversion and eliminating the preferred dividend requirements.

**Material Potential Dilution Exists—
Convertible Debt, No Preferred
Stock**

Under these conditions, the basic and supplementary per share data are preferably

shown at the bottom of the income statement, as in Exhibit A, with an additional note, as follows:

Per Share of Common Stock

Income before extraordinary items.....	\$1.73	\$1.37
Extraordinary items, net of tax.....	(.34)	(.22)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Net income	\$1.39	\$1.15
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Pro Forma Per Share of Common Stock, Reflecting Conversion (Note M)

Income before extraordinary items.....	\$1.53	\$1.21
Extraordinary items, net of tax.....	(.31)	(.19)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Net income	\$1.22	\$1.02
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Note M

The pro forma per share data are based on the assumption that the 5½% convertible debentures outstanding at December 31, 1967 were converted into common shares at the conversion rate in effect at that date, reflecting the 800,000 shares issuable on conversion and eliminating the related interest on the convertible debentures (less applicable income tax) of \$50,000.

APB Opinion No. 10

OMNIBUS OPINION—1966

DECEMBER, 1966

Consolidated Financial Statements
 Poolings of Interest—Restatement of Financial Statements
 Tax Allocation Accounts—Discounting
 Offsetting Securities Against Taxes Payable
 Convertible Debt and Debt Issued with Stock Warrants
 Liquidation Preference of Preferred Stock
 Installment Method of Accounting

INTRODUCTION

1. This is the first of a series of Opinions which the Board expects to issue periodically containing:
 - (a) Amendments of prior Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board and Accounting Research Bulletins of its predecessor, the committee on accounting procedure, as appear necessary to clarify their meaning or to describe their applicability under changed conditions.
 - (b) Affirmation of accounting principles and methods which have become generally accepted through practice and which the Board believes to be sound, and when it desires to prevent the possible development of less desirable alternatives.
 - (c) Conclusions as to appropriate accounting principles and methods on subjects not dealt with in previous pronouncements and for which a separate Opinion is not believed to be warranted.

CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

(Amendment to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 51)

2. Paragraph 1 of ARB No. 51 states that "There is a presumption that consolidated statements . . . are usually necessary for a fair presentation when one of the companies in the group directly or indirectly has a controlling financial interest in the other companies." The usefulness of consolidated financial statements has been amply demonstrated by the widespread acceptance of this form of financial reporting. A research study on the broader subject of accounting for intercorporate investments is now in process which will encompass the matters

covered in ARB No. 51. Pending consideration of that study the Board has adopted the following amendments to ARB No. 51.

3. If, in consolidated financial statements, a domestic subsidiary is not consolidated,¹ the Board's opinion is that, unless circumstances are such as those referred to in paragraph 2 of ARB No. 51,² the investment in the subsidiary should be adjusted for the consolidated group's share of accumulated undistributed earnings and losses since acquisition.³ This practice is sometimes referred to as the "equity" method. In report-

¹ This paragraph modifies paragraphs 19 and 20 of ARB 51 insofar as they relate to domestic subsidiaries. An accounting research study on the subject of foreign investments and operations is in process. The Board has deferred consideration of the treatment of foreign subsidiaries in consolidated financial statements until the study is published. In the meantime, the provisions of Chapter 12 of ARB 43 (as amended by paragraph 18 of APB Opinion No. 6 and by paragraphs 17, 21 and 22 of APB Opinion No. 9) continue in effect.

The Board has also deferred consideration of the treatment of jointly owned (50 per cent or

less) companies pending completion of the study on accounting for intercorporate investments.

² "For example, a subsidiary should not be consolidated where control is likely to be temporary, or where it does not rest with the majority owners (as, for instance, where the subsidiary is in legal reorganization or in bankruptcy)."

³ Cumulative undistributed earnings at the effective date of this Opinion should be reflected, with a corresponding adjustment of retained earnings, and reported as a prior period adjustment resulting from a retroactive change in the application of an accounting principle; where

ing periodic consolidated net income, the earnings or losses of the unconsolidated subsidiary (or group of subsidiaries) should generally be presented as a separate item.⁴ The amount of such earnings or losses should give effect to amortization, if appropriate, of any difference between the cost of the investment and the equity in net assets at date of acquisition and to any elimination of inter-company gains or losses that would have been made had the subsidiary been consolidated. If desired, dividends received by members of the consolidated group from the unconsolidated subsidiary may be shown parenthetically or by footnote. (See also paragraph 21 of ARB 51, which relates to disclosure of assets and liabilities of unconsolidated subsidiaries.)

4. The Board is of the opinion that, in the preparation of consolidated financial statements for periods subsequent to the effective date of this Opinion, the accounts of all subsidiaries (regardless of when organized or acquired) whose principal business activity is leasing property or facilities to their parents or other affiliates should be consolidated. The Board believes that the "equity" method, referred to in paragraph 3, which directs its emphasis primarily to recognizing results of operations of the enterprise as a whole, is not adequate for fair presentation in the case of these subsidiaries because of the significance of their assets and liabilities to the consolidated financial position of the enterprise.⁵

POOLINGS OF INTERESTS— RESTATEMENT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

5. Paragraph 12 of ARB No. 48 is amended to read as follows:

12. When a combination is considered to be a pooling of interests,⁶ statements of results of operations issued by the continuing business for the period in which the combination occurs

the results of operations of prior periods would be materially affected, they should be restated. See paragraphs 25 of APB Opinion No. 9.

⁴ Extraordinary items and prior period adjustments may require treatment in accordance with APB Opinion No. 9 if, on a consolidated basis, such items would be material in relation to consolidated net income. Thus, consolidated income before extraordinary items and consolidated net income would be the same as if the unconsolidated subsidiary were fully consolidated.

⁵ The Board is giving further consideration to the accounting treatment of lease transactions. In the meantime, it has deferred expressing an opinion on the inclusion in consolidated financial statements of companies organized in connec-

Messrs. Catlett and Davidson do not agree with paragraph 4 of this Opinion. They believe that the Board should not use this piecemeal pronouncement on consolidation principles to attempt to overcome some of the basic deficiencies in Opinion No. 5. A subsidiary of the type referred to in paragraph 4 represents one of several possible approaches to financing by means of leases, and in many such cases the noncancellable leases from the parent company are the principal security for the funds borrowed by the subsidiary; such leases, in effect, are obligations to outside lenders. The consolidation of such a subsidiary would increase further the existing confusion and lack of comparability between companies in the financial reporting of lease obligations, because the consolidation might involve (1) leases entered into prior to the effective date of Opinion No. 5, and (2) leases in which there is not the creation of a significant equity for the lessee in the property. They consider that the better solution to this problem would be for Opinion No. 5 to be revised to provide that material amounts payable under noncancellable leases should be shown as obligations (discounted to present value) in the balance sheets of all lessee companies.

should include the combined results of operations of the constituent interests for the entire period in which the combination was effected. Similarly, if the pooling is consummated at or shortly after the close of the period, and before financial state-

tion with leasing transactions in which the equity interest, usually nominal at the time of organization, is held by third parties, but in which the principal lessee, through options or by similar devices, possesses or has the power to obtain the economic benefits of ownership from the lease arrangements. (This deferment does not affect the applicability of paragraph 12 of APB Opinion No. 5.)

⁶ Accounting Research Study No. 5 on *A Critical Study of Accounting for Business Combinations* has been published, and another research study on accounting for goodwill is in process. The Board plans to reconsider the entire subject of accounting for business combinations after the latter study is published.

ments of the continuing business are issued, the financial statements should, if practicable, give effect to the pooling for the entire period being reported; in this case, information should also be furnished as to revenues and earnings of the constituent businesses for all periods presented. Results of operations, balance sheets and other historical financial data of the continuing business for periods (including interim periods) prior to that in which the combination was effected, when

presented for comparative purposes, should be restated on a combined basis. In order to show the effect of poolings upon their earnings trends, companies may wish to provide reconciliations of amounts of revenues and earnings previously reported with those currently presented. Combined financial statements of pooled businesses should be clearly described as such, and disclosure should be made that a business combination has been treated as a pooling.

TAX ALLOCATION ACCOUNTS— DISCOUNTING

6. Accounting Research Study No. 9, *Interperiod Allocation of Corporate Income Taxes*,⁷ deals with the allocation of income taxes among accounting periods when revenues and expenses are reported for financial accounting purposes in different periods than they are for income tax purposes. The Board is presently giving attention to this general subject with a view to issuing an Opinion on it. One of the questions now being considered is whether certain long-term tax allocation accounts should be determined on a discounted basis as recommended in the Study. Pending further consideration of this subject and the broader aspects of discounting as it is related to financial accounting in general and until the Board reaches a conclusion on this subject, it is the Board's opinion that, except for applications existing on the exposure date of this Opinion (September 26, 1966) with respect to transactions consummated prior to that date, deferred taxes should not be accounted for on a discounted basis.

Messrs. Davidson and Weston do not agree with the conclusion of the Board that further use of the discounting (or present value) technique in measuring the current cost of deferred income taxes is not acceptable, pending further consideration of this subject by the Board. They point out that Accounting Research Study No. 9 concluded that this method is required

whenever the interest factor is significant. They recognize that the Board is attempting to prevent the development of an alternative practice until it has had an opportunity to consider the subject matter thoroughly and form an opinion thereon. On the other hand, the Board has required use of the discounting technique in measuring the present value of obligations due in the future in (a) the capitalization of leases (Opinion No. 5 — paragraph 15) and (b) the accrual of pension costs (Opinion No. 8 — paragraphs 23 and 42). They find it difficult to reconcile these inconsistent positions of the Board on similar questions of measurement. Furthermore, they believe that the Board is creating an unwise precedent by outlawing potential developments in practice which may be preferable to those presently in use, with the sole justification that the Board is not yet properly prepared to evaluate the merits of the developing practice. This position would, in the opinion of Messrs. Davidson and Weston, be detrimental to the sound development of accounting principles and practices through experience, which, in their considered view, is an effective means by which accounting techniques can be improved.

OFFSETTING SECURITIES AGAINST TAXES PAYABLE

7. Chapter 3B, entitled *Working Capital—Application of United States Government Securities Against Liabilities for Federal Taxes on Income*, of Accounting Research Bulletin

No. 43 is withdrawn in its entirety. The following Chapter 3B, entitled *Offsetting Securities Against Taxes Payable*, is substituted in its place:

⁷ Accounting Research Studies are not statements of this Board or of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, but are

published for the purpose of stimulating discussion on important accounting issues.

1. It is a general principle of accounting that the offsetting of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet is improper except where a right of setoff exists. Accordingly, the offset of cash or other assets against the tax liability or other amounts owing to governmental bodies is not acceptable except in the circumstances described in paragraph 3 below.
2. Most securities now issued by governments are not by their terms designed specifically for the payment of taxes and, accordingly, should not be deducted from taxes payable on the balance sheet.
3. The only exception to this general principle occurs when it is clear that a purchase of securities (acceptable for the payment of taxes) is in substance an advance payment of taxes that will be payable in the relatively near future, so that in the special circumstances the purchase is tantamount to the prepayment of taxes. This occurs at times, for example, as an accommodation to a local government and in some instances when governments issue securities that are specifically designated as being acceptable for the payment of taxes of those governments.

CONVERTIBLE DEBT AND DEBT ISSUED WITH STOCK WARRANTS

8. A portion of the proceeds received for bonds or other debt obligations which are convertible into stock, or which are issued with warrants to purchase stock, is ordinarily attributable to the conversion privilege or to the warrants, a factor that is usually reflected in the stated interest rate. In substance, the acquirer of the debt obligation receives a "call" on the stock. Accordingly, the portion of the proceeds attributable to the conversion feature or the warrants should be accounted for as paid-in capital (typically by a credit to capital surplus); however, as the liability under the debt obligation is not reduced by such attribution, the corresponding charge should be to debt discount. The discount so recognized (or the reduced premium if the proceeds exceed the face amount of the debt obligation) should thereafter be accounted

for in accordance with Chapter 15 of ARB No. 43 as amended by paragraph 19 of APB Opinion No. 6 and by paragraph 17 of APB Opinion No. 9. Upon conversion, the related unamortized debt discount should be accounted for as a reduction of the consideration for the securities being issued.

9. The discount or reduced premium, in the case of convertible debt obligations, may ordinarily be measured as the difference between the price at which the debt was issued and the estimated price for which it would have been issued in the absence of the conversion feature. Warrants are frequently traded and their fair value can usually be determined by market prices at the time the debt is issued; accordingly, proceeds of the issue can be allocated in proportion to the relative market values of the debt obligations and warrants.

LIQUIDATION PREFERENCE OF PREFERRED STOCK

10. Companies at times issue preferred (or other senior) stock which has a preference in involuntary liquidation considerably in excess of the par or stated value of the shares. The relationship between this preference in liquidation and the par or stated value of the shares may be of major significance to the users of the financial statements of those companies and the Board believes it highly desirable that it be prominently disclosed. Accordingly, the Board recommends that, in these cases, the liquidation preference of the stock be disclosed in the equity section of the balance sheet in the aggregate, either parenthetically or

"in short," rather than on a per share basis or by disclosure in notes.

11. In addition, the financial statements should disclose, either on the face of the balance sheet or in notes pertaining thereto:

- a. the aggregate or per share amounts at which preferred shares may be called or are subject to redemption through sinking fund operations or otherwise;
- b. as called for by paragraph 35 of APB Opinion No. 9, the aggregate and per share amounts of arrearages in cumulative preferred dividends.

INSTALLMENT METHOD OF ACCOUNTING

12. Chapter 1A of ARB No. 43, paragraph 1, states that "Profit is deemed to be realized when a sale in the ordinary course of business is effected, unless the circumstances are such that the collection of the sale price is not reasonably assured." The Board reaffirms this statement; it believes

that revenues should ordinarily be accounted for at the time a transaction is completed, with appropriate provision for uncollectible accounts. Accordingly, it concludes that, in the absence of the circumstances⁸ referred to above, the installment method of recognizing revenue is not acceptable.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS OPINION

13. This Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1966 and does not have retroactive effect

except as indicated in paragraphs 3, 4, 5 and 6. However, earlier application is encouraged.

The Opinion entitled "Omnibus Opinion—1966" was adopted unanimously by the twenty members of the Board, of whom two, Messrs. Catlett and Davidson, assented with qualifi-

cation as to paragraph 4 and two, Messrs. Davidson and Weston, assented with qualification as to paragraph 6.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures from Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October, 1964) provides that:

- (a) "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

- (b) *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."*

- (c) *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1966-1967)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER
Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

DONALD J. BEVIS

JOHN C. BIEGLER

GEORGE R. CATLETT

W. A. CRICHEY

JOSEPH P. CUMMINGS

SIDNEY DAVIDSON

PHILIP L. DEFLIESE

WALTER F. FRESE

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

JOHN K. MCCLARE

ROBERT J. MURPHEY

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN W. QUEENAN

WILBERT A. WALKER

FRANK T. WESTON

ROBERT E. WITSCHY

⁸ The Board recognizes that there are exceptional cases where receivables are collectible over an extended period of time and, because of the terms of the transactions or other conditions, there is no reasonable basis for estimating the degree of collectibility. When such circumstances exist, and as long as they exist, either

the installment method or the cost recovery method of accounting may be used. (Under the cost recovery method, equal amounts of revenue and expense are recognized as collections are made until all costs have been recovered, postponing any recognition of profit until that time.)

APB Opinion No. 11

ACCOUNTING FOR INCOME TAXES

DECEMBER, 1967

Contents		Paragraph Numbers
Introduction		1-5
Applicability		6-7
Summary of Problems		8-11
Summary of Conclusions		12
Definitions and Concepts		13-14
Timing Differences		
Discussion		
Nature of Timing Differences		15-17
Differing Viewpoints		18-25
Partial Allocation		26-28
Comprehensive Allocation		29-32
Permanent Differences		33
Opinion		34-37
Special Areas Requiring Further Study		38-41
Operating Losses		
Discussion		42-43
Opinion		44-50
Tax Allocation Within a Period		
Discussion		51
Opinion		52
Other Unused Deductions and Credits		
Opinion		53
Financial Reporting		
Discussion		54-55
Opinion		56-64
Effective Date		65-67
Examples of Timing Differences		Appendix A

INTRODUCTION

1. This Opinion sets forth the Board's conclusions on some aspects of accounting for income taxes. These conclusions include significant modifications of views previously expressed by the Committee on Accounting Procedure and by the Board. Accordingly, this Opinion supersedes the following Accounting Research Bulletins (ARBs) and Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board (APBs):

- a. ARB No. 43, Chapter 10, Section B, *Taxes: Income Taxes*.
- b. Letter of April 15, 1959, addressed to the members of the Institute by the Committee on Accounting Procedure interpreting ARB 44 (Revised).
- c. APB Opinion No. 6, *Status of Accounting Research Bulletins* (paragraphs 21 and 23).

2. This Opinion also amends the following ARBs and APBs insofar as they relate to accounting for income taxes:

- a. ARB No. 43, Chapter 9, Section C, *Depreciation: Emergency Facilities—Depreciation, Amortization and Income Taxes* (paragraphs 11-13).
- b. ARB No. 43, Chapter 11, Section B, *Government Contracts: Renegotiation* (paragraph 8).
- c. ARB No. 43, Chapter 15, *Unamortized Discount, Issue Cost, and Redemption Premium on Bonds Refunded* (paragraph 11).
- d. ARB No. 44 (Revised), *Declining-balance Depreciation* (paragraphs 4, 5, 7 and 10).

e. ARB No. 51, *Consolidated Financial Statements* (paragraph 17).

f. APB Opinion No. 1, *New Depreciation Guidelines and Rules* (paragraphs 1, 5, and 6).

g. APB Opinion No. 5, *Reporting of Leases in Financial Statements of Lessee* (paragraph 21).

3. *Discounting*. The Board's Opinion on "Tax Allocation Accounts—Discounting," as expressed in APB Opinion No. 10, *Omnibus Opinion—1966* (paragraph 6), continues in effect pending further study of the broader aspects of discounting as it is related to financial accounting in general.

4. *Investment Credits*. The Board is continuing its study on accounting for "Investment Credits" and intends to issue a new Opinion on the subject as soon as possible. In the meantime APB Opinion No. 2, *Accounting for the "Investment Credit,"* and APB Opinion No. 4 (Amending No. 2), *Accounting for the "Investment Credit,"* remain in effect.

5. Certain aspects of tax allocation, including illustrations of procedures and an extended discussion of alternative approaches to allocation, are presented in Accounting Research Study No. 9, *Interperiod Allocation of Corporate Income Taxes*, by Homer A. Black, published by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants in 1966.¹ The Board has considered the Study and the comments received on it. The conclusions in this Opinion vary in some important respects from those reached in the Study.

APPLICABILITY

6. This Opinion applies to financial statements which purport to present financial position and results of operations in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. It does not apply (a) to regulated industries in those circumstances where the standards described in the Addendum (which remains in effect) to APB Opinion No. 2 are met and (b) to special areas requiring further study as specifically indicated in paragraphs 38-41 of this Opinion. The Board has deferred consideration

of the special problems of allocation of income taxes in interim financial statements and among components of a business enterprise pending further study and the issuance of Opinions on the applicability of generally accepted accounting principles to these statements.

7. The Board emphasizes that this Opinion, as in the case of all other Opinions, is not intended to apply to immaterial items.

¹ Accounting Research Studies are not statements of this Board, or of the Institute, but

are published for the purpose of stimulating discussion on important accounting issues.

SUMMARY OF PROBLEMS

8. The principal problems in accounting for income taxes arise from the fact that some transactions² affect the determination of net income for financial accounting purposes in one reporting period and the computation of taxable income and income taxes payable in a different reporting period. The amount of income taxes determined to be payable for a period does not, therefore, necessarily represent the appropriate income tax expense applicable to transactions recognized for financial accounting purposes in that period. A major problem is, therefore, the measurement of the tax effects of such transactions and the extent to which the tax effects should be included in income tax expense in the same periods in which the transactions affect pretax accounting income.

9. The United States Internal Revenue Code permits a "net operating loss" of one period to be deducted in determining taxable income of other periods. This leads

to the question of whether the tax effects of an operating loss should be recognized for financial accounting purposes in the period of loss or in the periods of reduction of taxable income.

10. Certain items includable in taxable income receive special treatment for financial accounting purposes, even though the items are reported in the same period in which they are reported for tax purposes. A question exists, therefore, as to whether the tax effects attributable to extraordinary items, adjustments of prior periods (or of the opening balance of retained earnings), and direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts should be associated with the particular items for financial reporting purposes.³

11. Guidelines are needed for balance sheet and income statement presentation of the tax effects of timing differences, operating losses and similar items.

SUMMARY OF CONCLUSIONS

12. The Board's conclusions on some of the problems in accounting for income taxes are summarized as follows:

- a. Interperiod tax allocation is an integral part of the determination of income tax expense, and income tax expense should include the tax effects of revenue and expense transactions included in the determination of pretax accounting income.
- b. Interperiod tax allocation procedures should follow the deferred method,⁴ both in the manner in which tax effects are initially recognized and in the manner in which deferred taxes are amortized in future periods.
- c. The tax effects of operating loss carrybacks should be allocated to the loss

periods. The tax effects of operating loss carryforwards⁵ usually should not be recognized until the periods of realization.

- d. Tax allocation within a period should be applied to obtain fair presentation of the various components of results of operations.
- e. Financial statement presentations of income tax expense and related deferred taxes should disclose (1) the composition of income tax expense as between amounts currently payable and amounts representing tax effects allocable to the period and (2) the classification of deferred taxes into a net current amount and a net non-current amount.

DEFINITIONS AND CONCEPTS

13. Terminology relating to the accounting for income taxes is varied; some terms have been used with different meanings. Definitions of certain terms used in this Opinion are therefore necessary.

- a. *Income taxes.* Taxes based on income determined under provisions of the

United States Internal Revenue Code and foreign, state and other taxes (including franchise taxes) based on income.

- b. *Income tax expense.* The amount of income taxes (whether or not currently payable or refundable) allocable

² The term *transactions* refers to all transactions and other events requiring accounting recognition. As used in this Opinion, it relates either to individual events or to groups of similar events.

³ See APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*.

⁴ See paragraph 19.

⁵ The term "loss carryforwards" is used in this Opinion to mean "loss carryovers" as referred to in the United States Internal Revenue Code.

to a period in the determination of net income.

- c. *Pretax accounting income.* Income or loss for a period, exclusive of related income tax expense.
- d. *Taxable income.* The excess of revenues over deductions or the excess of deductions over revenues to be reported for income tax purposes for a period.⁶
- e. *Timing differences.* Differences between the periods in which transactions affect taxable income and the periods in which they enter into the determination of pretax accounting income. Timing differences originate in one period and reverse or "turn around" in one or more subsequent periods. Some timing differences reduce income taxes that would otherwise be payable currently; others increase income taxes that would otherwise be payable currently.
- f. *Permanent differences.* Differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income arising from transactions that, under applicable tax laws and regulations, will not be offset by corresponding differences or "turn around" in other periods.⁷
- g. *Tax effects.* Differentials in income taxes of a period attributable to (1) revenue or expense transactions which enter into the determination of pretax accounting income in one period and into the determination of taxable income in another period, (2) deductions or credits that may be carried backward or forward for income tax purposes and (3) adjustments of prior periods (or of the opening balance of retained earnings) and direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts which enter into the determination of taxable income in a period but which do not enter into the determination of pretax accounting income of that period. A permanent difference does not result in a "tax effect" as that term is used in this Opinion.
- h. *Deferred taxes.* Tax effects which are deferred for allocation to income tax expense of future periods.
- i. *Interperiod tax allocation.* The process of apportioning income taxes among periods.
- j. *Tax allocation within a period.* The process of apportioning income tax expense applicable to a given period between income before extraordinary items and extraordinary items, and of associating the income tax effects of adjustments of prior periods (or of the opening balance of retained earnings) and direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts with these items.

14. Certain general concepts and assumptions are recognized by the Board to be relevant in considering the problems of accounting for income taxes.

- a. The operations of an entity subject to income taxes are expected to continue on a going concern basis, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, and income taxes are expected to continue to be assessed in the future.
- b. Income taxes are an expense of business enterprises earning income subject to tax.
- c. Accounting for income tax expense requires measurement and identification with the appropriate time period and therefore involves accrual, deferral and estimation concepts in the same manner as these concepts are applied in the measurement and time period identification of other expenses.
- d. Matching is one of the basic processes of income determination; essentially it is a process of determining relationships between costs (including reductions of costs) and (1) specific revenues or (2) specific accounting periods. Expenses of the current period consist of those costs which are identified with the revenues of the current period and those costs which are identified with the current period on some basis other than revenue. Costs identifiable with future revenues or otherwise identifiable with future periods should be deferred to those future periods. When a cost cannot be related to future revenues or to future periods on some basis other than revenues, or it cannot reasonably be expected to be recovered from future revenues, it becomes, by necessity, an expense of the current period (or of a prior period).

⁶ For the purposes of this definition "deductions" do not include reductions in taxable income arising from net operating loss carrybacks or carryforwards.

⁷ See paragraph 33.

TIMING DIFFERENCES**Discussion****Nature of Timing Differences**

15. Four types of transactions are identifiable which give rise to timing differences; that is, differences between the periods in which the transactions affect taxable income and the periods in which they enter into the determination of pretax accounting income.⁸ Each timing difference originates in one period and reverses in one or more subsequent periods.

- a. Revenues or gains are included in taxable income later than they are included in pretax accounting income. For example, gross profits on installment sales are recognized for accounting purposes in the period of sale but are reported for tax purposes in the period the installments are collected.
- b. Expenses or losses are deducted in determining taxable income later than they are deducted in determining pretax accounting income. For example, estimated costs of guarantees and of product warranty contracts are recognized for accounting purposes in the current period but are reported for tax purposes in the period paid or in which the liability becomes fixed.
- c. Revenues or gains are included in taxable income earlier than they are included in pretax accounting income. For example, rents collected in advance are reported for tax purposes in the period in which they are received but are deferred⁹ for accounting purposes until later periods when they are earned.
- d. Expenses or losses are deducted in determining taxable income earlier than they are deducted in determining pretax accounting income. For example, depreciation is reported on an accelerated basis for tax purposes but is reported on a straight-line basis for accounting purposes.

Additional examples of each type of timing difference are presented in Appendix A to this Opinion.

16. The timing differences of revenue and expense transactions entering into the determination of pretax accounting income create problems in the measurement of income tax expense for a period, since the

income taxes payable for a period are not always determined by the same revenue and expense transactions used to determine pretax accounting income for the period. The amount of income taxes determined to be payable for a period does not, therefore, necessarily represent the appropriate income tax expense applicable to transactions recognized for financial accounting purposes in that period.

17. Interperiod tax allocation procedures have been developed to account for the tax effects of transactions which involve timing differences. Interperiod allocation of income taxes results in the recognition of tax effects in the same periods in which the related transactions are recognized in the determination of pretax accounting income.

Differing Viewpoints

18. Interpretations of the nature of timing differences are diverse, with the result that three basic methods of interperiod allocation of income taxes have developed and been adopted in practice. The three concepts and their applications are described and evaluated in Chapters 2, 3 and 4 of *Accounting Research Study No. 9*. A brief description of each method follows.

19. Interperiod tax allocation under the *deferred method* is a procedure whereby the tax effects of current timing differences are deferred currently and allocated to income tax expense of future periods when the timing differences reverse. The deferred method emphasizes the tax effects of timing differences on income of the period in which the differences originate. The deferred taxes are determined on the basis of the tax rates in effect at the time the timing differences originate and are not adjusted for subsequent changes in tax rates or to reflect the imposition of new taxes. The tax effects of transactions which reduce taxes currently payable are treated as deferred credits; the tax effects of transactions which increase taxes currently payable are treated as deferred charges. Amortization of these deferred taxes to income tax expense in future periods is based upon the nature of the transactions producing the tax effects and upon the manner in which these transactions enter into the determination of pretax accounting income in relation to taxable income.

20. Interperiod tax allocation under the *liability method* is a procedure whereby the income taxes expected to be paid on pretax

⁸ Accounting Research Study No. 9, *Interperiod Allocation of Corporate Income Taxes*, pages 2-3 and 8-10.

accounting income are accrued currently. The taxes on components of pretax accounting income may be computed at different rates, depending upon the period in which the components were, or are expected to be, included in taxable income. The difference between income tax expense and income taxes payable in the periods in which the timing differences originate are either liabilities for taxes payable in the future or assets for prepaid taxes. The estimated amounts of future tax liabilities and prepaid taxes are computed at the tax rates expected to be in effect in the periods in which the timing differences reverse. Under the liability method the initial computations are considered to be tentative and are subject to future adjustment if tax rates change or new taxes are imposed.

21. Interperiod tax allocation under the *net of tax method* is a procedure whereby the tax effects (determined by either the deferred or liability methods) of timing differences are recognized in the valuation of assets and liabilities and the related revenues and expenses. The tax effects are applied to reduce specific assets or liabilities on the basis that tax deductibility or taxability are factors in their valuation.

22. In addition to the different methods of applying interperiod tax allocation, differing views exist as to the extent to which interperiod tax allocation should be applied in practice.

23. Some transactions result in differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income which are permanent^{*} because under applicable tax laws and regulations the current differences will not be offset by corresponding differences in later periods. Other transactions, however, result in differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income which reverse or turn around in later periods; these differences are classified broadly as timing differences. The tax effects of certain timing differences often are offset in the reversal or turnaround period by the tax effects of similar differences originating in that period. Some view these differences as essentially the same as permanent differences because, in effect, the periods of reversal are indefinitely postponed. Others believe that differences which originate in a period and differences which reverse in the same period are distinguishable phases of separate timing differences and should be considered separately.

24. In determining the accounting recognition of the tax effects of timing differ-

ences, the first question is whether there should be any tax allocation. One view holds that interperiod tax allocation is never appropriate. Under this concept, income tax expense of a period equals income taxes payable for that period. This concept is based on the presumption that income tax expense of a period should be measured by the amount determined to be payable for that period by applying the laws and regulations of the governmental unit, and that the amount requires no adjustment or allocation. This concept has not been used widely in practice and is not supported presently to any significant extent.

25. The predominant view holds that interperiod tax allocation is appropriate. However, two alternative concepts exist as to the extent to which it should be applied: partial allocation and comprehensive allocation.

Partial Allocation

26. Under partial allocation the general presumption is that income tax expense of a period for financial accounting purposes should be the tax payable for the period. Holders of this view believe that when recurring differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income give rise to an indefinite postponement of an amount of tax payments or to continuing tax reductions, tax allocation is not required for these differences. They believe that amounts not reasonably expected to be payable to, or recoverable from, a government as taxes should not affect net income. They point out in particular that the application of tax allocation procedures to tax payments or recoveries which are postponed indefinitely involves contingencies which are at best remote and thus, in their opinion, may result in an overstatement or understatement of expenses with consequent effects on net income. An example of a recurring difference not requiring tax allocation under this view is the difference that arises when a company having a relatively stable or growing investment in depreciable assets uses straight-line depreciation in determining pretax accounting income but an accelerated method in determining taxable income. If tax allocation is applied by a company with large capital investments coupled with growth in depreciable assets (accentuated in periods of inflation) the resulting understatement of net income from using tax allocation is magnified.

27. Holders of the view expressed in paragraph 26 believe that the only excep-

^{*} See Paragraph 33.

tions to the general presumption stated therein should be those instances in which specific nonrecurring differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income would lead to a material misstatement of income tax expense and net income. If such nonrecurring differences occur, income tax expense of a period for financial accounting purposes should be increased (or decreased) by income tax on differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income provided the amount of the increase (or decrease) can be reasonably expected to be paid as income tax (or recovered as a reduction of income taxes) within a relatively short period not exceeding, say, five years. An example would be an isolated installment sale of a productive facility in which the gross profit is reported for financial accounting purposes at the date of sale and for tax purposes when later collected. Thus, tax allocation is applicable only when the amounts are reasonably certain to affect the flow of resources used to pay taxes in the near future.

28. Holders of this view state that comprehensive tax allocation, as opposed to partial allocation, relies on the so-called "revolving" account approach which seems to suggest that there is a similarity between deferred tax accruals and other balance sheet items, like accounts payable, where the individual items within an account turn over regularly although the account balance remains constant or grows: For these other items, the turnover reflects actual, specific transactions—goods are received, liabilities are recorded and payments are subsequently made. For deferred tax accruals on the other hand, no such transactions occur—the amounts are not owed to anyone; there is no specific date on which they become payable, if ever; and the amounts are at best vague estimates depending on future tax rates and many other uncertain factors. Those who favor partial allocation suggest that accounting deals with actual events, and that those who would depart from the fact of the tax payment should show that the modification will increase the usefulness of the reports to management, investors or other users. To do this requires a demonstration that the current lower (or higher) tax payments will result in higher (or lower) cash outflows for taxes within a span of time that is of significant interest to readers of the financial statements.

Comprehensive Allocation

29. Under comprehensive allocation, income tax expense for a period includes the tax effects of transactions entering into the

determination of pretax accounting income for the period even though some transactions may affect the determination of taxes payable in a different period. This view recognizes that the amount of income taxes payable for a given period does not necessarily measure the appropriate income tax expense related to transactions for that period. Under this view, income tax expense encompasses any accrual, deferral or estimation necessary to adjust the amount of income taxes payable for the period to measure the tax effects of those transactions included in pretax accounting income for that period. Those supporting comprehensive allocation believe that the tax effects of initial timing differences should be recognized and that the tax effects should be matched with or allocated to those periods in which the initial differences reverse. The fact that when the initial differences reverse other initial differences may offset any effect on the amount of taxable income does not, in their opinion, nullify the fact of the reversal. The offsetting relationships do not mean that the tax effects of the differences cannot be recognized and measured. Those supporting comprehensive allocation state that the makeup of the balances of certain deferred tax amounts "revolve" as the related differences reverse and are replaced by similar differences. These initial differences do reverse, and the tax effects thereof can be identified as readily as can those of other timing differences. While new differences may have an offsetting effect, this does not alter the fact of the reversal; without the reversal there would be different tax consequences. Accounting principles cannot be predicated on reliance that offsets will continue. Those supporting comprehensive allocation conclude that the fact that the tax effects of two transactions happen to go in opposite directions does not invalidate the necessity of recognizing separately the tax effects of the transactions as they occur.

30. Under comprehensive allocation, material tax effects are given recognition in the determination of income tax expense, and the tax effects are related to the periods in which the transactions enter into the determination of pretax accounting income. The tax effects so determined are allocated to the future periods in which the differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income reverse. Those supporting this view believe that comprehensive allocation is necessary in order to associate the tax effects with the related transactions. Only by the timely recognition of such tax effects

is it possible to associate the tax effects of transactions with those transactions as they enter into the determination of net income. The need exists to recognize the tax effects of initial differences because only by doing so will the income tax expense in the periods of initial differences include the tax effects of transactions of those periods.

31. Those who support comprehensive allocation believe that the partial allocation concept in stressing cash outlays represents a departure from the accrual basis of accounting. Comprehensive allocation, in their view, results in a more thorough and consistent association in the matching of revenues and expenses, one of the basic processes of income determination.

32. These differences in viewpoint become most significant with respect to the tax effects of transactions of a recurring nature—for example, depreciation of machinery and equipment using the straight-line method for financial accounting purposes and an accelerated method for income tax purposes. Under partial allocation the tax effects of these timing differences would not be recognized under many circumstances; under comprehensive allocation the tax effects would be recognized beginning in the periods of the initial timing differences. Under partial allocation, the tax effects of these timing differences would not be recognized so long as it is assumed that similar timing differences would arise in the future creating tax effects at least equal to the reversing tax effects of the previous timing differences. Thus, under partial allocation, so long as the amount of deferred taxes is estimated to remain fixed or to increase, no need exists to recognize the tax effects of the initial differences because they probably will not “reverse” in the foreseeable future. Under comprehensive allocation tax effects are recognized as they occur.

Permanent Differences

33. Some differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income are generally referred to as permanent differences. Permanent differences arise from statutory provisions under which specified revenues are exempt from taxation and specified expenses are not allowable as deductions in determining taxable income. (Examples are interest received on municipal obligations and premiums paid on officers' life insurance.) Other permanent differences arise from items entering into the determination of taxable income which are not components

of pretax accounting income in any period. (Examples are the special deduction for certain dividends received and the excess of statutory depletion over cost depletion.)

Opinion

34. The Board has considered the various concepts of accounting for income taxes and has concluded that comprehensive interperiod tax allocation is an integral part of the determination of income tax expense. Therefore, income tax expense should include the tax effects of revenue and expense transactions included in the determination of pretax accounting income. The tax effects of those transactions which enter into the determination of pretax accounting income either earlier or later than they become determinants of taxable income should be recognized in the periods in which the differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income arise and in the periods in which the differences reverse. Since permanent differences do not affect other periods, interperiod tax allocation is not appropriate to account for such differences.

35. The Board has concluded that the deferred method¹⁰ of tax allocation should be followed since it provides the most useful and practical approach to interperiod tax allocation and the presentation of income taxes in financial statements.

36. The tax effect of a timing difference should be measured by the differential between income taxes computed with and without inclusion of the transaction creating the difference between taxable income and pretax accounting income. The resulting income tax expense for the period includes the tax effects of transactions entering into the determination of results of operations for the period. The resulting deferred tax amounts reflect the tax effects which will reverse in future periods. The measurement of income tax expense becomes thereby a consistent and integral part of the process of matching revenues and expenses in the determination of results of operations.

37. In computing the tax effects referred to in paragraph 36, timing differences may be considered individually or similar timing differences may be grouped. The net change in deferred taxes for a period for a group of similar timing differences may be determined on the basis of either (a) a combination of amounts representing the tax effects arising from timing differences originating in the period at the current tax rates and reversals of tax effects arising from timing

¹⁰ See paragraph 19.

differences originating in prior periods at the applicable tax rates reflected in the accounts as of the beginning of the period; or (b) if the applicable deferred taxes have been provided in accordance with this Opinion on the cumulative timing differences as of the beginning of the period, the amount representing the tax effects at the current tax rates of the net change during the period in the cumulative timing differences. If timing differences are considered individually, or if similar timing differences are grouped, no recognition should be given to the reversal of tax effects arising from timing differences originating prior to the effective date of this Opinion unless the applicable deferred taxes have been provided for in accordance with this Opinion, either during the periods in which the timing differences originated or, retroactively, as of the effective date of this Opinion. The method or methods adopted should be consistently applied.

Special Areas Requiring Further Study

38. A number of other transactions have tax consequences somewhat similar to those discussed for timing differences. These transactions result in differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income in a period and, therefore, create a situation in which tax allocation procedures may be applicable in the determination of results of operations. These transactions are also characterized by the fact that the tax consequences of the initial differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income may not reverse until an indefinite future period, or conceivably some may never reverse. In addition, each of these transactions has certain unique aspects which create problems in the measurement and recognition of their tax consequences. These special areas are:

- a. Undistributed earnings of subsidiaries.
- b. Intangible development costs in the oil and gas industry.
- c. "General reserves" of stock savings and loan associations.
- d. Amounts designated as "policyholders' surplus" by stock life insurance companies.
- e. Deposits in statutory reserve funds by United States steamship companies.

39. Paragraph 16 of ARB No. 51, *Consolidated Financial Statements*, states that:

"When separate income tax returns are filed, income taxes usually are incurred

when earnings of subsidiaries are transferred to the parent. Where it is reasonable to assume that a part or all of the undistributed earnings of a subsidiary will be transferred to the parent in a taxable distribution, provision for related income taxes should be made on an estimated basis at the time the earnings are included in consolidated income, unless these taxes are immaterial in amount when effect is given, for example, to dividend-received deductions or foreign tax credits. There is no need to provide for income tax to the parent company in cases where the income has been, or there is evidence that it will be, permanently invested by the subsidiaries, or where the only likely distribution would be in the form of a tax-free liquidation."

The Board has decided to defer any modification of the above position until the accounting research study on accounting for intercorporate investments is completed and an Opinion is issued on that subject.

40. Intangible development costs in the oil and gas industry are commonly deducted in the determination of taxable income in the period in which the costs are incurred. Usually the costs are capitalized for financial accounting purposes and are amortized over the productive periods of the related wells. A question exists as to whether the tax effects of the current deduction of these costs for tax purposes should be deferred and amortized over the productive periods of the wells to which the costs relate. Other items have a similar, or opposite, effect because of the interaction with "percentage" depletion for income tax purposes. The Board has decided to defer any conclusion on these questions until the accounting research study on extractive industries is completed and an Opinion is issued on that subject.

41. The "general reserves" of stock savings and loan associations, amounts designated as "policyholders' surplus" by stock life insurance companies and deposits in statutory reserve funds by United States steamship companies each have certain unique aspects concerning the events or conditions which may lead to reversal of the initial tax consequences. The Board has decided to defer any conclusion as to whether interperiod tax allocation should be required in these special areas, pending further study and consideration with a view to issuing Opinions on these areas at a later date.

OPERATING LOSSES**Discussion**

42. An operating loss arises when, in the determination of taxable income, deductions exceed revenues. Under applicable tax laws and regulations, operating losses of a period may be carried backward or forward for a definite period of time to be applied as a reduction in computing taxable income, if any, in those periods. When an operating loss is so applied, pretax accounting income and taxable income (after deducting the operating loss *carryback* or *carryforward*) will differ for the period to which the loss is applied.

43. If operating losses are carried backward to earlier periods under provisions of the tax law, the tax effects of the loss *carrybacks* are included in the results of operations of the loss period, since realization is assured. If operating losses are carried forward under provisions of the tax law, the tax effects usually are not recognized in the accounts until the periods of realization, since realization of the benefits of the loss *carryforwards* generally is not assured in the loss periods. The only exception to that practice occurs in unusual circumstances when realization is assured beyond any reasonable doubt in the loss periods. Under an alternative view, however, the tax effects of loss *carryforwards* would be recognized in the loss periods unless specific reasons exist to question their realization.

Opinion

44. The tax effects of any realizable loss *carrybacks* should be recognized in the determination of net income (loss) of the loss periods. The tax loss gives rise to a refund (or claim for refund) of past taxes, which is both measurable and currently realizable; therefore the tax effect of the loss is properly recognizable in the determination of net income (loss) for the loss period. Appropriate adjustments of existing net deferred tax credits may also be necessary in the loss period.

45. The tax effects of loss *carryforwards* also relate to the determination of net income (loss) of the loss periods. However, a significant question generally exists as to realization of the tax effects of the *carryforwards*, since realization is dependent upon future taxable income. Accordingly, the Board has concluded that the tax benefits

of loss *carryforwards* should not be recognized until they are actually realized, except in unusual circumstances when realization is *assured beyond any reasonable doubt* at the time the loss *carryforwards* arise. When the tax benefits of loss *carryforwards* are not recognized until realized in full or in part in subsequent periods, the tax benefits should be reported in the results of operations of those periods as extraordinary items.¹¹

46. In those rare cases in which realization of the tax benefits of loss *carryforwards* is assured beyond any reasonable doubt, the potential benefits should be associated with the periods of loss and should be recognized in the determination of results of operations for those periods. Realization is considered to be assured beyond any reasonable doubt when conditions such as those set forth in paragraph 47 are present. (Also see paragraph 48.) The amount of the asset (and the tax effect on results of operations) recognized in the loss period should be computed at the rates expected¹² to be in effect at the time of realization. If the applicable tax rates change from those used to measure the tax effect at the time of recognition, the effect of the rate change should be accounted for in the period of the change as an adjustment of the asset account and of income tax expense.

47. Realization of the tax benefit of a loss *carryforward* would appear to be assured beyond any reasonable doubt when both of the following conditions exist: (a) the loss results from an identifiable, isolated and nonrecurring cause and the company either has been continuously profitable over a long period or has suffered occasional losses which were more than offset by taxable income in subsequent years, and (b) future taxable income is virtually certain to be large enough to offset the loss *carryforward* and will occur soon enough to provide realization during the *carryforward* period.

48. Net deferred tax credits arising from timing differences may exist at the time loss *carryforwards* arise. In the usual case when the tax effect of a loss *carryforward* is not recognized in the loss period, adjustments of the existing net deferred tax credits may be necessary in that period or in subsequent periods. In this situation net deferred tax credits should be eliminated to the extent

¹¹ See APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*.

¹² The rates referred to here are those rates which, at the time the loss *carryforward* benefit

is recognized for financial accounting purposes, have been enacted to apply to appropriate future periods.

of the lower of (a) the tax effect of the loss *carryforward*, or (b) the amortization of the net deferred tax credits that would otherwise have occurred during the *carryforward* period. If the loss *carryforward* is realized in whole or in part in periods subsequent to the loss period, the amounts eliminated from the deferred tax credit accounts should be reinstated (at the then current tax rates) on a cumulative basis as, and to the extent that, the tax benefit of the loss *carryforward* is realized. In the unusual situation in which the tax effect of a loss *carryforward* is recognized as an asset in the loss year,¹³ the deferred tax credit accounts would be amortized in future periods as indicated in paragraph 19.

49. The tax effects of loss *carryforwards* of purchased subsidiaries (if not recognized by the subsidiary prior to purchase) should be recognized as assets at the date of purchase only if realization is assured beyond any reasonable doubt. Otherwise they should be recognized only when the tax

benefits are actually realized and should be recorded as retroactive adjustments¹⁴ of the purchase transactions and treated in accordance with the procedures described in paragraphs 7 and 8 of ARB No. 51, *Consolidated Financial Statements*. Retroactive adjustments of results of operations for the periods subsequent to purchase may also be necessary if the balance sheet items affected have been subject to amortization in those periods.

50. Tax effects of loss *carryforwards* arising prior to a quasi-reorganization (including for this purpose the application of a deficit in retained earnings to contributed capital) should, if not previously recognized, be recorded as assets at the date of the quasi-reorganization only if realization is assured beyond any reasonable doubt. If not previously recognized and the benefits are actually realized at a later date, the tax effects should be added to contributed capital because the benefits are attributable to the loss periods prior to the quasi-reorganization.

TAX ALLOCATION WITHIN A PERIOD

Discussion

51. The need for tax allocation within a period arises because items included in the determination of taxable income may be presented for accounting purposes as (a) extraordinary items, (b) adjustments of prior periods (or of the opening balance of retained earnings) or (c) as direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts.

Opinion

52. The Board has concluded that tax allocation within a period should be applied to obtain an appropriate relationship between income tax expense and (a) income before extraordinary items, (b) extraordinary items, (c) adjustments of prior periods

(or of the opening balance of retained earnings) and (d) direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts. The income tax expense attributable to income before extraordinary items is computed by determining the income tax expense related to revenue and expense transactions entering into the determination of such income, without giving effect to the tax consequences of the items excluded from the determination of income before extraordinary items. The income tax expense attributable to other items is determined by the tax consequences of transactions involving these items. If an operating loss exists before extraordinary items, the tax consequences of such loss should be associated with the loss.

OTHER UNUSED DEDUCTIONS AND CREDITS

Opinion

53. The conclusions of this Opinion, including particularly the matters discussed in paragraphs 42-50 on tax reductions resulting from operating losses, also apply to other

unused deductions and credits for tax purposes that may be carried backward or forward in determining taxable income (for example, capital losses, contribution carryovers, and foreign tax credits).

FINANCIAL REPORTING

Discussion

Balance Sheet

54. Interperiod tax allocation procedures result in the recognition of several deferred

tax accounts. Classification of deferred taxes in the balance sheet has varied in practice, with the accounts reported, alternatively, as follows:

¹³ See paragraph 46.

¹⁴ See APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*.

- a. *Separate current and noncurrent amounts.* In this form of presentation all balance sheet accounts resulting from income tax allocation are classified into four separate categories—current assets, noncurrent assets, current liabilities and noncurrent liabilities.
- b. *Net current and net noncurrent amounts.* In this form of presentation all balance sheet accounts resulting from income tax allocation are classified into two categories—net current amount and net noncurrent amount.
- c. *Single amount.* In this form of presentation all balance sheet accounts resulting from income tax allocation are combined in a single amount.
- d. *Net of tax presentation.* Under this approach each balance sheet tax allocation account (or portions thereof) is reported as an offset to, or a valuation of, the asset or liability that gave rise to the tax effect. Net of tax presentation is an extension of a valuation concept and treats the tax effects as valuation adjustments of the related assets and liabilities.

Income Statement

55. Interperiod tax allocation procedures result in income tax expense generally different from the amount of income tax payable for a period. Three alternative approaches have developed for reporting income tax expense:

- a. *Combined amount.* In this presentation income tax expense for the period is reported as a single amount, after adjustment of the amount of income taxes payable for the period for the tax effects of those transactions which had different effects on pretax accounting income and on taxable income. This form of presentation emphasizes that income tax expense for the period is related to those transactions entering into the determination of pretax accounting income.
- b. *Combined amount plus disclosure (or two or more separate amounts).* In this presentation the amount of income taxes reported on the tax return is considered significant additional information for users of financial statements. The amount of taxes payable (or the effect of tax allocation for the period) is, therefore, disclosed parenthetically or in a note to the financial statements. Alternatively, income tax expense may be dis-

closed in the income statement by presenting separate amounts—the taxes payable and the effects of tax allocation.

- c. *"Net of tax" presentation.* Under the "net of tax" concept the tax effects recognized under interperiod tax allocation are considered to be valuation adjustments to the assets or liabilities giving rise to the adjustments. For example, depreciation deducted for tax purposes in excess of that recognized for financial accounting purposes is held to reduce the future utility of the related asset because of a loss of a portion of future tax deductibility. Thus, depreciation expense, rather than income tax expense, is adjusted for the tax effect of the difference between the depreciation amount used in the determination of taxable income and that used in the determination of pretax accounting income.

Opinion

Balance Sheet

56. Balance sheet accounts related to tax allocation are of two types:

- a. Deferred charges and deferred credits relating to timing differences; and
- b. Refunds of past taxes or offsets to future taxes arising from the recognition of tax effects of carrybacks and carryforwards of operating losses and similar items.

57. Deferred charges and deferred credits relating to timing differences represent the cumulative recognition given to their tax effects and as such do not represent receivables or payables in the usual sense. They should be classified in two categories—one for the net current amount and the other for the net noncurrent amount. This presentation is consistent with the customary distinction between current and noncurrent categories and also recognizes the close relationship among the various deferred tax accounts, all of which bear on the determination of income tax expense. The current portions of such deferred charges and credits should be those amounts which relate to assets and liabilities classified as current. Thus, if installment receivables are a current asset, the deferred credits representing the tax effects of uncollected installment sales should be a current item; if an estimated provision for warranties is a current liability, the deferred charge representing the tax effect of such provision should be a current item.

58. Refunds of past taxes or offsets to future taxes arising from recognition of the tax effects of operating loss *carrybacks* or *carryforwards* should be classified either as current or noncurrent. The current portion should be determined by the extent to which realization is expected to occur during the current operating cycle as defined in Chapter 3A of ARB No. 43.

59. Deferred taxes represent tax effects recognized in the determination of income tax expense in current and prior periods, and they should, therefore, be excluded from retained earnings or from any other account in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.

Income Statement

60. In reporting the results of operations the components of income tax expense for the period should be disclosed, for example:

- a. Taxes estimated to be payable
- b. Tax effects of timing differences
- c. Tax effects of operating losses.

These amounts should be allocated to (a) income before extraordinary items and (b) extraordinary items and may be presented as separate items in the income statement or, alternatively, as combined amounts with disclosure of the components parenthetically or in a note to the financial statements.

61. When the tax benefit of an operating loss *carryforward* is realized in full or in part in a subsequent period, and has not been previously recognized in the loss period, the tax benefit should be reported as an extraordinary item¹⁵ in the results of operations of the period in which realized.

62. Tax effects attributable to adjustments of prior periods (or of the opening

balance of retained earnings) and direct entries to other stockholders' equity accounts should be presented as adjustments of such items with disclosure of the amounts of the tax effects.¹⁵

General

63. Certain other disclosures should be made in addition to those set forth in paragraphs 56-62:

- a. Amounts of any operating loss *carryforwards* not recognized in the loss period, together with expiration dates (indicating separately amounts which, upon recognition, would be credited to deferred tax accounts);
- b. Significant amounts of any other unused deductions or credits, together with expiration dates; and
- c. Reasons for significant variations in the customary relationships between income tax expense and pretax accounting income, if they are not otherwise apparent from the financial statements or from the nature of the entity's business.

The Board recommends that the nature of significant differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income be disclosed.

64. The "net of tax" form of presentation of the tax effects of timing differences should not be used for financial reporting. The tax effects of transactions entering into the determination of pretax accounting income for one period but affecting the determination of taxable income in a different period should be reported in the income statement as elements of income tax expense and in the balance sheet as deferred taxes and not as elements of valuation of assets or liabilities.

EFFECTIVE DATE

65. This Opinion shall be effective for all fiscal periods that begin after December 31, 1967. However, the Board encourages earlier application of the provisions of this Opinion.

66. Accordingly, the tax allocation procedures set forth in this Opinion should be applied to timing differences occurring after the effective date. (See paragraph 37 for treatment of timing differences originating prior to the effective date.) Balance sheet accounts which arose from interperiod tax allocation and accounts stated on a net of tax basis prior

to the effective date of this Opinion should be presented in the manner set forth in this Opinion.

67. The Board recognizes that companies may apply this Opinion retroactively to periods prior to the effective date to obtain comparability in financial presentations for the current and future periods. If the procedures are applied retroactively, they should be applied to all material items of those periods insofar as the recognition of prior period tax effects of timing differences, op-

¹⁵ See APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*.

erating losses and other deductions or credits is concerned. Any adjustments made to give retroactive effect to the conclusions

stated in this Opinion should be considered adjustments of prior periods and treated accordingly.¹⁶

The Opinion entitled "Accounting for Income Taxes" was adopted by the assenting votes of fourteen members of the Board, of whom one, Mr. Halvorson, assented with qualification. Messrs. Biegler, Crichley, Davidson, Luper, Queenan and Walker dissented.

Mr. Halvorson assents to the publication of the Opinion, but dissents to the first sentence of paragraph 67 which permits retroactive application. He believes that the recommendations for comprehensive allocation should be applied prospectively and that adjustments that may be required because of timing differences not recognized in years prior to the adoption of comprehensive allocation should be accounted for when the future tax effects occur.

Messrs. Biegler, Davidson and Queenan dissent from this Opinion because they do not agree with the conclusion expressed in paragraph 34 that tax allocation should be applied on a comprehensive basis. They believe, instead, that income tax expense should be determined on the basis of partial allocation, as explained in paragraphs 26 through 28. They believe that to the extent that comprehensive allocation deviates from accrual of income tax reasonably expected to be paid or recovered, it would result (1) in accounts carried as assets which have no demonstrable value and which are never expected to be realized, (2) in amounts carried as liabilities which are mere contingencies and (3) in corresponding charges or credits to income for contingent amounts. In their view, comprehensive allocation shifts the burden of distinguishing between real and contingent costs, assets and liabilities from management and the independent auditor, who are best qualified to make such distinctions, to the users of financial statements.

Messrs. Biegler, Davidson and Queenan further believe that to require classification of deferred taxes as a current asset or current liability, in the circumstances explained in paragraph 57, would contribute to a lack of understanding of working capital, because of the commingling of contingent items with items which are expected to be realized or discharged during the normal operating cycle of a business.

Mr. Queenan also objects to the procedure whereby changes were made in paragraphs 37 and 66 subsequent to the issuance of the ballot draft which, in his opinion, should have had the benefit of open discussion in a Board meeting.

Mr. Luper and Mr. Crichley join in the dissent that has been prepared and submitted by Messrs. Biegler, Davidson and Queenan. In addition, Mr. Luper and Mr. Crichley wish to include the following two paragraphs as additional comments:

Mr. Luper and Mr. Crichley do not concur in paragraph 3 of the Opinion because they believe that it is inappropriate for the Board to issue an Opinion requiring comprehensive tax allocation, which will result in contingent long-term deferred debits and/or credits, without first completing its study and resolving the question of discounting deferred amounts to current value.

Finally, Mr. Luper and Mr. Crichley believe that substantial authoritative support exists for the concept of partial tax allocation, as evidenced by statements of corporate financial executives, independent practicing accountants, and accounting academicians and by the current accounting practices of a significant number of companies. This concept is presently embodied in ARB No. 43, Chapter 10, Section B, which states that tax allocation does not apply where there is a presumption that particular differences between the tax return and the income statement will recur regularly over a comparatively long period of time. Consequently, they believe the prescription of the concept of comprehensive tax allocation is premature until there is greater evidence of the general acceptability of the comprehensive concept.

Mr. Walker believes the so-called comprehensive allocation of material items to be the preferred treatment; however, with the disclosure of the general bases used, it should be permissive to consistently use partial allocation as explained in paragraphs 26 through 28 and the financial presentations described in paragraphs 54 and 55.

¹⁶ See APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying departures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. *"Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.*

- b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support".*

- c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statements is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1966-1967)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER

Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

DONALD J. BEVIS

JOHN C. BIEGLER

MILTON M. BROEKER

GEORGE R. CATLETT

W. A. CRICHLEY

JOSEPH P. CUMMINGS

SIDNEY DAVIDSON

PHILIP L. DEFLIESE

WALTER F. FRESE

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

JOHN K. MCCLARE

ROBERT J. MURPHEY

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN W. QUEENAN

WILBERT A. WALKER

FRANK T. WESTON

APPENDIX A

Examples of Timing Differences

The following examples of timing differences are taken from Accounting Research Study No. 9, *Interperiod Allocation of Corporate Income Taxes*, by Homer A. Black, pages 8-10. They are furnished for illustrative purposes only without implying approval by the Board of the accounting practices described.

- (A) *Revenues or gains are taxed after accrued for accounting purposes:*

Profits on installment sales are recorded in accounts at date of sale and reported in tax returns when later collected.

Revenues on long-term contracts are recorded in accounts on percentage-of-completion basis and reported in tax returns on a completed-contract basis.

Revenue from leasing activities is recorded in a lessor's accounts based on the financing method of accounting and exceeds rent

less depreciation reported in tax returns in the early years of a lease.

Earnings of foreign subsidiary companies are recognized in accounts currently and included in tax returns when later remitted.

- (B) *Expenses or losses are deducted for tax purposes after accrued for accounting purposes:*

Estimated costs of guarantees and product warranty contracts are recorded in accounts at date of sale and deducted in tax returns when later paid.

Expenses for deferred compensation, profit-sharing, bonuses, and vacation and severance pay are recorded in accounts when accrued for the applicable period and deducted in tax returns when later paid.

Expenses for pension costs are recorded in accounts when accrued for the applicable period and deducted in tax returns for later periods when contributed to the pension fund.

Current expenses for self-insurance are recorded in accounts based on consistent computations for the plan and deducted in tax returns when losses are later incurred.

Estimated losses on inventories and purchase commitments are recorded in accounts when reasonably anticipated and deducted in tax returns when later realized.

Estimated losses on disposal of facilities and discontinuing or relocating operations are recorded in accounts when anticipated and determinable and deducted in tax returns when losses or costs are later incurred.

Estimated expenses of settling pending lawsuits and claims are recorded in accounts when reasonably ascertainable and deducted in tax returns when later paid.

Provisions for major repairs and maintenance are accrued in accounts on a systematic basis and deducted in tax returns when later paid.

Depreciation recorded in accounts exceeds that deducted in tax returns in early years because of:

- accelerated method of computation for accounting purposes

- shorter lives for accounting purposes

Organization costs are written off in accounts as incurred and amortized in tax returns.

(C) *Revenues or gains are taxed before accrued for accounting purposes:*

Rent and royalties are taxed when collected and deferred in accounts to later periods when earned.

Fees, dues, and service contracts are taxed when collected and deferred in accounts to later periods when earned.

Profits on intercompany transactions are taxed when reported in separate returns, and those on assets remaining within the group are eliminated in consolidated financial statements.

Gains on sales of property leased back are taxed at date of sale and deferred in accounts and amortized during the term of lease.

Proceeds of sales of oil payments or ore payments are taxed at date of sale and deferred in accounts and recorded as revenue when produced.

(D) *Expenses or losses are deducted for tax purposes before accrued for accounting purposes:*

Depreciation deducted in tax returns exceeds that recorded in accounts in early years because of:

- accelerated method of computation for tax purposes

- shorter guideline lives for tax purposes

- amortization of emergency facilities under certificates of necessity

Unamortized discount, issue cost and redemption premium on bonds refunded are deducted in tax returns and deferred and amortized in accounts.

Research and development costs are deducted in tax returns when incurred and deferred and amortized in accounts.

Interest and taxes during construction are deducted in tax returns when incurred and included in the cost of assets in accounts.

Preoperating expenses are deducted in tax returns when incurred and deferred and amortized in accounts.

APB Opinion No. 12

OMNIBUS OPINION—1967

DECEMBER, 1967

Classification and Disclosure of Allowances
Disclosure of Depreciable Assets and Depreciation
Deferred Compensation Contracts
Capital Changes
Convertible Debt and Debt Issued with Stock Warrants
Amortization of Debt Discount and Expense or Premium

INTRODUCTION

1. This is the second of a series of Opinions which the Board expects to issue periodically containing:

- (a) Amendments of prior Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board and Accounting Research Bulletins of its predecessor, the committee on accounting procedure, as appear necessary to clarify their meaning or to describe their applicability under changed conditions.
- (b) Affirmation of accounting principles and methods which have become gen-

erally accepted through practice and which the Board believes to be sound, and when it desires to prevent the possible development of less desirable alternatives.

- (c) Conclusions as to appropriate accounting principles and methods on subjects not dealt with in previous pronouncements and for which a separate Opinion is not believed to be warranted.

CLASSIFICATION AND DISCLOSURE OF ALLOWANCES

2. Although it is generally accepted that accumulated allowances for depreciation and depletion and asset valuation allowances for losses such as those on receivables and investments should be deducted from the assets to which they relate, there are instances in which these allowances are shown

among liabilities or elsewhere on the credit side of the balance sheet.

3. It is the Board's opinion that such allowances should be deducted from the assets or groups of assets to which the allowances relate, with appropriate disclosure.

DISCLOSURE OF DEPRECIABLE ASSETS AND DEPRECIATION

4. Disclosure of the total amount of depreciation expense entering into the determination of results of operations has become a general practice. The balances of major classes of depreciable assets are also generally disclosed. Practice varies, however, with respect to disclosure of the depreciation method or methods used.

5. Because of the significant effects on financial position and results of operations of the depreciation method or methods used, the following disclosures should be made in the financial statements or in notes thereto:

- a. Depreciation expense for the period,
- b. Balances of major classes of depreciable assets, by nature or function, at the balance-sheet date,
- c. Accumulated depreciation, either by major classes of depreciable assets or in total, at the balance-sheet date, and
- d. A general description of the method or methods used in computing depreciation with respect to major classes of depreciable assets.

**DEFERRED COMPENSATION
CONTRACTS**

6. APB Opinion No. 8, *Accounting for the Cost of Pension Plans*, applies to deferred compensation contracts with individual employees if such contracts, taken together, are equivalent to a pension plan. The Board believes that other deferred compensation contracts should be accounted for individually on an accrual basis. Such contracts customarily include certain requirements such as continued employment for a specified period and availability for consulting services and agreements not to compete after retirement, which, if not complied with, remove the employer's obligations for future payments. The estimated amounts¹ to be paid under each contract should be accrued in a systematic and rational manner over the period of active employment from the time the contract is entered into, unless it is evident that future services expected to be received by the employer are commensurate with the payments or a portion of the payments to be made. If elements of both current and future services are present, only the portion applicable to the current services should be accrued.

7. Some deferred compensation contracts provide for periodic payments to employees

or their surviving spouses for life with provisions for a minimum lump-sum settlement in the event of the early death of one or all of the beneficiaries. The estimated amount¹ of future payments to be made under such contracts should be accrued over the period of active employment from the time the contract is entered into. Such estimates should be based on the life expectancy of each individual concerned (based on the most recent mortality tables available) or on the estimated cost of an annuity contract rather than on the minimum payable in the event of early death.

8. At the effective date of this Opinion, amounts¹ pertaining to deferred compensation contracts with employees actively employed, which amounts have not been accrued in a manner consistent with the provisions of the Opinion, should be accrued over the employee's remaining term of active employment. For purposes of transition, these amounts may be accrued over a period of up to ten years if the remaining term of active employment is less than ten years.

CAPITAL CHANGES

9. Paragraph 7 of APB Opinion No. 9, *Reporting the Results of Operations*, states that "The statement of income and the statement of retained earnings (separately or combined) are designed to reflect, in a broad sense, the 'results of operations'." Paragraph 28 of APB Opinion No. 9 states that certain capital transactions "... should be excluded from the determination of net income or the results of operations under all circumstances." Companies generally have reported the current year's changes in stockholders' equity accounts other than retained earnings in separate statements or notes to the financial statements when presenting both financial position and results of operations for one or more years. A question has arisen as to

whether, because of the language of APB Opinion No. 9, changes in stockholders' equity accounts other than retained earnings are required to be reported.

10. When both financial position and results of operations are presented, disclosure of changes in the separate accounts comprising stockholders' equity (in addition to retained earnings) and of the changes in the number of shares of equity securities during at least the most recent annual fiscal period and any subsequent interim period presented is required to make the financial statements sufficiently informative. Disclosure of such changes may take the form of separate statements or may be made in the basic financial statements or notes thereto.

**CONVERTIBLE DEBT AND DEBT ISSUED
WITH STOCK WARRANTS**

11. Paragraphs 8 and 9 of APB Opinion No. 10 call for certain accounting treatment, effective for periods beginning

after December 31, 1966, for proceeds received for debt securities convertible into stock or issued together with warrants to

¹ The amounts to be accrued periodically should result in an accrued amount at the end of the term of active employment which is not

less than the then present value of the estimated payments to be made.

purchase stock. Since the issuance of that Opinion, the Board has observed developments in the use of securities of this character and experiences in the application of those paragraphs of the Opinion. In addition, the Board has received views of interested parties relative to the nature of these securities and the problems in implementing the paragraphs. These observations and views have suggested that because certain aspects of these instruments, particularly in the case of convertible debentures, raise difficult estimation and other problems, further study is needed in this area. Also, because of the actual or potential equity nature of these instruments, the relationship between the accounting for the proceeds and the treatment of "residual" securities in the determination of earnings per share has created problems which need to be studied further. For these reasons, the Board is temporarily suspending the effectiveness of paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10 retroactively to their effective date.

12. In the meantime, the Board is studying further the accounting treatment of the various types of convertible and participating securities in relation to the determination of results of operations and earnings per share, including the residual aspects of such securities, and plans to issue a separate Opinion on this subject by December 31, 1968. It should be noted, however, that some issues of convertible debt securities may presently be residual securities and should be treated as such for the purpose of determining earnings per share as provided in paragraph 33 of APB Opinion No. 9, regardless of the suspension referred to above.

13. Pending issuance of the new Opinion, the accounting treatment set forth in paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10 is considered to be an acceptable practice.

14. Since the paragraphs being suspended were effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1966, the Board may decide to have the new Opinion effective on a retroactive basis for such fiscal periods.

15. Those entities which otherwise are or would be subject to the accounting requirements of paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10 (by virtue of having issued, during a fiscal period beginning after December 31, 1966, convertible debt or debt with stock warrants) may elect, as a result of this suspension, not to adopt such accounting treatment. If an entity so elects, the Board has

concluded that, until issuance of its Opinion with respect to the treatment of such securities, a dual presentation of earnings per share of common stock should be furnished on the face of the statement of income. This dual presentation should disclose (a) earnings per share computed in accordance with Opinion No. 9, based on average shares outstanding during the period and (b) earnings per share computed on the assumption that *all* conversions and contingent issuances² had taken place. (The bases for each of these computations should be disclosed.) These computations should be described somewhat as follows:

Earnings per share of common stock—

Based on average shares outstanding during the period \$X.XX

Based on assumption of conversion or exercise of all outstanding convertible securities, options and warrants \$X.XX

The purpose of the dual presentation is to recognize and emphasize the complex nature of these securities, including the existence of equity security characteristics, and the possibility that conversion of the security or exercise of options or of warrants may affect earnings per share of common stock. In addition, disclosure should be made that the provisions of the proposed new Opinion may be required to be applied retroactively in financial statements for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1966. Such disclosure should include an estimate, if reasonably determinable, of the effect upon net income of retroactive application of paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10. This disclosure should be made in total and on a per-share basis.

Messrs. Armstrong and Layton concur with the temporary suspension of paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10, but do not agree with paragraph 14 and the disclosures required in the last three sentences of paragraph 15 above, since they believe that retroactive application of any new Opinion on the subject should not be required. They therefore object to the disclosures implying the possibility of retroactive application and further believe that such disclosures will create unnecessary uncertainties in the minds of readers of financial statements.

² See Opinion No. 9, paragraph 43.

Mr. Halvorson concurs with paragraphs 11, 12, and 13 suspending the effectiveness of paragraphs 8 and 9 of APB Opinion No. 10, but he believes the suspension should be unconditional and therefore disagrees with paragraph 14 implying retroactive application of a new Opinion and with paragraph 15 attaching conditions to the suspension.

Mr. Luper dissents from the section of this Opinion entitled "Convertible Debt and Debt issued with Stock Warrants" (paragraphs 11-15) because he does not agree with the conclusions in paragraphs 14 and 15. He believes that the statement in paragraph 14 that the Board may decide to require retroactive treatment for a new Opinion to be issued in the future establishes an unsound prece-

dent. In his view the Board should not require that its Opinions be accorded retroactive treatment because such action introduces a condition of instability in financial reporting standards—a condition that, from a business viewpoint, is inimical to both those who prepare and those who use financial statements.

Mr. Luper regards the further requirement in paragraph 15 that issuers of financial statements shall state, under the conditions given, that their reported net income and earnings per share may be revised subsequently because of possible conclusions to be included in an Opinion not yet formulated by the Board is an unreasonable intrusion on the responsibilities of such issuers.

AMORTIZATION OF DEBT DISCOUNT AND EXPENSE OR PREMIUM

16. Questions have been raised as to the appropriateness of the "interest" method of periodic amortization of discount and expense or premium on debt (i.e., the difference between the net proceeds, after expense, received upon issuance of debt and the amount repayable at its maturity) over its term. The objective of the interest method is to arrive at a periodic interest cost (including amortization) which will represent a level effective rate on the sum of

the face amount of the debt and (plus or minus) the unamortized premium or discount and expense at the beginning of each period. The difference between the periodic interest cost so calculated and the nominal interest on the outstanding amount of the debt is the amount of periodic amortization.

17. In the Board's opinion, the interest method of amortization is theoretically sound and an acceptable method.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF THIS OPINION

18. As indicated in paragraph 11, the effectiveness of paragraphs 8 and 9 of Opinion No. 10 is temporarily suspended retroactively to their effective date. In other

respects, this Opinion shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after December 31, 1967. However, the Board encourages earlier application of the provisions of this Opinion.

All portions of the Opinion entitled "Omnibus Opinion — 1967" were adopted by the twenty members of the Board, except as follows: Messrs. Armstrong and Layton assented with qualification as to paragraph 14 and

the last three sentences of paragraph 15 and Mr. Halvorson assented with qualification as to paragraphs 14 and 15. Mr. Luper dissented as to paragraphs 11-15.

NOTES

Opinions present the considered opinion of at least two-thirds of the members of the Accounting Principles Board, reached on a formal vote after examination of the subject matter.

Except as indicated in the succeeding paragraph, the authority of the Opinions rests upon their general acceptability. While it is recognized that general rules may be subject to exception, the burden of justifying de-

partures from Board Opinions must be assumed by those who adopt other practices.

Action of Council of the Institute (Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures From Opinions of Accounting Principles Board, October 1964) provides that:

- a. "Generally accepted accounting principles" are those principles which have substantial authoritative support.

b. *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board constitute "substantial authoritative support."*

c. *"Substantial authoritative support" can exist for accounting principles that differ from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.*

The Council action also requires that departures from Board Opinions be disclosed in

footnotes to the financial statements or in independent auditors' reports when the effect of the departure on the financial statement is material.

Unless otherwise stated, Opinions of the Board are not intended to be retroactive. They are not intended to be applicable to immaterial items.

Accounting Principles Board (1966-1967)

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER

Chairman

MARSHALL S. ARMSTRONG

DONALD J. BEVIS

JOHN C. BIEGLER

MILTON M. BROEKER

GEORGE R. CATLETT

W. A. CRICHLEY

JOSEPH P. CUMMINGS

SIDNEY DAVIDSON

PHILIP L. DEFLIESE

WALTER F. FRESE

NEWMAN T. HALVORSON

LEROY LAYTON

ORAL L. LUPER

JOHN K. MCCLARE

ROBERT J. MURPHEY

LOUIS H. PENNEY

JOHN W. QUEENAN

WILBERT A. WALKER

FRANK T. WESTON

APB STATEMENTS

... the full text of Statements issued by the Accounting Principles Board . . .

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
Statement by the Accounting Principles Board	9003
Disclosure of supplemental financial information by diversified companies	9005

STATEMENT BY THE ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES BOARD

APRIL 13, 1962

The Accounting Principles Board has received *Accounting Research Study No. 3*, "A Tentative Set of Broad Accounting Principles for Business Enterprises," by Robert T. Sprouse and Maurice Moonitz. The Board previously had received *Accounting Research Study No. 1*, "The Basic Postulates of Accounting," by Maurice Moonitz. Study No. 1 was published in September 1961 and Study No. 3 is scheduled for publication toward the end of April 1962.

In the opinion of the Director of Accounting Research, these two studies comply with the instructions to the Accounting Research Division to make a study of the basic postulates and broad principles of accounting. Prior to its publication, Study No. 3 has been read and commented upon by a limited number of people in the field of accounting. Their reactions range from endorsement of the ideas set forth in the study of "Broad Principles" to misgivings that compliance with the recommendations set forth by the authors would lead to misleading financial statements. The Board is therefore treating these two studies (the one on "Postulates" and the other on "Principles") as conscientious attempts by the accounting research staff to resolve major accounting issues which, how-

ever, contain inferences and recommendations in part of a speculative and tentative nature.

The Board feels that there is ample room for improvement in present generally accepted accounting principles and a need to narrow or eliminate areas of difference which now exist. It hopes the studies will stimulate constructive comment and discussion in the areas of the basic postulates and the broad principles of accounting. Accounting principles and practices should be adapted to meet changing times and conditions, and, therefore, there should be experimentation with new principles and new forms of reporting to meet these conditions. The Board believes, however, that while these studies are a valuable contribution to accounting thinking, they are too radically different from present generally accepted accounting principles for acceptance at this time.

After a period of exposure and consideration, some of the specific recommendations in these studies may prove acceptable to the Board while others may not. The Board therefore will await the results of this exposure and consideration before taking further action on these studies.

DISCLOSURE OF SUPPLEMENTAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION BY DIVERSIFIED COMPANIES

SEPTEMBER, 1967

INTRODUCTION

1. Increasing attention is being given to the question of whether published reports of conglomerate companies should contain supplemental financial information concerning the activities of those segments of the business which are clearly separable into different industry lines. The term *conglomerate* is used popularly to describe a company that diversifies into distinctly different industries by acquisition or merger. The Board believes, however, that there is little distinction between industry diversification which arises by this method and industry diversification resulting from a company's own internal development and expansion efforts. All of these companies will be referred to in this statement by the more descriptive term *diversified companies*.

2. Disclosure of financial data relating to separable industry activities of a diversified company has not been considered essential for fair presentation of financial position and results of operations in conformity

with generally accepted accounting principles. The Board recognizes, however, that financial reporting practices are not static and should be responsive to changes in the business environment. The increase in industry diversification by business enterprises is one aspect of the changing business environment which indicates a need for reexamination of financial reporting practices.

3. The Board believes it should consider financial reporting by diversified companies. Presently the Financial Executives Research Foundation is conducting a comprehensive study on this subject, some interested organizations are releasing "position" papers and other organizations are publishing views of individual authors. Upon completion and evaluation of these research activities and further study as may be deemed appropriate, the Board intends to issue a definitive pronouncement on the subject.

BACKGROUND

4. Unlike earlier merger movements, which were largely characterized as horizontal (companies joining with others in the same or related businesses) or vertical (companies joining with their suppliers or distributors into more integrated enterprises), the current merger activity has produced a significant number of business combinations which are neither horizontal nor vertical. Instead they represent the bringing together of companies in industries which are unrelated, or only slightly related.

5. Many companies, also, have accomplished industry diversification through internally generated activities, including the acquisition in some cases of comparatively small companies in other industries as a means of obtaining specialized industry knowledge. Some companies have broken away from an industry pattern with which they were previously identified and have entered entirely different fields to reduce dependence on a single market.

NEEDS OF THE INVESTOR AND HIS ADVISORS

6. Another major development has been the significant growth in the number of investors, as well as the growth in number of companies whose shares are publicly traded. Prominent in this growth has been the substantial increase in securities held by institutional investors (mutual funds, pension funds, insurance companies, foundations, etc.) with an increased emphasis on the role of the financial analyst. Analysts have frequently asserted the need for information concerning revenues and operating results

of segments of diversified companies and have requested that it be furnished when it is not disclosed in published financial reports. These requests are a reaction by the analyst to the loss of corporate identification with a specific industry which has accompanied the development of complex diversified companies.

7. The Board recognizes that such information may be useful for investors in appraising the past performance and future risks and prospects of diversified companies.

REPORTING PROBLEMS

8. There appear to be few practical problems involved in determining sales or revenues for segments of a diversified company. However, determination of profitability by segments in a form suitable for reporting to investors raises many complex problems. Reporting profitability by segments may be practicable in those cases where the industry segments are relatively autonomous, rather than interdependent. There are many

instances, however, where reporting on segments of a company's activities would require many estimates, assumptions, and arbitrary allocations and might result in information that would not be meaningful and could be misleading to investors. This is especially true where joint costs are involved or arbitrary transfer prices are used between major segments of a company.

COMPETITIVE ASPECTS

9. Concern has been expressed that supplemental financial information as to segments of the business may reveal valuable

information to competitors and could be harmful to the company.

NEED FOR RESEARCH

10. Before a definitive pronouncement can be made, the Board believes that substantial research is necessary to provide practical guidelines for determining the extent to which such supplemental information is, in fact:

(a) needed by investors;

- (b) reliable for investment decisions;
- (c) not harmful to the company (that is, its present shareholders); and
- (d) necessary for fair presentation of financial position and results of operations.

INTERIM RECOMMENDATION FOR DISCLOSURE

11. For the present, the Board urges diversified companies to review their own circumstances carefully and objectively with a view toward disclosing voluntarily supplemental financial information as to industry segments of the business.

12. An increasing trend by diversified companies to disclose such information is now evident. Specific examples of supplemental disclosures that are being made by some companies at the present time are as follows:

- (a) Revenues by industry activity, or type of customer
- (b) Revenues and profits by separable industry segments

- (c) Separate financial statements of segments of the business which operate autonomously and employ distinctly different types of capital structure, such as insurance or bank subsidiaries of merchandising or manufacturing companies
- (d) Revenues by type of industry activity and type of customer, together with a general indication of the profitability of each category
- (e) Information that the operations of a segment of the enterprise are resulting in a loss, with or without disclosure of the amount of such loss.

CONCLUSION

13. The Board believes that the experience derived from voluntary disclosure efforts, together with the conclusions to be derived from research activities and further study, should provide it with a sound

basis for making a definitive pronouncement in the future on the need for, and extent of, disclosure of supplemental financial information by diversified companies.

NOTE

This Statement is not an "Opinion of the Accounting Principles Board" as contemplated in the Special Bulletin, Disclosure of Departures from Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board, October 1964. It is being issued as a special report for the information and assistance of members of the Institute

and others interested in the subject. The Board may issue similar Statements in the future when it appears that preliminary analyses or observations on accounting matters should be issued in advance of research and study by the Board.

ACCOUNTING TERMINOLOGY BULLETINS

. . . full text of Accounting Terminology Bulletins
issued by Committee on Terminology . . .

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Bulletin No.</i>		<i>Page</i>
1	Review and Résumé (see page 9503 for separate table of contents)	9503
2	Proceeds, Revenue, Income, Profit, and Earnings	9519
3	Book Value	9521
4	Cost, Expense and Loss	9523

Prepared by the committee on terminology and published by authority of the committee on accounting procedure, American Institute of Accountants. The granting of such authority by that committee connotes its general agreement with opinions expressed herein as to the meaning of established terminology in accounting usage. As to any recommendation made herein for modifying established terminology, authority for publication indicates that the committee on accounting procedure regards such modification as a desirable objective not in conflict with generally accepted accounting principles.

Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1

REVIEW AND RÉSUMÉ

AUGUST, 1953

Contents	
	Page
FOREWORD	9503
INTRODUCTION	9504
ACCOUNTING—ACCOUNTANCY	9504
ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES	9505
BALANCE SHEET—ASSETS—LIABILITIES	9506
INCOME — INCOME STATEMENT — PROFIT — PROFIT AND LOSS STATEMENT—UNDISTRIBUTED PROFITS—EARNED SURPLUS	9507
VALUE AND ITS DERIVATIVES	9508
AUDIT AND ITS DERIVATIVES	9509
AUDITOR'S REPORT (OR CERTIFICATE)	9510
DEPRECIATION	9510
Definitions from Other Sources	9510
Committee Definition	9513
USE OF THE TERM "RESERVE"	9513
USE OF THE TERM "SURPLUS"	9515

FOREWORD

Between November, 1940, and October, 1949, the series of Accounting Research Bulletins issued by the committee on accounting procedure included eight (Nos. 7, 9, 12, 16, 20, 22, 34, and 39) which had been developed by the committee on terminology. Although approved generally by the committee on accounting procedure, they were not issued as its formal pronouncements, and have been omitted from the restatement of Accounting Research Bulletins Nos. 1 to 42, which has been published as Bulletin No. 43. The paragraphs which follow are almost wholly

excerpts from these eight terminology bulletins; there has been no intentional change in the conclusions reached or in the substance of the views expressed in the committee's earlier utterances. The purpose is to initiate, with a review of what has gone before, a series of bulletins on terminology separate from those on accounting procedure. The committee believes that the field of terminology will afford stimulating subjects for future bulletins as the practice of the art of accounting is kept abreast of the times.

INTRODUCTION

1. The Committee on Terminology was constituted in 1920 and assigned the task of compiling a vocabulary of words and expressions used peculiarly in accounting and of gradually preparing definitions thereof. In 1931 definitions which had been formulated were brought together in a volume published by the Institute under the title *Accounting Terminology*, but without official approval and with emphasis on its tentative character. In the years that have since elapsed events have forced accountants to give more careful consideration to the use of words, as the responsibilities that may flow from careless or inaccurate usage have become more serious and manifest. Since 1939 the members of the committee on terminology have (with rare exceptions) been chosen from the membership of the committee on accounting procedure.

2. As a field of activity or thought extends, and a need for new modes of expression arises, the need may be met by the development of new words, or by expanding the meaning of words already in use. Either course has its dangers; in the one case that of not being understood, in the other that of being misunderstood. Where, as in the case of accounting, the need arises from the growth of an old activity, the second alternative is likely to be adopted more freely than the first and the resulting danger of being misunderstood is very real.

3. Illustrations may be noted from the uses in accounting of the words *value*, *assets*, and *liabilities*. A correct understanding of these uses is fundamental to the understanding of many other accounting terms.

4. The term *value* is used in accounting to signify some attribute of an asset (or other accounting factor); this attribute is

expressed in terms of money, which may or may not reflect intrinsic worth, and is normally indicated by a qualifying adjective (e.g., *book value*, *replacement value*, etc.). Furthermore in accounting, *values* as thus broadly viewed, although not homogeneous, may be aggregated or deducted from one another. Thus, it is a universally accepted practice to add the cost value of one asset to the market value of another, and to deduct from the sum the amount of a liability to arrive at a net figure. This procedure, although open to obvious criticism of its mathematical propriety, possesses so many practical advantages and is so well established that it is not likely to be abandoned.

5. The words *assets* and *liabilities* are in accounting usage often no more than substitutes for *debits* and *credits* as headings for the two sides of a balance sheet. Not all the items carried under these headings are assets or liabilities in the ordinary sense of those words, nor are all the items that are assets or liabilities in the ordinary sense commonly included under these headings. Thus in one case unamortized discount on bonds (not an asset) may be found under the heading of assets, while in another case goodwill (possibly the most valuable of assets) may not be found at all.

6. The failure of accountants to emphasize and explain their conventional uses of these and other terms has given rise to criticism of accounting statements and of the profession. Students from other fields are apt to regard as revelations and as grounds for adverse criticisms what are really truisms accepted with respect to accounts not only by accountants but by business men and by regulatory bodies generally.

ACCOUNTING—ACCOUNTANCY

7. No words are employed more commonly than these, either in the practice or in the teaching of the subject; yet many differences arising in accounting writings have their roots in different conceptions of these basic terms. A careful consideration of these words will therefore add to understanding, not only among accountants themselves, but also among those outside the profession who have to do with accounting.

8. That publishers of general dictionaries had not, before the committee on terminology first expressed itself publicly, given adequate attention to the special uses of

accounting terms was very evident from what the committee found with respect to their treatment of the words here under consideration. One dictionary consulted contained no definition of *accounting*, though it used the word in defining the verb *account* as "To furnish or receive an accounting." For the noun *accounting*, the more formal *accountancy* was made to serve, and was defined as "The work or art of an accountant." Turning therefore to *accountant*, hoping to find a definition which did not use the word to be defined, the committee found only that he is "one who keeps, examines, or is skilled in accounts; one whose business

is to keep or examine books of a mercantile or banking house or in a public office."

9. After extensive consultation and careful consideration, the committee in 1941 formulated the following definition:

Accounting is the art of recording, classifying, and summarizing in a significant manner and in terms of money, transactions and events which are, in part at least, of a financial character, and interpreting the results thereof.

10. Public accounting is the practice of this art by one whose services are available to the public for compensation. It may consist in the performance of original work, in the examination and revision of the original work of others, or in the rendering of collateral services for which a knowledge of the art and experience in its practice create a special fitness.

11. If accounting were called a science, attention would be directed (and perhaps limited) to the ordered classifications used as the accountant's framework, and to the known body of facts which in a given case are fitted into this framework. These aspects of accounting cannot be ignored, but it is more important to emphasize the creative skill and ability with which the accountant applies his knowledge to a given problem. Dictionaries agree that in part art is science, and that art adds the skill and experience of the artist to science; it is in this sense that accounting is an art.

12. Except as in the two preceding paragraphs, the committee chose not to amplify the definition which it put forth. It rejected suggestions that the definition be made more explicit by mention of other details of accounting, because it questioned the desirability of writing its definition in terms which, while perhaps sharpening its presentation, might also unduly limit its scope. After the passage of more than ten years, this choice of broad but significant language

continues to seem wise, and the definition to appear comprehensive as well as succinct.

13. From the establishment of the Interstate Commerce Commission and of other regulatory commissions, accounting has served these bodies and the railroads and other utilities under their jurisdiction in the solution of rate-fixing and related problems. Following the adoption of the income-tax amendment, it quickly became and has ever since remained apparent that in the implementation of that amendment accounting is a *sine qua non* for ascertaining the income to be taxed. The complexities of modern business have brought to management some problems which only accounting can solve, and others on which accounting throws necessary and helpful light. With the widening of corporate ownership, accounting was found both necessary to and capable of an intelligible presentation, within reasonable compass, of the financial data required to be furnished by management to investors. Although all of these facets of accounting, and many others, had long been well known to the business world, the committee included in its definition no specific mention of any of them; but careful attention to such phrases as "summarizing in a significant manner," "transactions and events . . . of a financial character," and "interpreting the results thereof," will reveal that the definition is in fact broad enough to cover them all.

14. Similar careful attention to the significant words, "the art of recording, classifying, and summarizing" will rule out any interpretation that no more is indicated than bookkeeping. The recording and classifying of data in account books constitute an accounting function, but so also and on a higher level do the summarizing and interpreting of such data in a significant manner, whether in reports to management, to stockholders, or to credit grantors, or in income tax returns, or in reports for renegotiation or other regulatory purposes.

ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

15. It is desirable that the accountant conceive of his work as a complex problem to be solved and of his statements as creative works of art, and that he reserve to himself the freedom to do his work with the canons of the art constantly in mind and as his skill, knowledge, and experience best enable him. Every art must work according to a body of applicable rules, but it also must reserve the right to depart from the rules whenever it can thereby achieve a better result.

16. Dictionaries agree in giving at least three orders of definitions of *principle*. The first is: "source, origin, or cause," which is of little help to accountants except as it emphasizes the primary character of some principles. The second is: "A fundamental truth or proposition on which many others depend; a primary truth comprehending or forming the basis of various subordinate truths." The third is: "A general law or rule adopted or professed as a guide to

action; a settled ground or basis of conduct or practice. . . ."

17. This third definition comes nearest to describing what most accountants, especially practising public accountants, mean by the word *principle*. Initially, accounting postulates are derived from experience and reason; after postulates so derived have proved useful, they become accepted as principles of accounting. When this acceptance is sufficiently widespread, they become a part of the "generally accepted accounting principles" which constitute for accountants the canons of their art. It is not convenient,

either in conversation or in writing on accounting subjects, to add "(meaning number three)" each time the word *principle* is used, though that essentially is understood.

18. Care should be taken to make it clear that, as applied to accounting practice, the word *principle* does not connote a rule from which there can be no deviation. An accounting principle is not a principle in the sense that it admits of no conflict with other principles. In many cases the question is which of several partially relevant principles has determining applicability.

BALANCE SHEET—ASSETS—LIABILITIES

19. Since the committee's mid-year report in 1941, and consistently with what was said in that report, there has been marked progress toward greater logic and usefulness in what nevertheless still are referred to as balance-sheet presentations. It may be that at some future date the term *balance sheet* will cease to be used to designate a presentation of financial position and will instead be deemed to refer (as the term *trial balance* already refers) to a mere step, or point of arrival-and-departure, in preparing such a presentation. This possibility the committee leaves for future exploration.

20. The terms *balance sheet*, *assets* and *liabilities* are so closely related that the three can best be considered together. Indeed, the procedure is often adopted of first defining a balance sheet as a statement of assets and liabilities (or of assets, liabilities, and capital) and then undertaking the definition of assets and liabilities. This procedure, however, overlooks the fact that a balance sheet is historically a summary of balances prepared from books of account kept by double-entry methods, while a statement of assets and liabilities may be prepared for an organization for which no such books are kept; moreover such a summary may fall short of being an adequate statement of assets and liabilities. Since *balance sheet* is a distinctly technical accounting term while *assets* and *liabilities* are less so, the committee feels that *balance sheet* should be defined with reference to the origin (that is, the origin in the accounts) of its constituent parts, and that the relation of assets and liabilities to the concept of the balance sheet should be considered subsequently.

21. In this view a balance sheet may be defined as:

A tabular statement or summary of
balances (debit and credit) carried

forward after an actual or constructive closing of books of account kept according to principles of accounting.

22. For purposes of contrast, the definition in the *Century Dictionary* (taken from Bouvier's *Law Dictionary*, 1934) is worthy of analysis. It reads as follows:

A statement made by merchants and others to show the true state of a particular business. A balance sheet should exhibit all the balances of debits and credits, also the value of the merchandise, and the result of the whole.

The use of the word *true* in the first sentence is regrettable since it adds nothing to the definition but suggests a possibility of certainty that does not exist. The second sentence recognizes the nature of the balance sheet as a statement of balances. From the reference to merchandise, one might infer that the definition originated in a day when the inventory was a figure introduced into the books only as a part of the final closing. The use here of the term *value* is characterized by the looseness noted in the discussion below (see paragraph 35) of the meanings of that term when used in accounting.

23. The committee once said that the term *balance sheet* had too often been construed in a mood of wishful thinking to describe what the writer would like a balance sheet to be; perhaps the definition just cited reflected such a mood. With the passing of time and with the greater development and more widespread understanding of accounting principles, the committee now feels that commercial and industrial usage has tended toward the reconciling of these two definitions so that in those fields a

balance sheet as contemplated in the first may indeed be the statement of assets and liabilities which appears to be contemplated in the second.

24. Accounting analysis frequently requires that two accounts be carried, with balances on opposite sides, in respect to the same thing (e.g., a building account, and a building-depreciation account). In the balance sheet, however, the net amount of such balances is usually though not invariably shown.

25. Those things which are reflected in the net debit balances that are or would be properly carried forward are termed *assets*, and those reflected in net credit balances, *liabilities*. Hence the expression *statement of assets and liabilities* is frequently used as synonymous with *balance sheet*, though as already pointed out not every statement of assets and liabilities is a balance sheet.

26. The word *asset* is not synonymous with or limited to property but includes also that part of any cost or expense incurred which is properly carried forward upon a closing of books at a given date. Consistently with the definition of *balance sheet* previously suggested, the term *asset*, as used in balance sheets, may be defined as follows:

Something represented by a debit balance that is or would be properly carried forward upon a closing of books of account according to the rules or principles of accounting (provided such debit balance is not in effect a negative balance applicable to a liability), on the basis that it represents either a property right or value acquired, or an expenditure made which has created a property right or is properly applicable to the future. Thus, plant, accounts receivable, inventory, and a deferred charge are all assets in balance-sheet classification.

The last named is not an asset in the popular sense, but if it may be carried forward as a proper charge against future income, then in an accounting sense, and particularly in a balance-sheet classification, it is an asset.

27. Similarly, in relation to a balance sheet, *liability* may be defined as follows:

Something represented by a credit balance that is or would be properly carried forward upon a closing of books of account according to the rules or principles of accounting, provided such credit balance is not in effect a negative balance applicable to an asset. Thus the word is used broadly to comprise not only items which constitute liabilities in the popular sense of debts or obligations (including provision for those that are unascertained), but also credit balances to be accounted for which do not involve the debtor and creditor relation. For example, capital stock and related or similar elements of proprietorship are balance-sheet liabilities in that they represent balances to be accounted for, though these are not liabilities in the ordinary sense of debts owed to legal creditors.

Consideration of the facts noted in the last sentence of this definition has led some accountants to the view that the aggregate of *liabilities* as contemplated in this definition should be referred to as the aggregate of *liabilities and capital*, and that the balance sheet consists of an asset section, a liability section, and a proprietary or capital section, with the monetary amounts represented by the first shown as equal to the sum of those represented by the other two. The committee feels that there is no inconsistency between this view and the suggested definition.

INCOME—INCOME STATEMENT PROFIT—PROFIT AND LOSS STATEMENT UNDISTRIBUTED PROFITS—EARNED SURPLUS

28. Although the term *income account* continues to be used somewhat to designate a financial statement prepared from accounts and designed to show the several elements entering into the computation of net income for a given period, the more modern practice is to use instead the term *income statement*; one of the effects of this practice is to restrict the use of the term *account* to the

technical running record in the ledger, from the aggregate of which the financial statements are prepared.

29. The terms *profit* and *profit and loss account* (or *profit and loss statement*) are older, and perhaps more inclusive and more informative, expressions to be applied to industrial and mercantile enterprises and

their results than are the terms *income* and *income account* (or *income statement*). The term *profit and loss* seems to have been in use before Paciolo's work was published in 1494, and what was perhaps the earliest bookkeeping text in England (*A Briefe Instruction*, by John Mellis, published in 1588) contained a chapter treating "Of the famous accompt called profite and losse, or otherwise Lucrum and Damnum, and how to order it in the Leager." This is the earliest work cited by *A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles*, 1888-1928, as having used the phrase *profit and loss*, which the dictionary defines as "an inclusive expression for the gain and loss made in a series of commercial transactions"; it also defines *profit and loss account* as "an account in book-keeping to which all gains are credited and losses are debited, so as to strike a balance between them, and ascertain the net gain or loss at any time." The same dictionary shows 1601 as the issue-date of the earliest work discussing *income*, which term it defines as meaning the periodical produce of one's work, business, lands, or investments; it seems significant that the dictionary does not define or otherwise mention the *income account*.

30. Clearly, an opportunity existed for distinctive uses of the terms *earnings*, *income*, and *profits*, and of the corresponding *accounts* or *statements*. Not too long ago, usage applied *earnings* to concerns rendering services, *profits* to manufacturing and mercantile concerns, and *income* to the compensation or revenue received by an individual. In recent years, there has been an increasing tendency to substitute the term *income statement* for the term *profit and loss statement*, and to regard these two terms as equally inclusive.

31. It is important that accountants keep in the forefront of any discussion of *income*,

its composite nature as the resultant of positive (credit) and negative (debit) elements. The income statement can be informative only as it discloses such of these positive and negative elements as are significant.

32. The cumulative balance of *profit and loss* (or *income*) after deductions of dividends was long called *undivided profits*, but later came to be more commonly called *earned surplus*. The change brought no increase of accuracy or lucidity but rather the reverse. It is difficult to see why the word *surplus* was used at all, and the introduction of the challenging and often unwarranted word *earned* seems to be wholly regrettable. In 1949, this committee secured the approval of the committee on accounting procedure for its recommendation that the use of the term *surplus* in balance-sheet presentations be discontinued (see page 28).

33. As early as 1924 the Institute appointed a special committee whose task was merely to define *earned surplus*; it was not directed to consider alternatives. That special committee, after an extensive inquiry, in 1930 submitted to the Council of the Institute a report suggesting a definition which the Council duly received but on which it took no action.

34. By that definition only slightly modified, the term *earned surplus* (or *undistributed profits* or *retained income*) means:

The balance of net profits, income, gains and losses of a corporation¹ from the date of incorporation (or from the latest date when a deficit was eliminated in a quasi-reorganization) after deducting distributions therefrom to shareholders and transfers therefrom to capital stock or capital surplus accounts.

VALUE AND ITS DERIVATIVES

35. *Value* is a word of many meanings. Just as beauty is said to lie in the eye of the beholder, so worth may lie in the mind of the appraiser. There is often no unique standard of worth which is both realistic and objectively applicable. The fact that there are different criteria of worth is strikingly illustrated in Supreme Court decisions which have applied different methods of determining value in connection with the regulation, taxation, and reorganization, re-

spectively, of railroads. But apart from the difficulty of measuring *value* when the word is used to connote *worth*, it is evident that in the literature of business, economics, and accounting, *value* is used in varying significances, not all of which have any definite connotation of worth. The word is commonly employed in accounting to describe the figure at which an asset or liability is carried in the accounts, even though the amount may be determined by a process

¹ Other than gains from transactions in its own shares, and losses therefrom chargeable to

capital surplus; see chapter 1(b) of Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43, paragraphs 7 and 8.

which is not one of valuation in any ordinary sense.

36. Since accounting is predominantly based on cost, the proper uses of the word *value* in accounting are largely restricted to the statement of items at cost, or at modifications of cost. In accounting, the term *market value* is used in senses differing somewhat from those attaching to the expression in law. As applied to securities, it means a sum computed on the assumption that value is measurable by market quotations; as applied to inventories, it is compiled from a variety of considerations, including market quotations, cost of replacement, and probable sales price. In the case of so-called fixed assets the *value* shown in accounts is the balance of their cost (actual or modified) after deducting recorded de-

preciation. Thus the following definition would seem to be appropriate:

Value as used in accounts signifies the amount at which an item is stated, in accordance with the accounting principles related to that item. Using the word *value* in this sense, it may be said that balance-sheet values generally represent cost to the accounting unit or some modification thereof; but sometimes they are determined in other ways, as for instance on the basis of market values or cost of replacement, in which cases the basis should be indicated in financial statements.

37. The word *value* should seldom if ever be used in accounting statements without a qualifying adjective.

AUDIT AND ITS DERIVATIVES

38. The origin of the word *audit* relates it to *hearing*, and traces of this early usage, signifying the hearing by proper authorities of accounts rendered by word of mouth, still linger in such phrases as *hearing witnesses* and *examine witnesses* included in some dictionary definitions of *audit*. From this to the modern applications of the word is, however, a considerable distance.

39. The use of the term *audit* has been extended to include the examination of any records to ascertain whether they correctly record the facts purported to be recorded. The next step extended the usage to statements prepared as summaries of records, so that an audit was concerned not only with the truth of the records, but also with the question whether or not the statements were faithfully prepared from those records.

40. But the most notable development in the use of the term is that which has to do with the preparation of statements "in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles," signifying that the auditor's concern is not restricted to the technical accuracy of the records, but goes also to the principles which have governed the accounting allocations entering into the results shown in the statements.

41. It thus becomes clear that the end result of the audit is in many cases the expression of an opinion by the auditor to the effect that the statements are what they purport to be. But such general terms as that could not satisfy the requirements of the situation, since they would leave it open to the reader to supply his own standards

or definitions of what the statements are intended to mean. Hence the reference, in the standard short form of accountant's report recommended by the Institute's committee on auditing procedure, to "conformity with generally accepted accounting principles." Only in the light of these principles is it proper to interpret and judge the statement.

42. The word *opinion* is also important. In the circumstances described it is not possible for the auditor to state as a literal fact that the statements are true, or that they have been prepared "in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles." All that the circumstances warrant is an expression of opinion; and although it is true that the auditor is expected to have qualified himself to express an opinion, both by his general training and by his examination in the particular case, yet his audit properly results in a statement of opinion, not of fact.

43. These considerations suggest definitions of *audit* as follows:

In general, an examination of an accounting document and of supporting evidence for the purpose of reaching an informed opinion concerning its propriety. Specifically:

(1) An examination of a claim for payment or credit and of supporting evidence for the purpose of determining whether the expenditure is properly authorized, has been or should be duly made, and how it

should be treated in the accounts of the payor—hence, *audited voucher*.

(2) An examination of similar character and purpose of an account purporting to deal with actual transactions only, such as receipts and payments.

(3) By extension, an examination of accounts which purport to reflect not only actual transactions but valuations, estimates, and opinions, for the purpose of determining

whether the accounts are properly stated and fairly reflect the matters with which they purport to deal.

(4) An examination intended to serve as a basis for an expression of opinion regarding the fairness, consistency, and conformity with accepted accounting principles, of statements prepared by a corporation or other entity for submission to the public or to other interested parties.

AUDITOR'S REPORT (OR CERTIFICATE)

44. The Securities Act of 1933 repeatedly speaks of statements "certified" by accountants, and this usage was followed in the regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Before 1933, however, question had been raised as to the propriety and usefulness in this connection of the words *certify* and *certificate*; it was pointed out that they were misleading to the extent that they conveyed to ordinary readers an impression of greater certainty or accuracy than the statements could possess, or that they represented that the auditor was expressing more than his opinion about the statements. In a letter dated December 21, 1933, the Institute's special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges wrote: "To this end, we think it desirable that the document signed by the accountants should be in the form of a report, as in England, rather than a certificate, and that the words 'in our (my) opinion' should always be embodied therein." But one of the notes to the form recommended with that letter spoke of the "certificate," and other committees have frequently found themselves obliged

to use *report* and *certificate* interchangeably. In these circumstances the continued use of both terms can scarcely be avoided, and the important thing is to emphasize the fact that the choice of one term or the other implies no difference of scope or purport, and to make that purport clear. This might be done by the following definition:

The report (or certificate) of an independent accountant (or auditor) is a document in which he indicates the nature and scope of the examination (or audit) which he has made and expresses the opinion which he has formed in respect of the financial statements.

45. The word *report* as synonymous with *certificate* (sometimes also called "short form of report") is used primarily in connection with audits of the kind covered by the fourth of the specific definitions suggested above. In relation to other kinds of audits the report may take varying forms according to the nature and scope of the work undertaken.

DEPRECIATION

46. The word *depreciation* is an outstanding example of a term used in accounting in specialized senses. The sense in which accountants use this term differs not only from its colloquial sense but also from the sense in which it is used in engineering; and it is far removed from the root-meaning (diminution in price or value) of the word itself. The committee therefore feels that there rests on the profession an obligation to clarify the meaning of the word when used as a term of art in accounting. This is the more desirable since the accounting concept of the term has in recent years won increasing acceptance from courts and regulatory commissions.

Definitions from Other Sources

47. Before formulating its own definition in 1944, the committee considered a number of earlier definitions from other sources, some of which are quoted below:

(1) Webster's *New International Dictionary* (1934):

(a) "Depreciation: (Accounting). Decline in value of an asset due to such causes as wear and tear, action of the elements, obsolescence, and inadequacy."

(b) "Depreciation charge: (Accounting). An annual charge to cover

depreciation and obsolescence, usually in the form of a percentage, fixed in advance, of the cost of the property depreciated."

- (2) United States Supreme Court, in *Lindheimer v. Illinois Bell Telephone Company*, 292 U. S. 151 (1934):

"Broadly speaking, depreciation is the loss, not restored by current maintenance, which is due to all the factors causing the ultimate retirement of the property. These factors embrace wear and tear, decay, inadequacy and obsolescence. Annual depreciation is the loss which takes place in a year."

- (3) National Association of Railroad and Utilities Commissioners, *Report of Special Committee on Depreciation, "Depreciation Principles and Methods"* (1938), pp. 8-10:

"... depreciation, as applied to depreciable utility plant, means the loss in service value² not restored by current maintenance, incurred in connection with the consumption or prospective retirement of utility plant in the course of service from causes which are known to be in current operation and against which the utility is not protected by insurance. Among the causes to be given consideration are wear and tear, decay, action of the elements, inadequacy, obsolescence, changes in the art, changes in demand and requirements of public authorities, and, in some cases, the exhaustion of natural resources."

- (4) United States Treasury Department, Bureau of Internal Revenue, *Regulations 103 relating to the Income Tax* (1940):

"Sec. 19.23(1)—1. Depreciation: A reasonable allowance for the exhaustion, wear and tear, and obsolescence of property used in the trade or business may be deducted from gross income. For convenience such an allowance will usually be referred to as depreciation, excluding from the term any idea of a mere reduc-

tion in market value not resulting from exhaustion, wear and tear, or obsolescence. The proper allowance for such depreciation of any property used in the trade or business is that amount which should be set aside for the taxable year in accordance with a reasonably consistent plan (not necessarily at a uniform rate) whereby the aggregate of the amounts so set aside, plus the salvage value, will, at the end of the useful life of the property in the business, equal the cost or other basis of the property determined in accordance with section 113. Due regard must also be given to expenditures for current upkeep."

NOTE. The foregoing language is substantially identical with that on the same subject in Regulations 62 (1922), Regulations 65 (1924), Regulations 74 (1928), Regulations 77 (1933), Regulations 86 (1935), Regulations 94 (1936), Regulations 101 (1939), and Regulations 111 (1943 et subs.).

- (5) Montgomery, *Auditing Theory and Practice*:

- (a) *First Edition* (1912), page 317:

"Entirely extraneous influences may cause fluctuation in the value of assets. . . . Depreciation, however, is a decline in the value of property such as may reasonably be expected to occur as a result of wear and tear and gradual obsolescence. It is due to the possession and use of the assets, and therefore is a part of the cost of operation."

- (b) *Sixth Edition* (1940), page 477:

"To accountants fixed assets represent an investment in physical property, the cost of which, less salvage, must be charged to operations over the period of the useful life of such property. Hence, fixed assets are really in the nature of special deferred charges of relatively long service life, the absorption of which is called by the distinctive name 'depreciation.'"

² Elsewhere in the same report, *service value* is defined as "the difference between the orig-

inal cost and the net salvage value of utility plants. . . ."

- (6) Paton, *Essentials of Accounting* (1938), page 530:

"'Depreciation' has come to be used particularly to designate the expiration of the cost or value of buildings and equipment in the course of business operation . . ."

48. These definitions view depreciation, broadly speaking, as describing not downward changes of value regardless of their causes but a money cost incident to exhaustion of usefulness. The term is sometimes applied to the exhaustion itself, but the committee considers it desirable to emphasize the cost concept as the primary if not the sole accounting meaning of the term: thus, *depreciation* means the cost of such exhaustion, as *wages* means the cost of labor.

49. It is recognized by some if not all of these definitions that the whole cost of exhaustion of usefulness is not included within the accounting concept of *depreciation*, but there is not complete unanimity as to what should be excluded. Exhaustion is constantly being both retarded and in part restored by current maintenance and, in defining *depreciation*, costs chargeable to maintenance must be excluded from the cost incident to exhaustion. Immediately, a question arises as to whether the exclusion should be (a) the cost of exhaustion which is in fact restored by current maintenance or (b) the cost of exhaustion which would be restored by adherence to an established standard of maintenance. The above-quoted definitions by the Court (2) and the Commissioners (3) accept the former alternative and that by the Treasury (4), while not explicit, appears similar in intent. However, depreciation accounting is normally based on assumed standards of maintenance, and depreciation charges are not as a rule varied as maintenance cost rises or falls. It is probably correct to say that if in a single and exceptional period maintenance cost is either materially above or materially below the assumed standards, the excess or deficiency should be treated as outside the scope of depreciation, but that a change in maintenance policy or in a classification of maintenance charges would call for a reconsideration of the system of depreciation accounting.

50. Exhaustion of usefulness may result from causes of materially different character, some physical, others functional and others possibly financial, some operating

gradually, others suddenly. The Supreme Court's definition (2) of depreciation includes the words "all the factors causing the ultimate retirement of the property," but it also gives a list of such factors and those mentioned are all gradual in operation. The Treasury's definition (4) likewise gives a list of factors which is similarly restricted. The definition by the Commissioners (3) is in terms more comprehensive but introduces a new exception: it includes "causes which are known to be in current operation and against which the utility is not protected by insurance." Certain of the causes specifically enumerated in these three definitions—wear and tear, decay (exhaustion), inadequacy, and obsolescence—are included in all three; the Court and the Treasury recognize no other causes, but the Commissioners add "action of the elements," "changes in the art," "changes in demand," and "requirements of public authorities."

51. "Action of the elements" may be either gradual or sudden, and including as *depreciation* losses due to storms, fires, and floods if not covered by insurance, seems clearly to extend the concept of depreciation from one of a long-term deferred charge (see definition 5) to something more in the nature of self-insurance. Such an extension might be justifiable if application of the term is restricted to large groups of properties collectively as against relatively small separate units, because as to a large group the losses from such causes over a period of years may be reasonably foreseeable, while in the case of single units they are not. However, application of the term *depreciation* to losses due to sudden and violent action of the elements may be questioned, especially by those who oppose attempts to smooth out reported profits artificially. "Changes in the art" may be regarded as one cause of obsolescence, and the inclusion of these words in the definition as a redundancy. "Changes in demand" is more inclusive than "inadequacy"; it would presumably cover the losses due to superfluity of capacity, which in some circumstances may become of even greater importance than inadequacy. "Requirements of public authorities" may perhaps be regarded as an inclusion deemed particularly applicable to utilities and not necessarily relevant to unregulated enterprises.

52. In industrial accounting, the meaning of *depreciation* conforms more closely to the definitions of the Court and the

Treasury than to that of the Commissioners; in this field depreciation provisions are generally limited to costs or losses which are not restorable by current maintenance and are (a) gradual in their nature, (b) due to physical or functional causes, and (c) reasonably foreseeable.

Committee Definition

53. The committee regards it as a good procedure first to define *depreciation accounting*, and then to describe the various senses in which the words *depreciate* and *depreciation* are used in connection with such accounting.

54. Depreciation accounting is clearly a special technique (like cost accounting or accrual accounting). It can be sharply distinguished from the replacement system, the retirement system, the retirement reserve system, and the appraisal system, all of which have at times been employed in dealing with the same subject matter in accounting. Depreciation accounting may take one of a number of different forms. The term is broadly descriptive of a type of process, not of an individual process, and only the characteristics which are common to all processes of the type can properly be reflected in a definition thereof. These common characteristics are that a cost or other basic value is allocated to accounting periods by a rational and systematic method and that this method does not attempt to determine the sum allocated to an accounting period solely by relation to occurrences within that period which affect either the length of life or the monetary value of the property. Definitions are unacceptable which imply that *depreciation for the year* is a measurement, expressed in monetary terms, of the physical deterioration within the year, or of the decline in monetary value within the year, or, indeed, of anything that actually occurs within the year. True, an occurrence within the year may justify or require a revision of prior estimates as to the length of useful life, but the annual charge remains an allocation to the year of a proportionate part of a total cost or loss estimated with reference to a longer period.

55. Obviously, the term *depreciation* as here contemplated has a meaning different

from that given it in the engineering field. The broad distinction between the senses in which the word is used in the two professions is that the accounting concept is one of systematic amortization of cost (or other appropriate basis) over the period of useful life, while the engineering approach is one of evaluating present usefulness.

56. After long consideration the committee on terminology formulated the following definition and comments:

Depreciation accounting is a system of accounting which aims to distribute the cost or other basic value of tangible capital assets, less salvage (if any), over the estimated useful life of the unit (which may be a group of assets) in a systematic and rational manner. It is a process of allocation, not of valuation. *Depreciation for the year* is the portion of the total charge under such a system that is allocated to the year. Although the allocation may properly take into account occurrences during the year, it is not intended to be a measurement of the effect of all such occurrences.

NOTE: This method of accounting may be contrasted with such systems as the replacement, the retirement, the retirement reserve, and the appraisal methods of recognizing the fact that the life of certain fixed assets is limited.

The words *depreciate* and *depreciation* are used in various ways in connection with depreciation accounting. The verb is used in a transitive as well as in an intransitive sense (cf., the use of accrue in accrual accounting). The noun is used to describe not only the process but also a charge resulting from the process or the accumulated balance of such charges; it is also used to describe the exhaustion of life which gives rise to the method of accounting.

In all these uses, the meaning of the word is sharply distinguished from the sense of "fall in value" in which the word is employed in common usage and in respect to some assets (e.g., marketable securities) in accounting.

USE OF THE TERM "RESERVE"

57. The committee observed some years ago that the term *reserve* was being used in accounting in a variety of different and

somewhat conflicting senses. As a result clarity of thought and accuracy of expression were impaired and an adequate under-

standing of financial statements on the part of users was made more difficult than necessary. In addition the variations in balance-sheet classification and presentation of the so-called reserves contributed to the confusion and made comparisons difficult.

58. The dictionaries define the term generally as something held or retained for a purpose, frequently for emergencies. In dealing with financial matters the term is commonly used to describe specific assets which are held or retained for a specific purpose. This is the sense in which the term is employed, for instance, in our banking system, which derives its name from the fact that member banks are required to maintain deposits with the central or *reserve* banks. The term is also used to indicate such assets as oil and gas properties which are held for future development. In accounting, such assets are described according to their nature or referred to as *funds* or *deposits* for specific purposes, generally without using the term *reserve*.

59. In accounting practice the term has been used in at least four senses, namely:

- (1) To describe a deduction which is made (a) from the face amount of an asset in order to arrive at the amount expected to be realized, as in the case of a reserve for uncollectible accounts, or (b) from the cost or other basic value of an asset, representing the portion of the cost which has been amortized or allocated to income, in order to arrive at the amount properly chargeable to future operations, as in the case of a reserve for depreciation. In this sense the term has been said to refer to valuation reserves, reflected in the asset section of the balance sheet.
- (2) To indicate an estimate of (a) an admitted liability of uncertain amount, as in the case of a reserve for damages, (b) the probable amount of a disputed claim, as in the case of a reserve for additional taxes, or (c) a liability or loss which is not certain to occur but is so likely to do so as to require recognition, as in the case of a reserve for self-insurance. These reserves have been included in the *liability* section of the balance sheet, or in a section immediately below the ordinary liabilities, or in the *proprietary* section. In the insurance field the term is used in this sense as referring to the portion of the total

assets derived from premiums which is expected to be required to meet future payments under policies.

- (3) To indicate that an undivided or unidentified portion of the net assets, in a stated amount, is being held or retained for a special purpose, as in the case of a reserve (a) for betterments or plant extensions, or (b) for excess cost of replacement of property, or (c) for possible future inventory losses, or (d) for general contingencies. In this sense a reserve is frequently referred to as an appropriation of retained income.
- (4) In the income statement, to indicate a variety of charges, including losses estimated as likely to be sustained because of uncollectible accounts, depreciation, depletion, amortization, and general or specific contingencies. It is to be noted here that the term refers to the charge by means of which a reserve (in any of the three preceding senses) is created.

60. The committee in 1948 recommended that in accounting practice the use of the term *reserve* be limited to the third of the four senses set forth above, i.e., to indicate that an undivided portion of the assets is being held or retained for general or specific purposes, and that the use of the term in the income statement or to describe in the balance sheet deductions from assets or provisions for particular liabilities should be avoided. There appears to be increasing recognition of the soundness of this recommendation.

61. The first and second accounting usages of the term set forth above seem not only clearly contrary to its commonly accepted meaning but also lacking in technical justification. As to the first, a so-called reserve for bad debts or for depreciation does not in itself involve a retention or holding of assets, identified or otherwise, for any purpose. Its function is rather a part of a process of measurement, to indicate a diminution or decrease in an asset due to a specified cause. Nor is the suggested substitution of the term *provision* acceptable as an improvement, because any provision must of necessity and in the final analysis be made by the allocation or segregation of assets. The term *less reserve* in this area has been increasingly replaced by terms which indicate the measurement process, such as *less estimated losses in collection*, *less accrued depreciation*, etc.

62. As to the second of these four usages, it may be argued that the showing of any liability in the balance sheet is an indication that a portion of the assets will be required for its discharge, and that in this sense the showing may be regarded as a provision or reserve; however, it is clearly preferable to regard the showing as indicating the obligation itself, which is a deduction necessary to arrive at proprietary investment or net assets. The items in this area which have been described as reserves are therefore better designated in some such way as *estimated liabilities or liabilities of estimated amount*.

63. The use of the term *reserve* to describe charges in the income statement involves different considerations. It may be said that a charge of this nature, e.g. a charge for depreciation, indicates that cash or some other thing received by way of

revenue has, to the extent indicated, been reserved or set aside for a special purpose, and therefore represents a reserve. However, the basic purpose in the making of these charges is one of income measurement, and the designation of such charges as costs, expenses, or losses, i.e. negative elements in determining income, is more understandable than their designation as *reserves*.

64. The generally accepted meaning of the term *reserve* corresponds fairly closely to the accounting usage which indicates an amount of unidentified or unsegregated assets held or retained for a specific purpose. This is the use to which the committee feels it should be restricted, and it is interesting to note that in the 1947 revision of the British Companies Act the use of the term was limited to this area.

USE OF THE TERM "SURPLUS"

65. In 1941 the committee suggested a general discontinuance of the use of the term *surplus* in corporate accounting, and a substitution therefor in the proprietorship section of the balance sheet of designations which would emphasize the distinction between (a) legal capital, (b) capital in excess of legal capital, and (c) undivided profits. Extensive discussions of the proposal followed, and in 1949 it was approved "as an objective" by the committee on accounting procedure.

66. A factor of primary importance in the balance-sheet presentation of the stockholders' equity is the status of ownership at the balance-sheet date. Where two or more classes of stockholders are involved, the interests of each must be presented as clearly as possible. These interests include the entire proprietary capital of the enterprise, frequently divided further, largely on the basis of source, as follows:

- (1) Capital stock, representing the par or stated value of the shares.
- (2) Capital surplus, representing (a) capital contributed for shares in excess of their par or stated value³ or (b) capital contributed other than for shares.
- (3) Earned surplus, representing accumulated income or the remainder thereof at the balance-sheet date.

67. While the terms *capital surplus* and *earned surplus* have been widely used, they are open to serious objection.

- (1) The term *surplus* has a connotation of excess, overplus, residue, or "that which remains when use or need is satisfied" (Webster), whereas no such meaning is intended where the term is used in accounting.
- (2) The terms *capital* and *surplus* have established meanings in other fields, such as economics and law, which are not in accordance with the concepts the accountant seeks to express in using those terms.
- (3) The use of the term *capital surplus* (or, as it is sometimes called, *paid-in surplus*) gives rise to confusion. If the word *surplus* is intended to indicate capital accumulated by the retention of earnings, i.e. retained income, it is not properly used in the term *capital surplus*; and if it is intended to indicate a portion of the capital, there is an element of redundancy in the term *capital surplus*.
- (4) If the term *capital stock* (and in some states the term *capital surplus*) be used to indicate capital which, in the legal sense, is restricted as to withdrawal, there is an implication in the terms *surplus* or *earned surplus* of availability

³ This classification includes such items as capital transferred from capital stock account as a result of the reduction of par or stated value,

and credits resulting from transactions in the corporation's own stock.

for dividends. This is unfortunate because the status of corporate assets may well be such that they are not, as a practical matter, or as a matter of prudent management, available for dividends.

68. In seeking terms more nearly connotative of the ideas sought to be expressed, consideration should be given primarily to the *sources* from which the proprietary capital was derived. In addition, regard should be had for certain types of events which may have occurred in the history of the corporation. Thus, a quasi-reorganization in which a "new start" has been made may be said to have put the entire net assets, as restated at the time, into the status of contributed capital, so that in subsequent balance-sheet presentations that part of proprietary capital sometimes described as *earned surplus* would include only income retained after the quasi-reorganization and would be "dated" accordingly. Likewise a stock dividend, or a transfer by resolution of the board of directors, must for purposes of subsequent balance-sheet presentation be dealt with as a transfer of capital accumulated by retention of income to the category of restricted capital. Finally, the classification of proprietary capital involves a consideration of present status in such matters as contractual commitments, dividend restrictions and appropriations of various kinds.

69. In view of the foregoing the committee in 1949 particularized the proposal which had been so long under consideration by recommending that, in the balance-sheet presentation of stockholders' equity:

- (1) The use of the term *surplus* (whether standing alone or in such combinations as *capital surplus*, *paid-in surplus*, *earned surplus*, *appraisal surplus*, etc.) be discontinued.
- (2) The contributed portion of proprietary capital be shown as:
 - (a) Capital contributed for, or assigned to, shares, to the extent of the par or stated value of each class of shares presently outstanding.
 - (b) (i) Capital contributed for, or assigned to, shares in excess of such par or stated value (whether as a result of original issue of shares at amounts in excess of their then par or stated value, or of a reduction in par or stated value of shares after issuance, or

of transactions by the corporation in its own shares); and

- (ii) Capital received other than for shares whether from shareholders or from others.
- (3) The term *earned surplus* be replaced by terms which will indicate source, such as *retained income*, *retained earnings*, *accumulated earnings*, or *earnings retained for use in the business*. In the case of a deficit, the amount should be shown as a deduction from contributed capital with appropriate description.
 - (4) In connection with 2(b) and 3 there should, so far as practicable, be an indication of the extent to which the amounts have been appropriated or are restricted as to withdrawal. Retained income appropriated to some specific purpose nevertheless remains part of retained income, and any so-called "reserves" which are clearly appropriations or segregations of retained income, such as those for general contingencies, possible future inventory losses, sinking fund, etc., should be included as part of the stockholders' equity.
 - (5) Where there has been a quasi-reorganization, retained income should be "dated" for a reasonable time thereafter; and where the amount of retained income has been reduced as a result of a stock dividend or a transfer by resolution of the board of directors from unrestricted to restricted capital, the presentation should, until the fact loses significance, indicate that the amount shown as retained income is the remainder after such transfers.
 - (6) Any appreciation included in the stockholders' equity other than as a result of a quasi-reorganization should be designated by such terms as *excess of appraised or fair value of fixed assets over cost* or *appreciation of fixed assets*.

70. As already noted, this proposal was approved "as an objective" by the committee on accounting procedure although it has subsequently used the term *surplus* in certain of its pronouncements where it felt that the avoidance of such usage might seem to border on pedantry. The cogency of the reasons adduced for discontinuing the use of the term in balance-sheet pres-

entations of the stockholders' equity seems obvious, and that the proposal is winning general acceptance appears from analyses made by the Institute's research department of numerous published corporate financial statements: the proportion of such statements in which the term *surplus* was not used was 10 per cent for 1947 and 18 per cent for 1948, but for 1949, 1950, and 1951,

after the recommendation was published, it was 32 per cent, 41 per cent, and 44 per cent, respectively.

Committee on Terminology (1952-53)

FREDERICK B. ANDREWS,
Chairman

JOHN W. QUEENAN
C. AUBREY SMITH

Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 2

PROCEEDS, REVENUE, INCOME, PROFIT, AND EARNINGS

MARCH, 1955

INTRODUCTION

1. The terms *revenue*, *income*, *profit*, and *earnings* refer to closely related concepts. In general, they relate to the increase (or decrease if negative) in the owners' equity which results from operations of an enterprise. They are, therefore, to be distinguished from receipts such as collection of receivables, and from proceeds of a loan or bond issue, or the capital contributions by owners.

2. The committee has examined the usage of these terms in accounting, economic, and legal literature and believes that the lack of uniformity found in practice is unfortunate and confusing. To promote uniformity of usage, the following definitions and recommendations are made for the use of these terms in connection with business operations and financial statements. The term *proceeds* also is included in the list of terms considered.

DEFINITIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

Proceeds

3. Definition:

Proceeds is a very general term used to designate the total amount realized or received in any transaction, whether it be a sale, an issue of stock, the collection of receivables, or the borrowing of money.

4. Recommendation:

This term is not ordinarily used as a caption in the principal financial statements and generally should be used only in discussions of transactions.

lection of receivables. In the case of ordinary sales, revenue is generally stated after deducting returns, allowances, discounts, freight, and other similar items; and in the case of sales of assets other than stock in trade, it is generally stated after deducting the cost of the assets sold. The revenue for a period less the cost of goods sold, other expenses, and losses will give the net results of business operations for the period. Revenue from ordinary sales or from other transactions in the ordinary course of business is sometimes described as operating revenue.

7. Recommendation:

It is recommended that this meaning of the term revenue be adopted and that the term be more widely used in the preparation of financial statements and for other accounting purposes.

Revenue

5. Definition:

Revenue results from the sale of goods and the rendering of services and is measured by the charge made to customers, clients, or tenants for goods and services furnished to them. It also includes gains from the sale or exchange of assets (other than stock in trade), interest and dividends earned on investments, and other increases in the owners' equity except those arising from capital contributions and capital adjustments.

6. Revenue, like proceeds, is a gross concept but revenue, unlike proceeds, does not include items such as amounts received from loans, owners' investments, and col-

Income and Profit

8. Definition:

Income and *profit* involve net or partially net concepts and refer to amounts resulting from the deduction from revenues, or from operating revenues, of cost of goods sold, other expenses, and losses, or some of them. The terms are often used interchangeably and are generally preceded by an appropriate qualifying adjective or term such as

"gross," "operating," "net . . . before income taxes," and "net." The terms are also used in titles of statements showing results of operations, such as "income statement" or "statement of profit and loss," or, sometimes, "profit and loss account."

9. The term *gross income* is often used as the equivalent of revenue; in public utility practice it is commonly used in referring to net income before deducting interest and other income charges. The term *gross profit* is frequently used to describe operating revenue less the cost of goods sold. The terms *operating income* or *operating profit* are generally used to denote "gross profit" less ordinary expenses. The terms *net income* or *net profit* refer to the results of operations after deducting from revenues all related costs and expenses and all other charges and losses assigned to the period. These deductions do not include dividends or comparable withdrawals.

10. Recommendation:

The committee recommends that when the terms are used in financial statements, they be preceded by the appropriate qualifying adjective. When referring to items covered by the term "revenue," the term "gross income" should be avoided. The excess of operating revenue over the cost of goods sold may be described as "gross profit" but such terms as "gross profit on sales" or "gross margin" are preferable. It also is recommended that the terms "operating income," "net income," and "income statement" be used instead of the related terms,

"operating profit," "net profit" and "statement of profit and loss." It is, however, proper to use the term "profit" in describing a specific item such as "profit on sale of fixed assets."

Earnings

11. Definition:

The term *earnings* is not used uniformly but it is generally employed as a synonym for "net income," particularly over a period of years. In the singular the term is often combined with another word in the expression "earning power," referring to the demonstrated ability of an enterprise to earn net income.

12. Recommendation:

The committee is hopeful that eventually there will be a single term, uniformly used, to designate the net results of business operations. In recent years there has been a trend toward the term "earnings," although a majority of published financial statements employ the term "net income." Until one or the other of these terms achieves pronounced preference, the committee makes no recommendation as between them. It approves the use of the term in accounting language in connection with the concept of ability to realize net income.

Committee on Terminology (1954-1955)

EDWARD B. WILCOX, *Chairman*

ALMAND R. COLEMAN

CLIFFORD V. HEIMBUCHER

Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 3

BOOK VALUE

AUGUST, 1956

1. The term *book value* is one of several widely used expressions in which the word *value* appears with a particular qualifying adjective to denote a particular concept of value. *Book value* is to be distinguished from such terms as fair or market value or liquidating value, in that it refers to amounts reflected on accounting records and in financial statements.

2. The term *book value* is seldom if ever used in the body of financial statements, either as an indication of the basis of stating an item therein or in connection with owners' equities. To do so would involve a pointless truism and such use is therefore not recommended.

INDIVIDUAL ITEMS

3. In Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1, the term *value* is defined as follows:

Value as used in accounts signifies the amount at which an item is stated, in accordance with the accounting principles related to that item. Using the word *value* in this sense, it may be said that balance-sheet values generally represent cost to the accounting unit or some modification thereof; but sometimes they are determined in other ways, as for instance on the basis of market values or cost of replacement, in which cases the basis should be indicated in financial statements.

4. This use of the word *value* does not involve the concept of current worth, but rather refers to a particular method of quantitative determination.

5. The following slight rephrasing of the first sentence of the definition quoted in paragraph 3 above gives the clue to the meaning which some have adopted for *book value* as applied to individual items in books of account or in financial statements:

Book value signifies the amount at which an item is stated in accord-

ance with the accounting principles related to the item.

6. Thus one might refer to the "book value" or "net book value" of fixed assets, or the "book value of investments." More specific terms, however, can be used in describing the kind of value at which individual items are stated; as, for example, *cost less depreciation*, *lower of cost or current replacement cost*, or *lower of cost or selling price*. Similarly the term *ledger balance* or a term such as *the amount shown in published financial statements* would more clearly and accurately convey an exact meaning. The committee believes that any reference to a quantitative determination of a specific item can be more clearly and specifically described by terms other than the general and relatively vague term *book value*.

7. **Recommendation:** The committee recommends that the use of the term *book value* in referring to amounts at which individual items are stated in books of account or in financial statements, be avoided, and that, instead, the basis of amounts intended to apply to individual items be described specifically and precisely.

OWNERS' EQUITY

8. The committee recognizes that the term *book value* is also used in various business arrangements such as partnership agreements, contracts for sale of a business interest, and wills and trusts. For example, partnership agreements sometimes contain a provision that a deceased partner's interest may be acquired by surviving partners for an amount which is based at least in part

on the "book value" of the interest. Contracts for the sale of going business concerns sometimes specify a price based on the "book value" of either the capital stock or the net assets. When used in such documents, the meaning to be ascribed to the term is a question of legal interpretation of the document and appears to depend primarily on the intent of the contracting or

other parties rather than on any accounting definition of such term. While such uses of the term are common, they have given rise to misunderstandings and can easily develop into controversies when the intention of the parties is not clear. One typical difficulty arises when there is a change in circumstances between the time when an agreement regarding "book value" was reached and the time when that agreement must be interpreted. For example, a change from the Fifo to Lifo inventory basis between those two dates would affect the equities involved. Similar situations would arise with respect to any changes in accounting policies or from business combinations, divisive reorganizations, and other comparable events. Even in the absence of such changes, questions arise as to whether "book value" was intended to mean literally amounts shown on ledger accounts or amounts so shown after correction for (a) errors, (b) departures from consistently maintained practices of the enterprise, (c) departures from established practices of the type of organization, or (d) departures from generally accepted accounting principles, or any combination of such corrections.

9. When the intent of the parties is not clear as to the use of the term *book value*

in reference to owners' equity, the committee suggests the following definition:

Book value is the amount shown on accounting records or related financial statements at or as of the date when the determination is made, after adjustments necessary to reflect (1) corrections of errors, and (2) the application of accounting practices which have been consistently followed.

10. **Recommendation:** In view of the fact that the intent of the parties to arrangements involving sale or transfer of business interests should govern, and the foregoing definition may not reflect such intent, the committee recommends that the term *book value* be avoided. Instead of this term it is recommended that any agreement involving the general concept of book value should contain a clearly defined understanding in specific and detailed terms, particularly as to such matters as are referred to in paragraph 8 of this bulletin.

Committee on Terminology (1955-1956)

EDWARD B. WILCOX, *Chairman*

JOHN K. MCCLARE

WILLIAM W. WERTZ

Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 4

COST, EXPENSE AND LOSS

JULY, 1957

INTRODUCTION

1. In Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 2 the terms proceeds, revenue, income, profit, and earnings were defined. This bulletin defines the correlative terms *cost*,

expense, and *loss*. While ascertainment of cost sometimes involves processes of valuation and allocation, the techniques of ascertainment are not discussed here.

DEFINITIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

Definitions

2. *Cost* is the amount, measured in money, of cash expended or other property transferred, capital stock issued, services performed, or a liability incurred, in consideration of goods or services received or to be received. Costs can be classified as unexpired or expired. Unexpired costs (assets) are those which are applicable to the production of future revenues. Examples of such unexpired costs are inventories, prepaid expenses, plant, investments, and deferred charges. Expired costs are those which are not applicable to the production of future revenues, and for that reason are treated as deductions from current revenues or are charged against retained earnings. Examples of such expired costs are costs of products or other assets sold or disposed of, and current expenses. Unexpired costs may be transferred from one classification to another before becoming expired costs as above defined, e.g., depreciation or insurance on plant may be included in unexpired costs ascribed to inventories.
3. *Expense* in its broadest sense includes all expired costs which are deductible from revenues. In income statements, distinctions are often made between various types of expired costs by captions or titles including such terms as cost, expense, or loss, e.g., cost of goods or services sold, operating expenses, selling and administrative expenses, and loss on sale of property. These distinctions seem generally useful, and indicate that

the narrower use of the term *expense* refers to such items as operating, selling or administrative expenses, interest, and taxes.

4. *Loss* is (1) the excess of all expenses, in the broad sense of that word, over revenues for a period, or (2) the excess of all or the appropriate portion of the cost of assets over related proceeds, if any, when the items are sold, abandoned, or either wholly or partially destroyed by casualty or otherwise written off. When losses such as those described in (2) above are deducted from revenues, they are expenses in the broad sense of that term.

Recommendations

5. The term *cost* should be used when appropriate in describing the basis of assets as displayed in balance sheets, and properly should be used in income statements to describe such items as cost of goods sold, or costs of other properties or investments sold or abandoned.
6. While the term *expense* is useful in its broad and generic sense in discussions of transactions and as a general caption in income statements, its use in financial statements is often appropriately limited to the narrower sense of the term as indicated in paragraph 3. In any event, items entering into the computation of cost of manufacturing, such as material, labor, and overhead, should be described as costs and not as expenses.
7. The term *loss* should be used in financial statements in reference

to net or partially net results when appropriate in place of the term income or profit as described in paragraphs 8, 9, and 10 of Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 2. In such cases the term should generally be used with appropriate qualifying adjectives. It should also be used in describing results of specific transactions, generally those that deal with disposition of assets. The use of the term in

the latter type of cases is believed desirable since it distinguishes them from more normal expenses of a recurring type which are generally shown in gross amounts.

Committee on Terminology (1956-1957)

EDWARD B. WILCOX, *Chairman*

JOHN K. MCCLARE

HERBERT E. MILLER